KYOCERA

TASKalfa 181
TASKalfa 221

SERVICE MANUAL

Published in August 2009
842KJ111
2KJSM061
Rev.1

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACEE PAR UN MODELE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISEES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNEES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	August 31, 2009	1-2-11, 1-2-12, 1-2-14, 1-3-2, 1-3-4, 1-3-16, 1-3-48, 1-3-49, 1-5-2, 1-5-20	-

This page is intentionally left blank.

Safety precautions

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

⚠**DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle (△) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.

 General warning.

 Warning of risk of electric shock.

 Warning of high temperature.

⃠ indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.

 General prohibited action.

 Disassembly prohibited.

● indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.

 General action required.

 Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.

 Always ground the copier.

1.Installation Precautions

⚠WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .....



- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .....



⚠CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .....



- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .....



- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.

  This may cause fire. .....



- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .....



- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .....



- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .....



- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .....



- Advice customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .....



2.Precautions for Maintenance

⚠WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .....



- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .....



- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .....





- Always use parts having the correct specifications. .....
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .....



- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .....





- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .....
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .....



- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .....



- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .....



⚠CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .....



- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .....



- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .....
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .....



- Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. .....



- Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. .....



- Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. .....



- Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. .....



- Remove toner completely from electronic components. .....



- Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. .....
- After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. .....



- Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. .....





- Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: .....
  · Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
  · Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
  · Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
  · Always wash hands afterwards.

- Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. .....



- Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. .....



3.Miscellaneous

⚠WARNING

- Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. .....



This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications 1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names 1-1-4
(1) Body 1-1-4
(2) Operation panel 1-1-5
1-1-3 Machine cross section 1-1-6

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment 1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation 1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure 1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes 1-2-11
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option) 1-2-12
1-2-4 Installing the cassette heater (option) 1-2-17
1-2-5 Installing the cassette heater for paper feeder (option) (22 ppm model only) 1-2-19

1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode 1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item 1-3-1
(2) Maintenance modes item list 1-3-2
(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items 1-3-5
1-3-2 Management mode 1-3-68
(1) Using the management mode 1-3-68
(2) Setting the job accounting 1-3-69
(3) Copy default 1-3-70
(4) Machine default 1-3-71
(5) MP Tray setting 1-3-73
(6) Checking the total counter and printing out the counter report 1-3-73
(7) Report output 1-3-73
(8) Language setting 1-3-73

1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection 1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication 1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions 1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds 1-4-8
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis 1-4-16
(1) Self-diagnostic function 1-4-16
(2) Self diagnostic codes 1-4-17
1-4-3 Image formation problems 1-4-25
(1) No image appears (entirely white) 1-4-26
(2) No image appears (entirely black) 1-4-26
(3) Image is too light. 1-4-27
(4) Background is visible 1-4-27
(5) A white line appears longitudinally. 1-4-27
(6) A black line appears longitudinally. 1-4-28
(7) A black line appears laterally 1-4-28
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other 1-4-28
(9) Black dots appear on the image. 1-4-28
(10) Image is blurred 1-4-29
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original. 1-4-29
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original. 1-4-29
(13) Paper creases. 1-4-29
(14) Offset occurs. 1-4-30
(15) Image is partly missing. 1-4-30
(16) Fusing is poor. 1-4-30
(17) Image is out of focus. 1-4-30
(18) Image center does not align with the original center. 1-4-31
1-4-4 Electric problems 1-4-32
1-4-5 Mechanical problems 1-4-36

1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly 1-5-1
(1) Precautions 1-5-1
(2) Drum 1-5-1
(3) Toner 1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container 1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section 1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the separation pulley 1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley 1-5-6
(3) Detaching and refitting the feed roller (22 ppm model only) 1-5-9
(4) Detaching and refitting the cassette separation pulley (22 ppm model only) 1-5-11
(5) Detaching and refitting the cassette forwarding pulley and cassette paper feed pulley (22 ppm model only) 1-5-13
(6) Detaching and refitting the paper conveying unit 1-5-16
(7) Detaching and refitting the MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pad 1-5-18
(8) Detaching and refitting the left registration roller 1-5-21
(9) Detaching and refitting the right registration roller 1-5-22
1-5-3 Optical section 1-5-24
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp 1-5-24
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires 1-5-26
(2-1) Detaching the scanner wires 1-5-26
(2-2) Fitting the scanner wires 1-5-29
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference) 1-5-33
(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit 1-5-35
(5) Adjusting the longitudinal squareness (reference) 1-5-40
1-5-4 Drum section 1-5-41
(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit 1-5-41
(2) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws 1-5-42
(3) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit 1-5-43
1-5-5 Developing section 1-5-44
(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit 1-5-44
1-5-6 Transfer section 1-5-45
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller 1-5-45
1-5-7 Fuser section 1-5-47
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit 1-5-47
(2) Detaching and refitting the press roller 1-5-49
(3) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater 1-5-51
(4) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws 1-5-54
(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller 1-5-55
(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 1-5-57
(7) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermostat 1-5-58
(8) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness) 1-5-59
1-5-8 Others 1-5-60
(1) Detaching and refitting the eject unit 1-5-60
(2) Direction of installing the principal fan motors 1-5-62

1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware 1-6-1
1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR) 1-6-2
1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB and engine PWB replacement 1-6-2

2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Paper feed section 2-1-1
2-1-2 Optical section 2-1-3
(1) Image scanner section 2-1-3
(2) Laser scanner section 2-1-5
2-1-3 Drum section 2-1-7
2-1-4 Developing section 2-1-9
(1) Single component developing system 2-1-11
2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections 2-1-12
2-1-6 Fuser section 2-1-13
2-1-7 Eject and switchback sections 2-1-15
2-1-8 Duplex section 2-1-17

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout 2-2-1
(1) PWBs 2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors 2-2-3
(3) Motors 2-2-5
(4) Others 2-2-6

2-3 Operation of the PWBs

2-3-1 Power source PWB 2-3-1
2-3-2 Main PWB 2-3-3
2-3-3 Engine PWB 2-3-7
2-3-4 Cassette PWB 2-3-13
2-3-5 Operation PWB 2-3-16
2-3-6 Cassette main PWB (22 ppm model only) 2-3-18

2-4 Appendixes

Maintenance parts list 2-4-1
Periodic maintenance procedures 2-4-2
Chart of image adjustment procedures 2-4-5
Wiring diagram 2-4-7
Paper feeder wiring diagram (22 ppm model only) 2-4-8

INSTALLATION GUIDE

DOCUMENT PROCESSOR
PAPER FEEDER
DUPLEX UNIT
BUILT-IN FINISHER
JOB SEPARATOR
FAX System (R)
Scan System (F)B

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-1-1 Specifications

Type ..... Desktop
Printing system ..... Indirect electrostatic system
Supported original types ..... Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects
Maximum original size: A3/Ledger
Original feed system ..... Fixed
Paper weight ..... Cassette: 64 - 105 g/m^2
MP tray: 45 - 160 g/m^2
Paper type ..... Cassette: Plain, Rough, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
MP tray: Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
Paper size ..... Cassette: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, StatementR, Oficio II, 8K, 16K
MP tray: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, Statement, Oficio II, 8K, 16K
A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, Hagaki, Oufuku Hagaki, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Envelope #10 (Comm. #10), Envelope #9 (Comm. #9), Envelope #6 (Comm. #6 3/4), Envelope Monarch, ISO B5, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, Executive, Statement, Oficio II, 8K, 16K, 16KR,
Zoom level ..... Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments
Auto mode: Preset zoom
Printing speed ..... 18 ppm model
A4/Letter: 18 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR: 13 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger: 8 sheets/min.
B4/Legal: 8 sheets/min.
B5: 16 sheets/min.
B5R: 13 sheets/min.
A5R: 10 sheets/min.
22 ppm model
A4/Letter: 22 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR: 13 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger: 10 sheets/min.
B4/Legal: 11 sheets/min.
B5: 20 sheets/min.
B5R: 13 sheets/min.
A5R: 10 sheets/min.
First copy time ..... 5.7 s or less
Warm-up time ..... Room temperature 22 °C/71.6 °F, 60% RH
Power on: 17.2 s
Low power mode: 10 s
Sleep mode: 17.2 s
Paper capacity ..... Cassette: 300 sheets (80 g/m^2), 150 sheets (90 g/m^2 or more)
MP tray: 100 sheets (A4/Letter or less), 25 sheets (B4/Legal or more)
Output tray capacity ..... Top tray: 250 sheets (80 g/m^2)
When job separator installed: 150 sheets (80 g/m^2)
When built-in finisher installed: 100 sheets (80 g/m^2)
Continuous copying ..... 1 to 999 sheets
Light source ..... Inert gas lamp
Scanning system ..... Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Photoconductor ..... OPC (drum diameter 30 mm)
Image write system ..... Semiconductor laser
Charging system ..... Single positive corona charging
Developing system ..... Single component developing system
Toner: magnetism toner
Toner replenishing: Automatic from a toner container
Transfer system ..... Transfer roller

Separation system	Curvature separation and separation electrode
Cleaning system	Blade and cleaning roller
Charge erasing system	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Fusing system	Heat roller Heat source: Halogen heaters Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Main memory	Standard: 64 MB Maximum: 192 MB
Interface	Memory card interface: 1 USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX) Option interface: 1
Resolution	600 x 600 dpi
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F Humidity: 15 to 80% RH Altitude: 2500 m/8,202 ft maximum Brightness: 1500 lux maximum
Dimensions	18 ppm model 568 (W) x 594 (D) x 502 (H) mm (main body only) 22 3/8" (W) x 23 3/8" (D) x 19 3/4" (H) (main body only) 22 ppm model 568 (W) x 594 (D) x 607 (H) mm (main body only) 22 3/8" (W) x 23 3/8" (D) x 23 7/8" (H) (main body only)
Weight	18 ppm model: 33 kg/72.8 lbs 22 ppm model: 40 kg/88.2 lbs
Space required	838 mm (W) x 594 (D) mm (using MP tray) 33" (W) x 23 3/8" (D) (using MP tray)
Power source	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 9.7 A 220 to 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 5.1 A
Options	Document processor, paper feeder, duplex unit, built-in finisher, job separator, key counter, FAX kit, network scanner kit, hard disk and expansion memory

Printer functions

Printing speed	Same as copying speed
First print time	5.7 s or less
Resolution	300 dpi, 600 dpi, Fast 1200
Operating system	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Apple Macintosh OS 10.x
Interface	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)
Memory	Standard: 128 MB Maximum: 1152 MB
Page description language	PRESCRIBE

Scanner functions

Operating system	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Vista
System requirements	CPU 600 MHz or higher RAM 128 MB or more
Resolution	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi
File format	TIFF (MMR compression), PDF (MMR compression)
Scanning speed	A4 landscape, Image quality: Text/Photo original Single scanning: 22 images/min (600 dpi), 22 images/min (300 dpi) Dual scanning: 11 images/min (600 dpi), 11 images/min (300 dpi)
Network protocol	TCP/IP
Transmission system	PC transmission: Scan to PC E-mail transmission: Scan to E-mail Twain scan: TWAIN Driver

Duplex unit

Type	Internal type
Paper weight	64 - 105 g/m^2
Paper type	Plain, Recycled
Paper size	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, StatementR, Oficio II, 8K, 16K
Power source	Electrically connected to the machine.
Dimensions	363 (W) x 54 (D) x 181 (H) mm 14 5/16" (W) x 2 1/8" (D) x 7 1/8" (H)
Weight	0.5 kg or less / 1.1 lbs or less

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Body

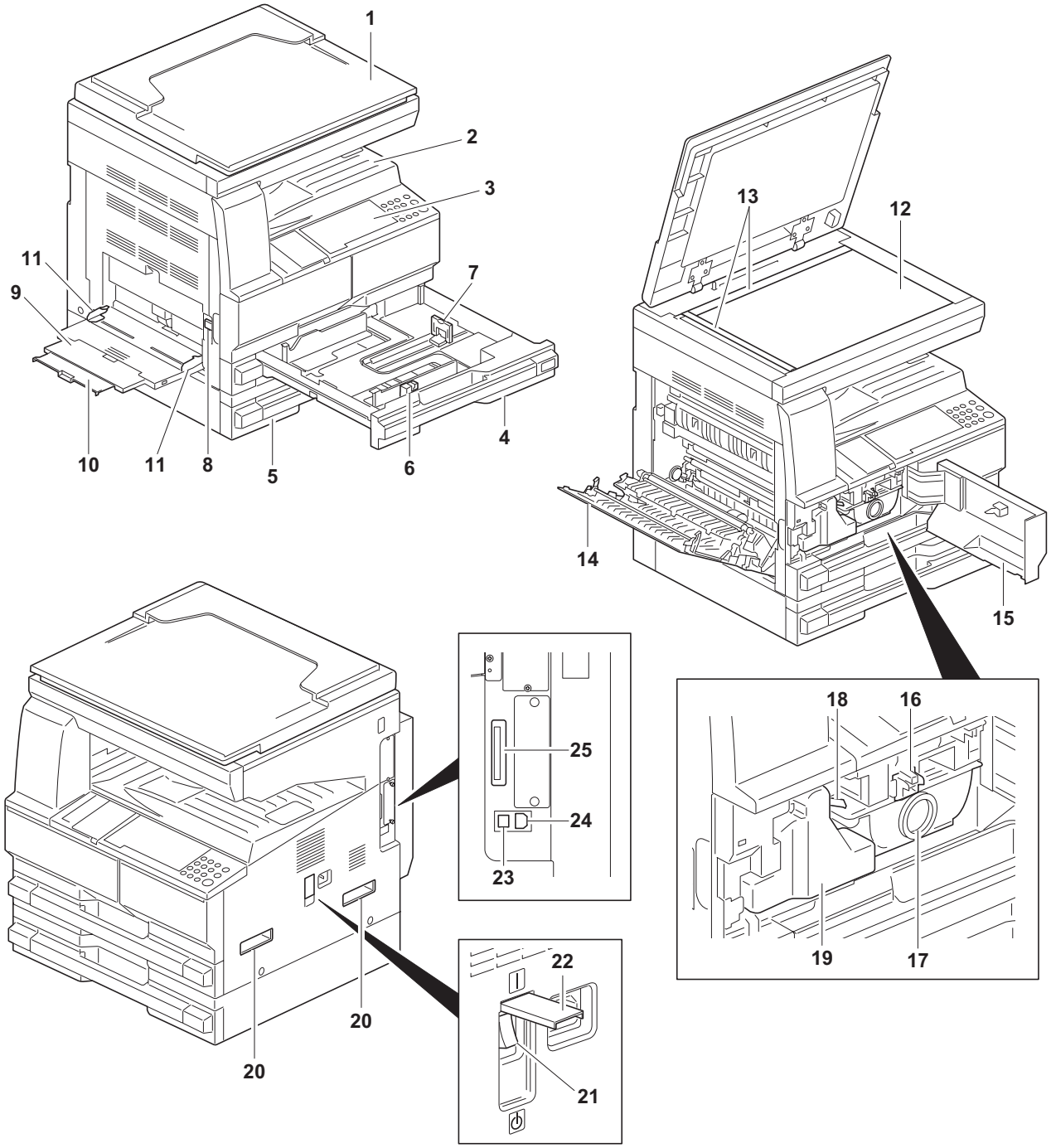


Figure 1-1-1

1. Original cover (option)
2. Output tray
3. Operation panel
4. Cassette 1
5. Cassette 2 (22ppm model only)
6. Paper width adjusting tab
7. Paper length adjusting tab
8. Left cover handle
9. MP tray
10. MP tray extension
11. Slider
12. Contact glass
13. Original size indicator plates
14. Left cover
15. Front cover
16. Toner container release lever
17. Toner container
18. Charger cleaner rod
19. Waste toner box
20. Handles for transport
21. Main power switch
22. Main power switch cover
23. USB interface connector
24. Network interface connector
25. Memory card slot

(2) Operation panel

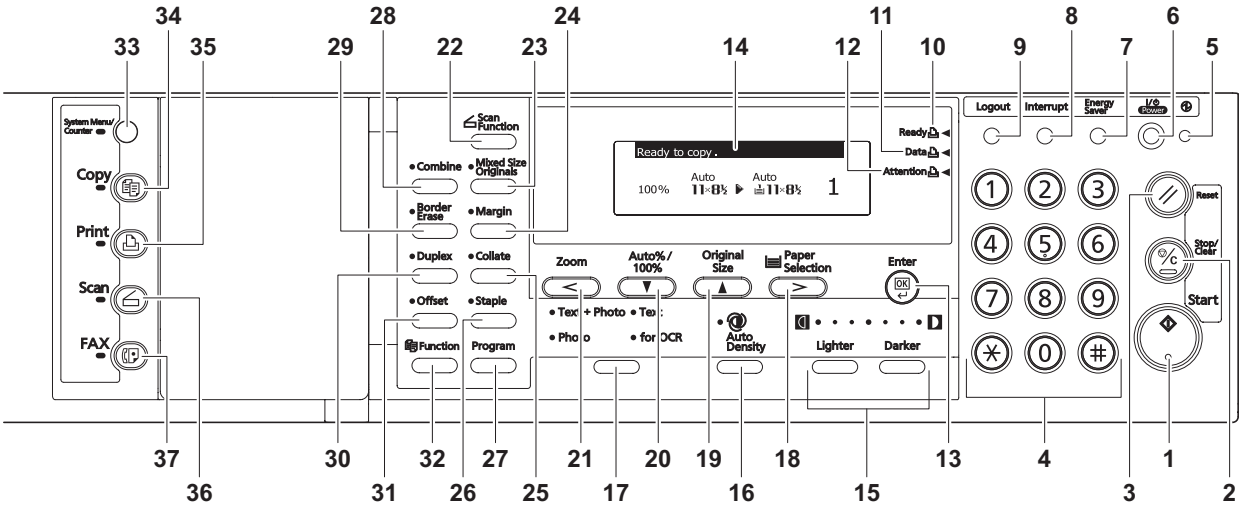


Figure 1-1-2

1. Start key and indicator
2. Stop/Clear key
3. Reset key
4. Numeric keys
5. Main power indicator
6. Power key and indicator
7. Energy saver key and indicator
8. Interrupt key and indicator
9. Logout key
10. Ready indicator (green)
11. Data indicator (green)
12. Attention indicator (red)
13. Enter key
14. Message display
15. Lighter key / Darker key
16. Auto density key
17. Image quality mode select key
18. Paper selection key / Cursor right key
19. Original Size key / Cursor up key
20. Auto%/100% key / Cursor down key
21. Zoom key / Cursor left key
22. Scanner function key
23. Mixed size originals key and indicator
24. Margin key and indicator
25. Collate key and indicator
26. Staple key and indicator
27. Program key
28. Combine key and indicator
29. Border erase key and indicator
30. Duplex key and indicator
31. Offset key and indicator
32. Function key
33. System menu/Counter key and indicator
34. Copy key and indicator
35. Print key and indicator
36. Scan key and indicator
37. Fax key and indicator

1-1-3 Machine cross section

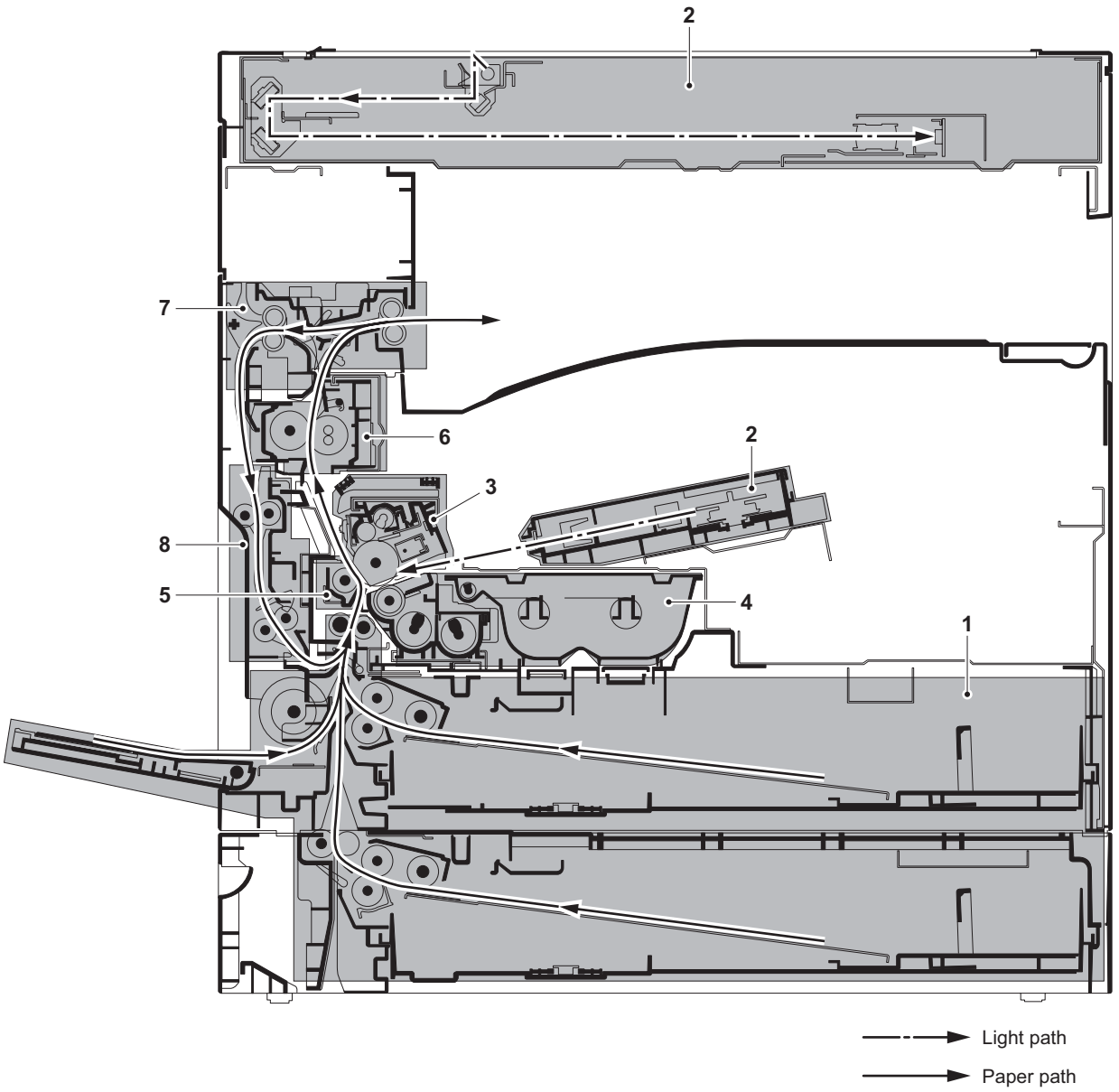


Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section

1. Paper feed section
2. Optical section
3. Drum section
4. Developing section
5. Transfer and separation sections
6. Fuser section
7. Eject and switchback sections
8. Duplex section

1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80% RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 9.7 A
   220 to 240 V AC, 5.1 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz ± 0.3%/60 Hz ± 0.3%
5. Installation location
   Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
   Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.
   Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.
   Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
   Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
   Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic of alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
   Select a well-ventilated location.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
   Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8" Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"
   Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16" Machine left: 300 mm/11 13/16

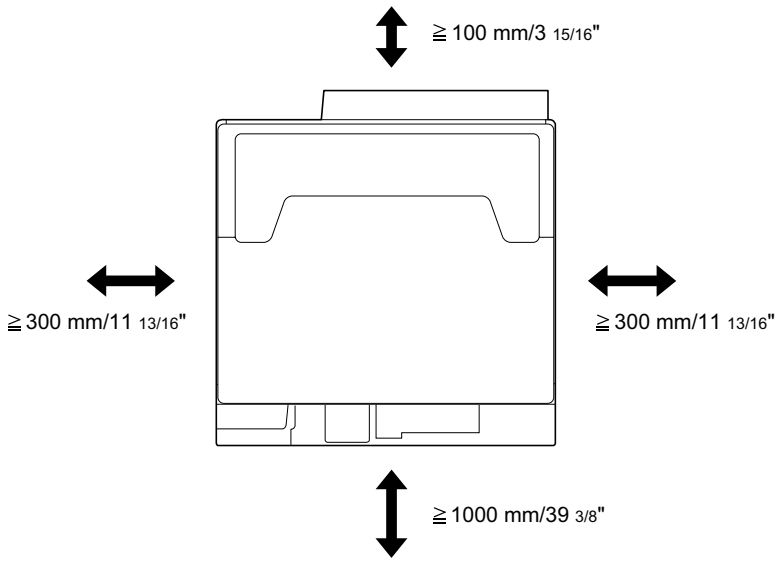
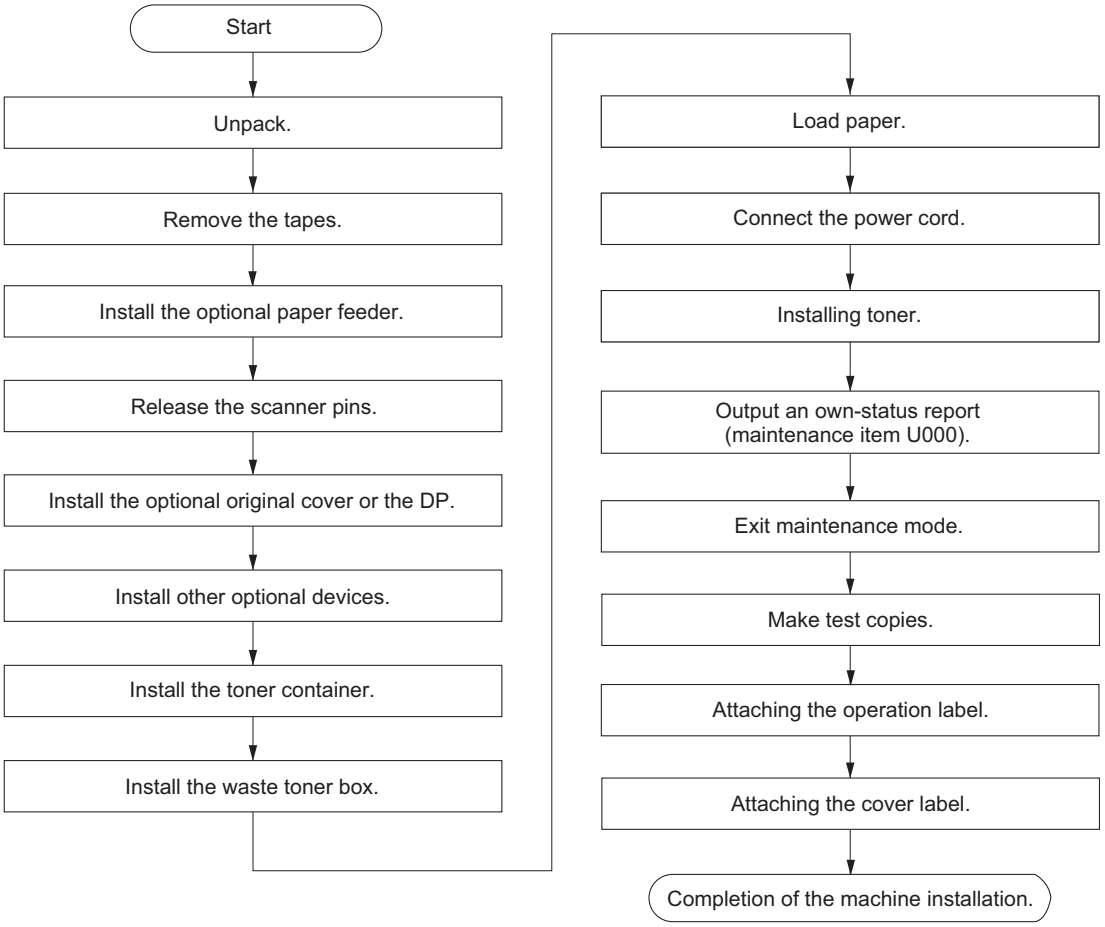


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Unpacking.

18 ppm model

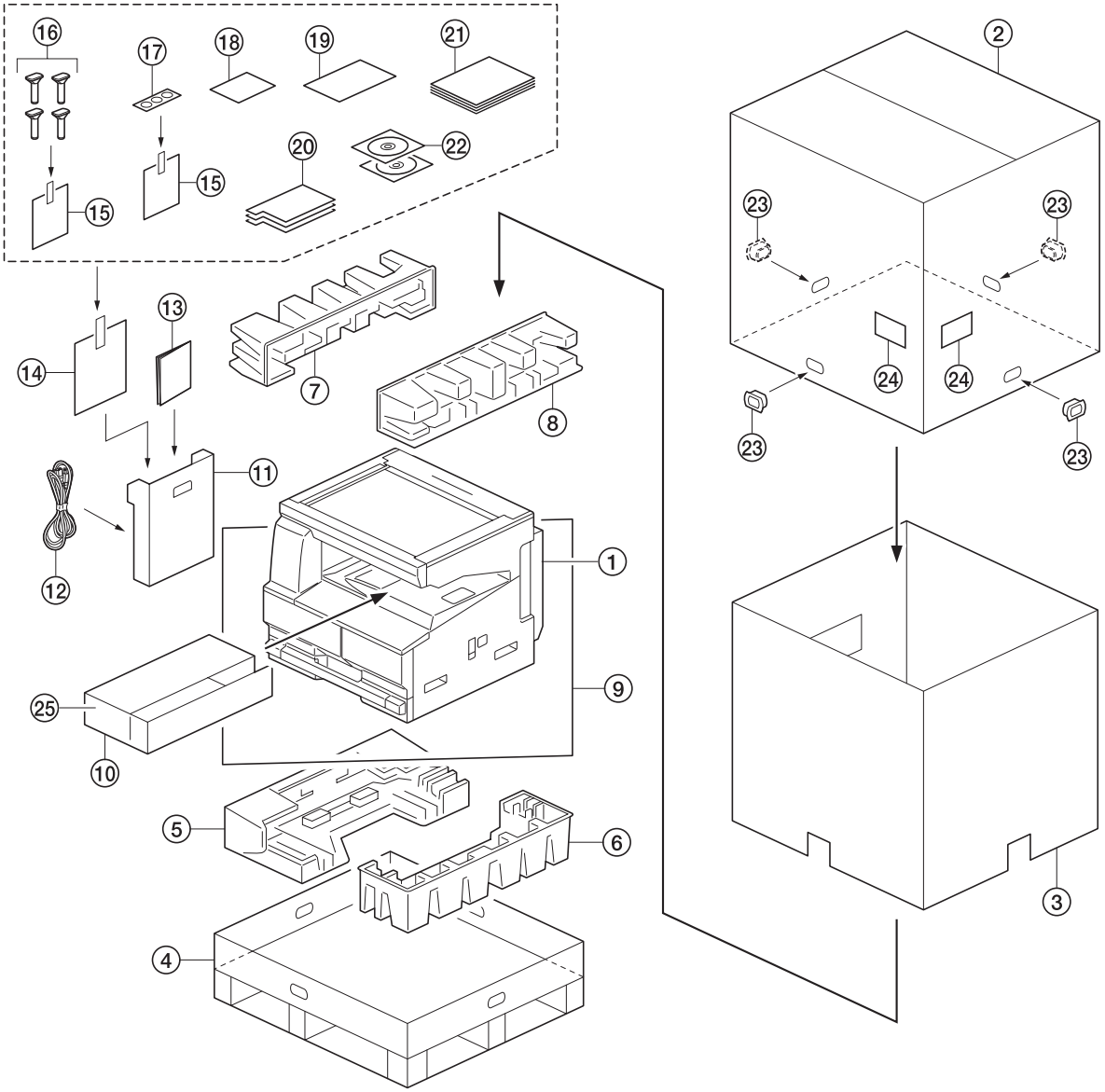


Figure 1-2-2 Unpacking

1. Machine
2. Outer case
3. Inner frame
4. Skid
5. Bottom left pad
6. Bottom right pad
7. Top left pad
8. Top right pad
9. Machine cover
10. Eject spacer
11. Document tray
12. Power cord
13. Paper storage bags
14. Plastic bag
15. Plastic bag
16. Cursor pins
17. Cover label
18. Cassette size label
19. Operation label A
20. Operation label B
21. Operation guide*
22. CD-ROMs*
23. Hinge joints
24. Barcode labels
25. Toner container

*: 120 V specifications only

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

22 ppm model

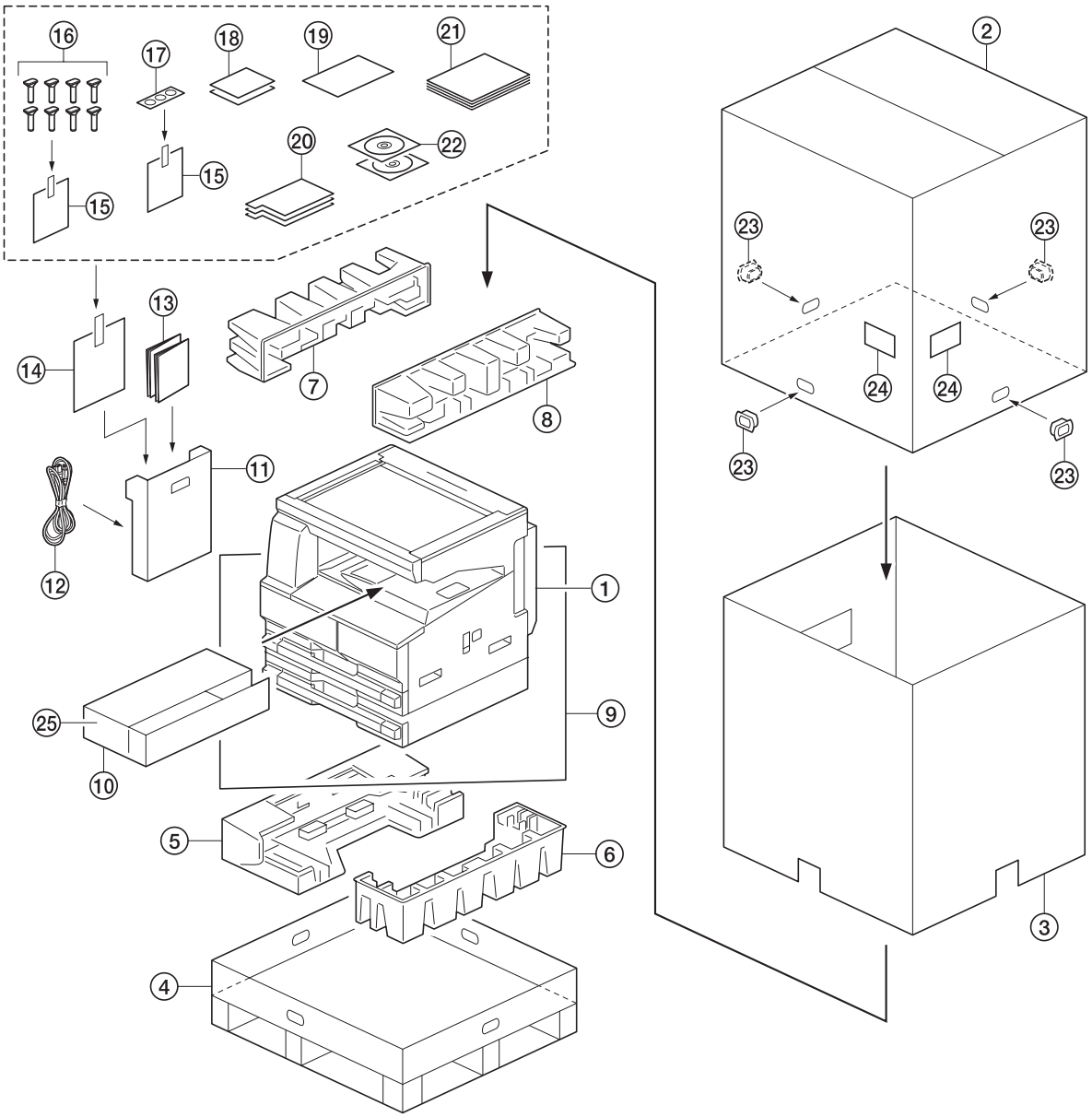


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

1. Machine
2. Outer case
3. Inner frame
4. Skid
5. Bottom left pad
6. Bottom right pad
7. Top left pad
8. Top right pad
9. Machine cover
10. Eject spacer
11. Document tray
12. Power cord
13. Paper storage bags
14. Plastic bag
15. Plastic bag
16. Cursor pins
17. Cover label
18. Cassette size labels
19. Operation label A
20. Operation label B
21. Operation guide*
22. CD-ROMs*
23. Hinge joints
24. Barcode labels
25. Toner container

*: 120 V specifications only

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the tapes.

1. Remove four tapes and remove the plastic sheet.

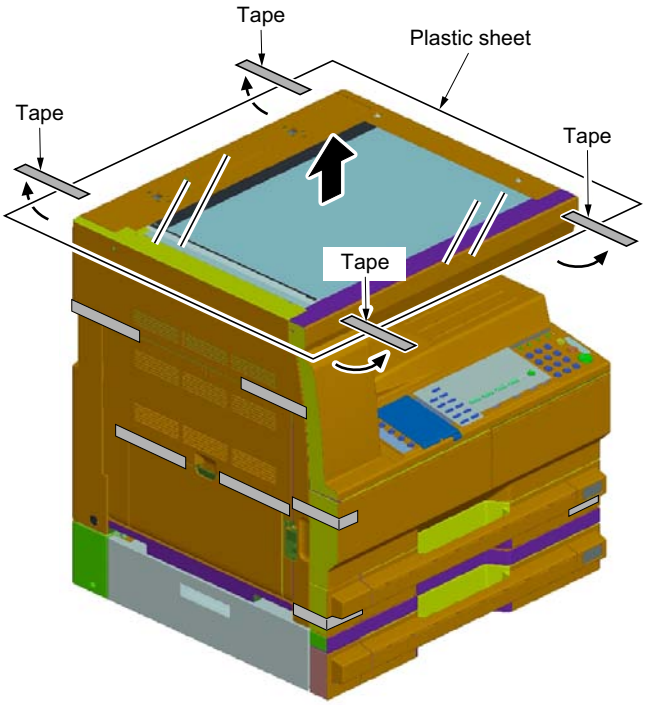


Figure 1-2-4

2. Remove the tapes.
   18 ppm model: Five
   22 ppm model: Seven

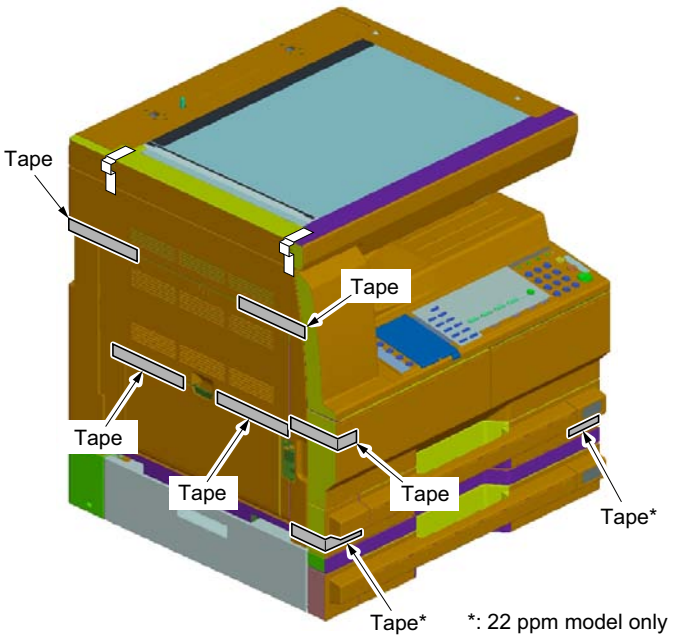


Figure 1-2-5

3. Pull the cassette out.
4. Remove the tapes.
   18 ppm model: One
   22 ppm model: Two (upper and lower cassettes)
5. Push the cassette back in.

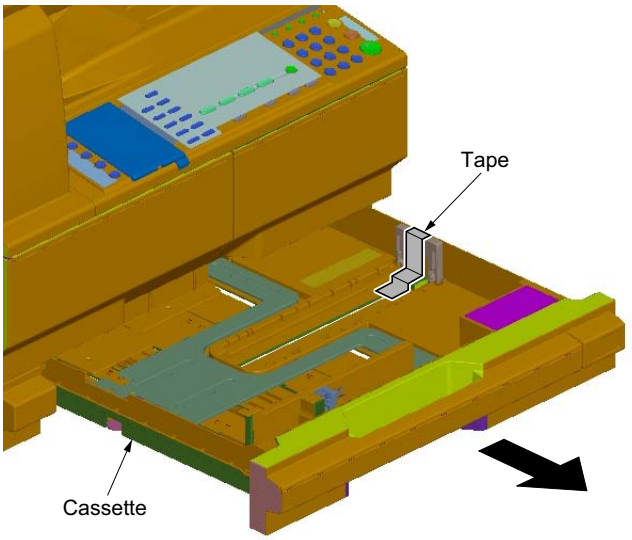


Figure 1-2-6

Install the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.

Release the scanner pins.

1. Remove two tapes.
2. Remove two scanner pins.

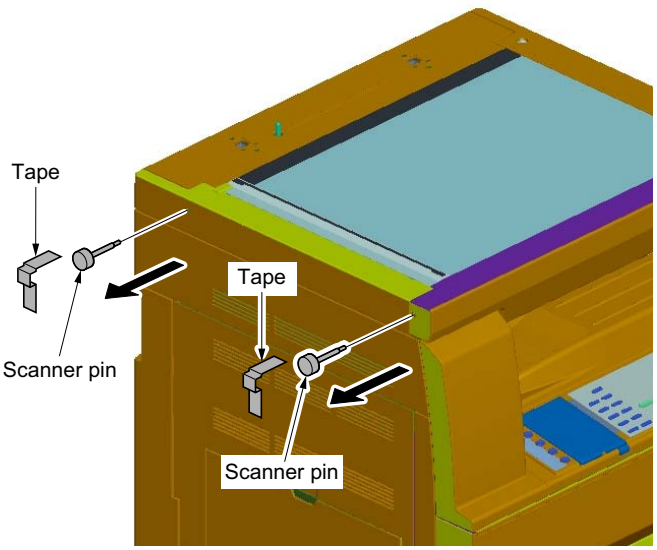


Figure 1-2-7

Install the optional original cover or the DP.

1. Install the optional original cover or DP.

Install other optional devices.

1. Install the optional devices (duplex unit, job separator, built-in finisher and/or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Install the toner container.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Hold the toner container vertically and tap the upper part five times or more.
   Turn the toner container upside down and tap the upper part five times or more.

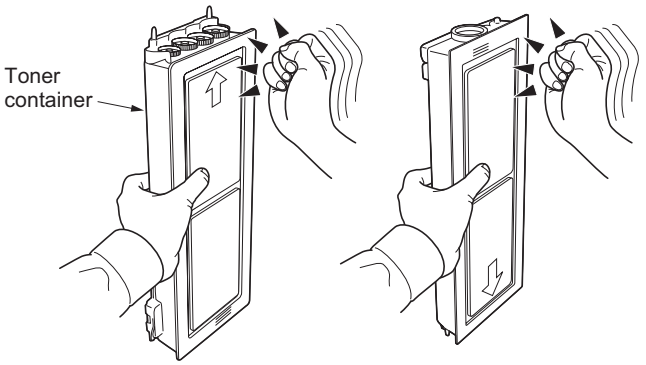


Figure 1-2-8

3. Shake the toner container up and down five times or more.
   Turn the toner container upside down and shake it five times or more.

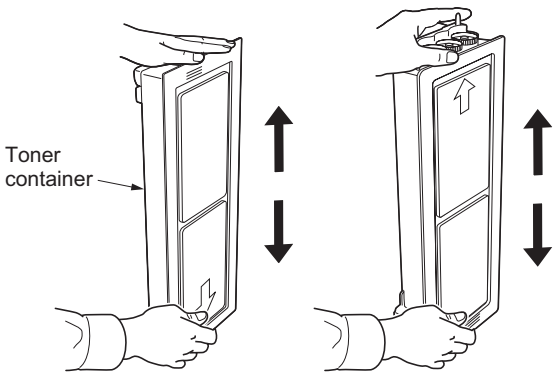


Figure 1-2-9

4. Shake the toner container approximately five times in the horizontal direction to stir toner.

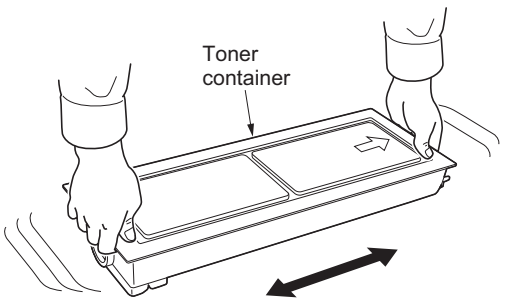


Figure 1-2-10

5. Gently push the toner container into the machine.
   Push the container all the way into the machine until it locks in place.

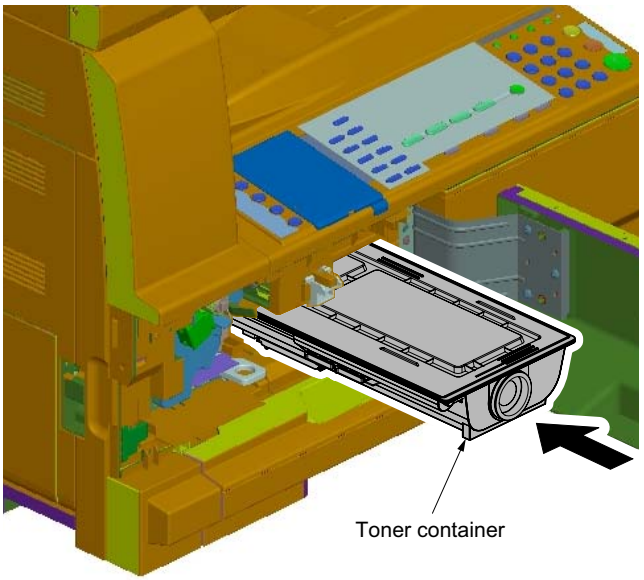


Figure 1-2-11

Install the waste toner box.

1. Install the waste toner box in the machine.
2. Close the front cover.

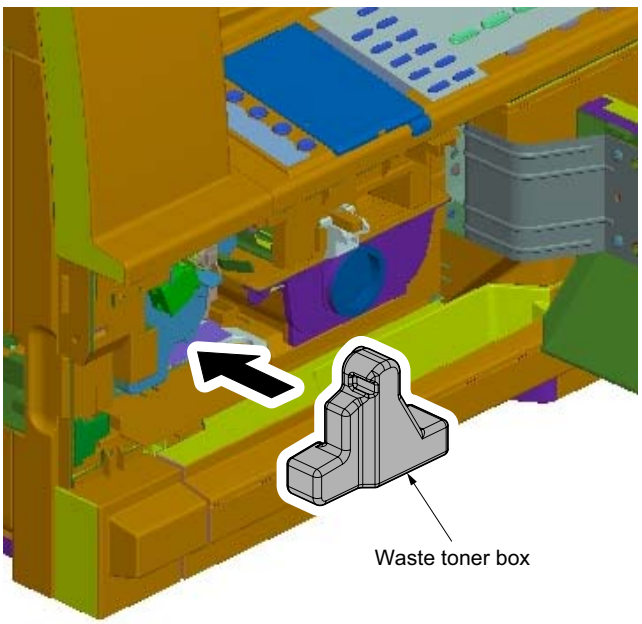


Figure 1-2-12

Load paper.

1. Load paper in the cassette.

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector on the machine.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

Installing toner.

1. Turn the main power switch on. Toner installation is started.
2. The drive chain is disengaged when toner installation is completed.
   Run maintenance mode U130 if [Add Toner] remains displayed even after the drive chain is disengaged.

Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000).

1. Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
2. Enter 000 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
3. Select MAINTENANCE and press the start key to output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items.
4. Press the stop/clear key.

Exit maintenance mode.

1. Enter 001 using the numeric keys and press the start key. The machine exits the maintenance mode.

Make test copies.

1. Place an original and make test copies.

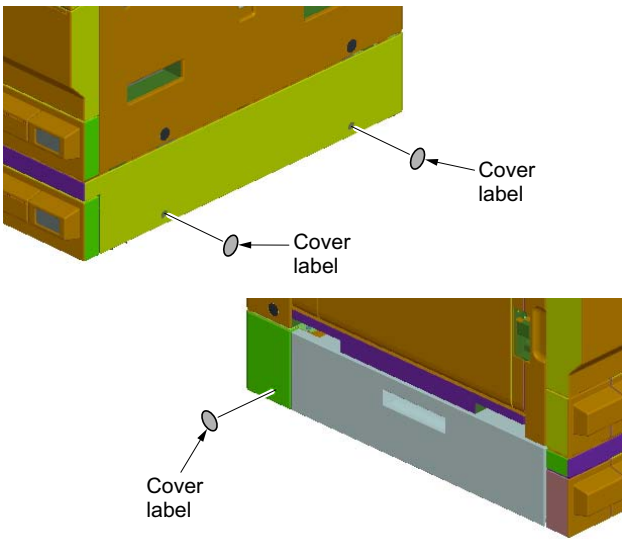
Attaching the operation label.

1. According to need, attach the correspond operation label.

Attaching the cover label.

1. Attach the cover labels to three screw holes in the machine.
   Right side: Two
   Left side: One

[22 ppm model]



[18 ppm model]

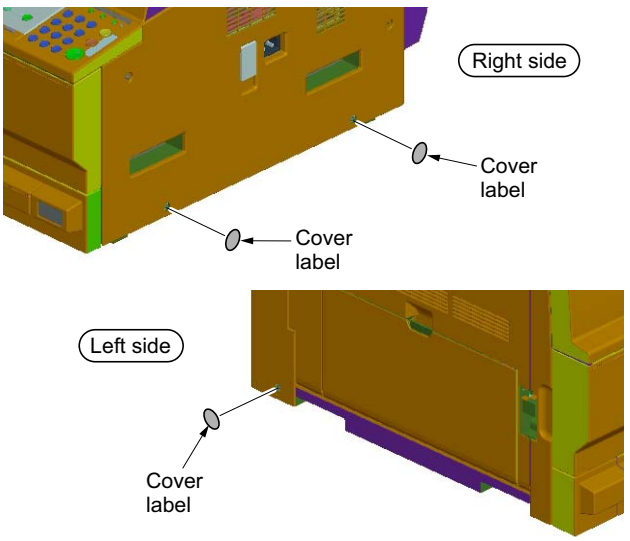


Figure 1-2-13

Completion of the machine installation.

(2) Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)
U254	Turning auto start function ON/OFF	ON
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection
U264	Setting the display order of the date	MONTH-DATE-YEAR (inch specifications) DATE-MONTH-YEAR (metric specifications)
U277	Setting auto application change time	30 s
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON
U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF
U344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR (inch specifications) GEEA (metric specifications)

1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Installing the key counter requires the following component:
Key counter (P/N 3025418011)
Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)
Key counter wire set (P/N 302KK94590)
Key counter mounting plate (P/N 2C960100)

Supplied parts of key counter set:
Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)
Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)
Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)
Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)
Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)
Two (2) Edgings (P/N 7YZM210006++H01)
One (1) Band (P/N M21AH010)
One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)
Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)
Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)
Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)
One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)
One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)
One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)
One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)
Five (5) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)
Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

Supplied parts of key counter wire set:
Key counter wire (P/N 302KK46300)
One (1) Wire saddle RLWC-1SV (P/N 7YZM610001++H01)
One (1) Wire saddle RLWT-0.5V (P/N 7YZM610009++H01)
One (1) Edging (P/N 7YZM210003++H01)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.

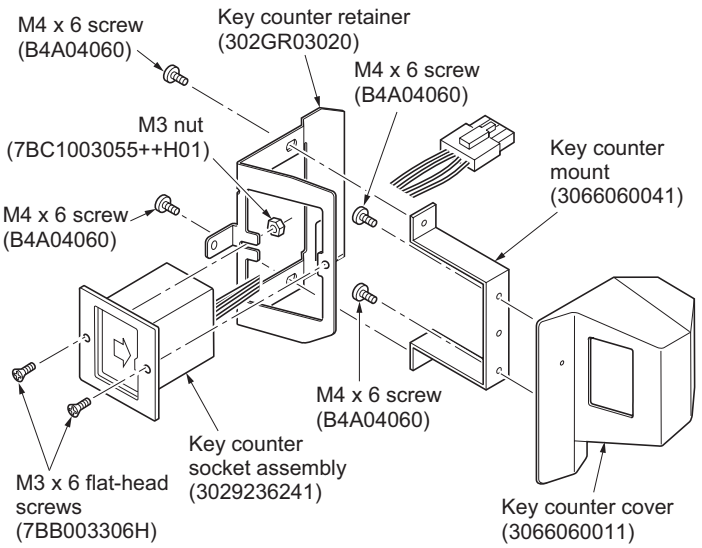


Figure 1-2-14

5. Remove five screws and remove the rear cover.

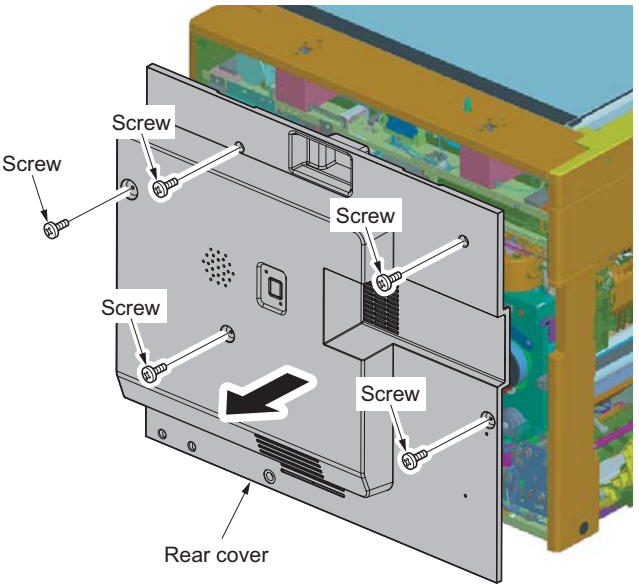


Figure 1-2-15

6. Cut out the aperture on the right middle cover using nippers.

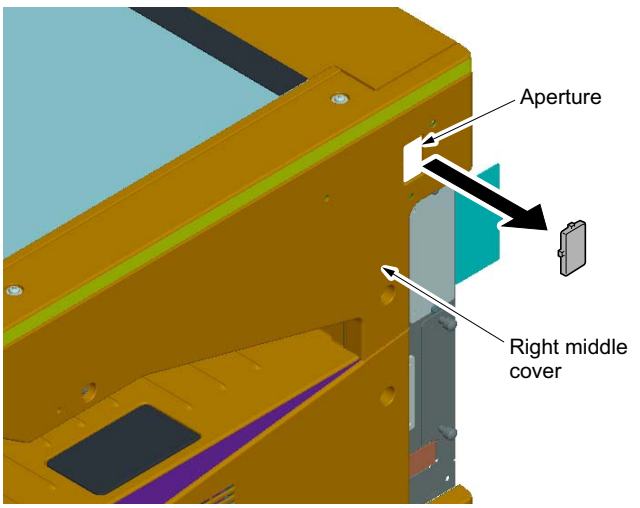


Figure 1-2-16

7. Remove two screws and remove the shield cover.

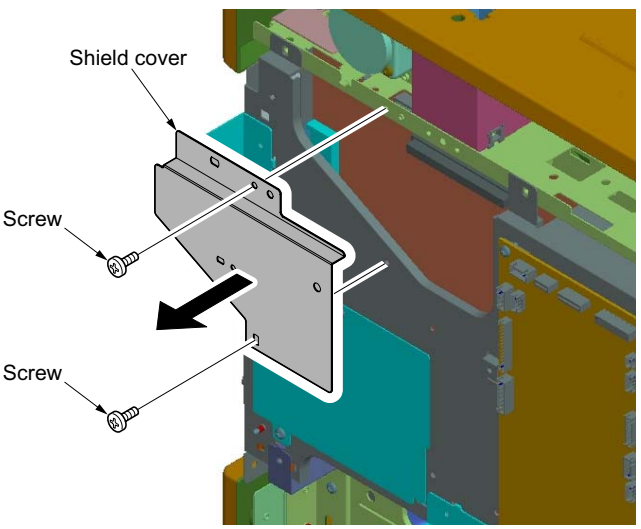


Figure 1-2-17

8. Fit two wire saddles and the edging to machine.

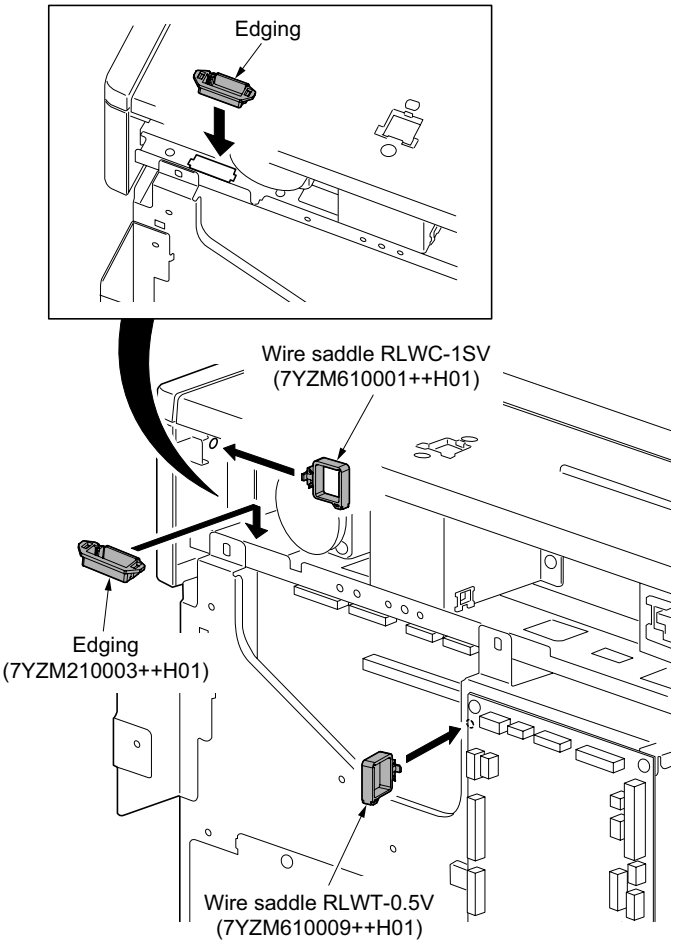


Figure 1-2-18

9. Pass the key counter wire through two wire saddles and the edging.

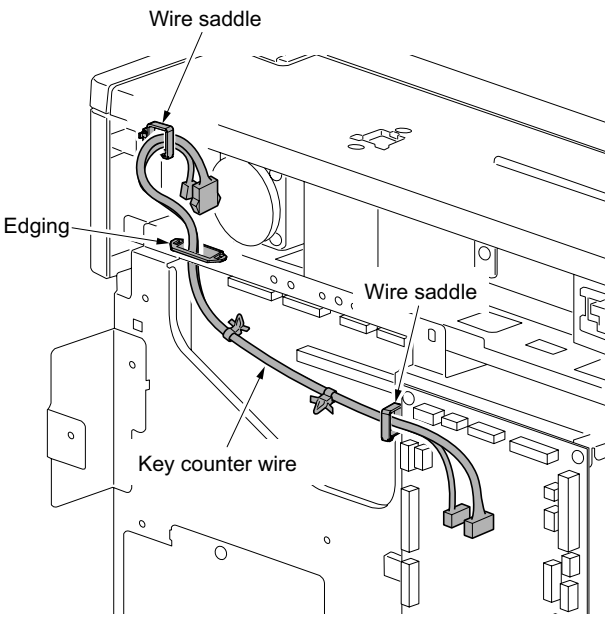


Figure 1-2-19

10. Insert two bands of the key counter wire to the machine and shield cover.
11. Refit the shield cover.

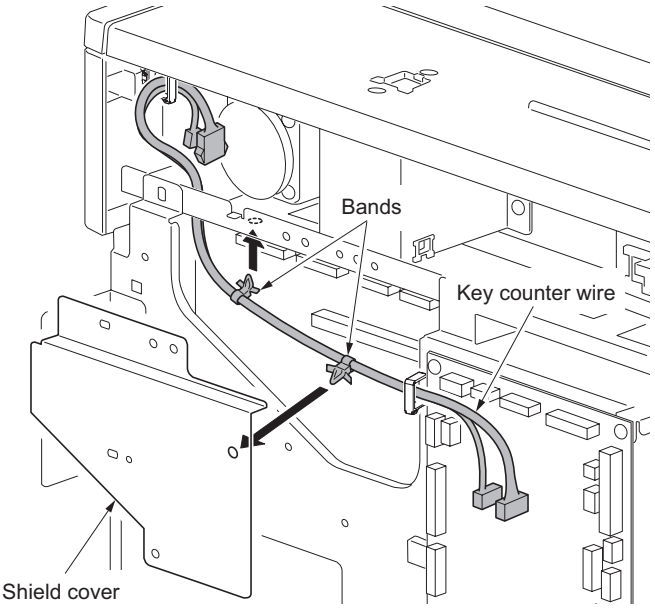


Figure 1-2-20

12. Connect the 4-pin connector of the key counter wire to the YC12 on the engine PWB.
    Put the 1-pin connector that is not connected in the shield box.
13. Pull the other 4-pin connector out from the aperture of the right middle cover.
14. Refit the rear cover.

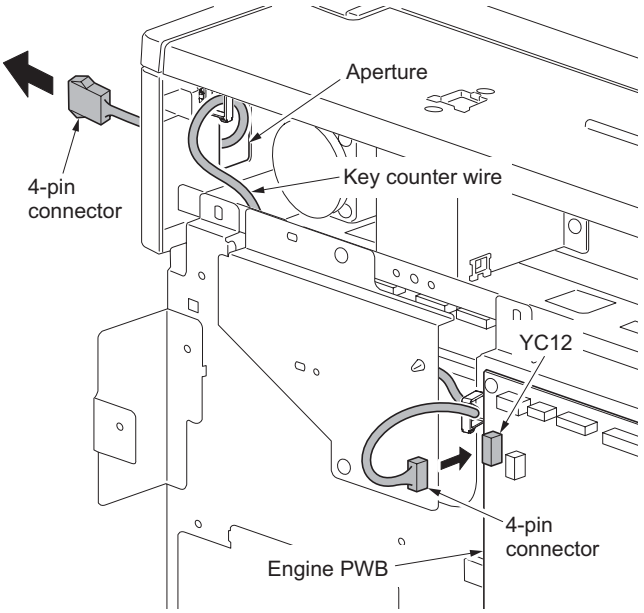


Figure 1-2-21

15. Pass the 4-pin connector of the key counter signal cable through the aperture in the key counter mounting plate.
16. Hook the square hole on the key counter cover onto the key counter mounting plate.

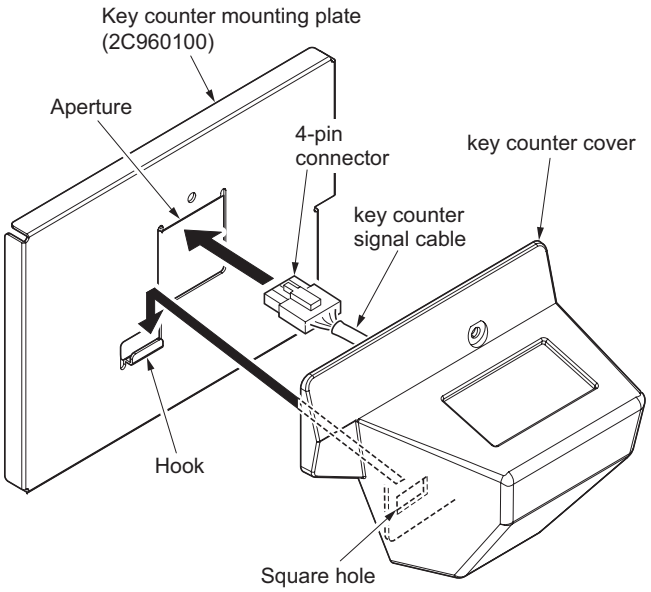


Figure 1-2-22

17. Connect the 4-pin connector of the key counter signal cable to the 4-pin connector of the key counter wire.
18. Insert the hook of the key counter mounting plate in the aperture of the right middle cover.
19. Fit the key counter cover and the key counter mounting plate using the M4 x 30 screw.
20. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

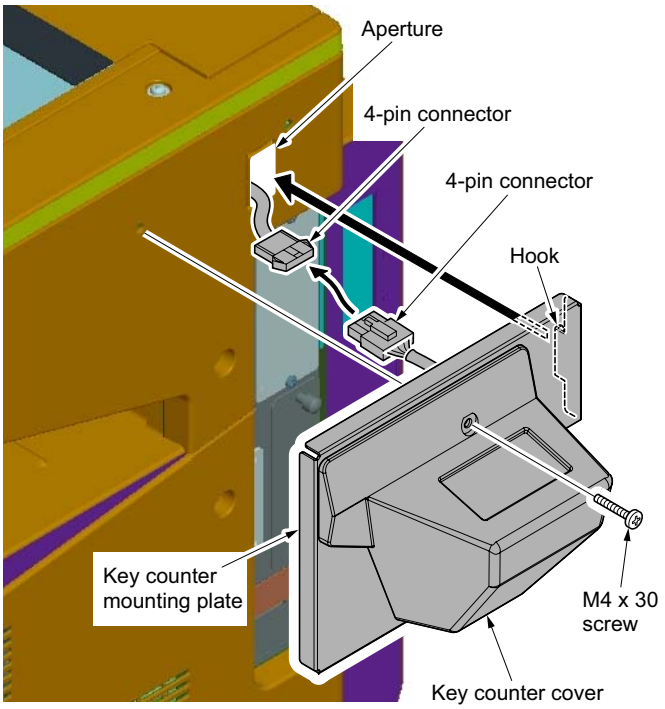


Figure 1-2-23

21. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
22. Run maintenance item U204 and select "KEY-COUNTER".
23. Exit the maintenance mode.
24. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the message display when the key counter is pulled out.
25. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.

1-2-4 Installing the cassette heater (option)

Installing the cassette heater requires the following component:
Cassette heater (P/N 302KK94470): for 220 to 240 V specifications only
Cassette heater (P/N 302KK94460): for 120 V specifications
One (1) M3 x 8 S tight screw (P/N 7BB700308H)

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the screw and release three hooks and then remove the front right cover.
3. Pull out the cassette.

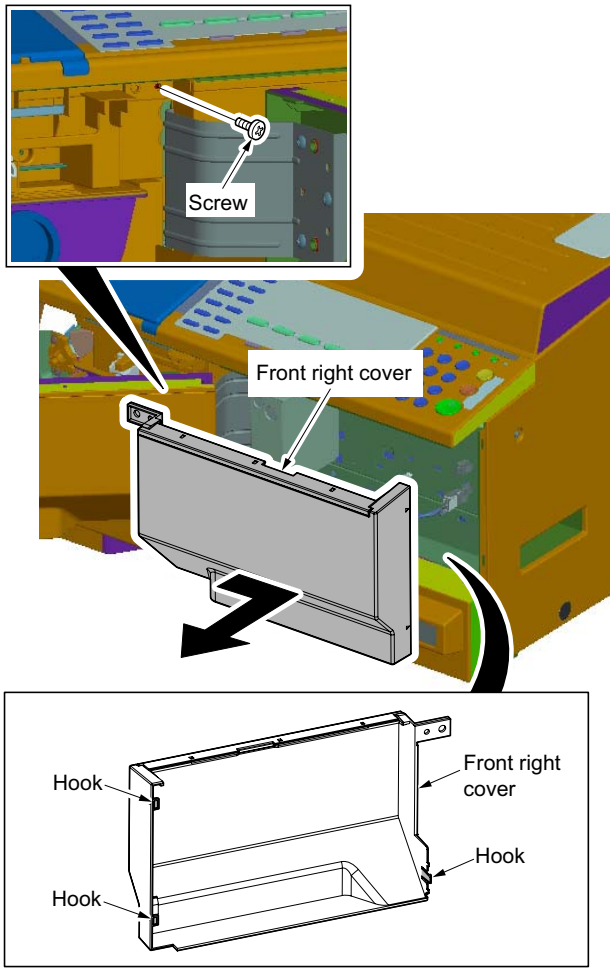


Figure 1-2-24

4. Pass the cassette heater cable through the edging and fit the cassette heater to the machine.

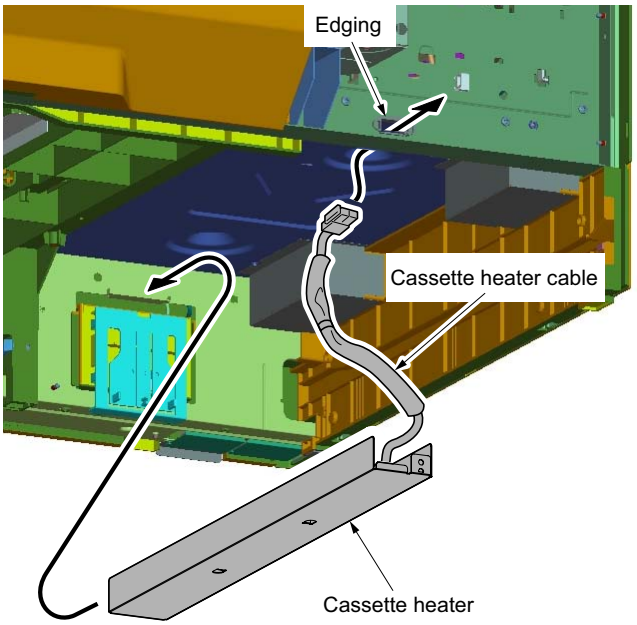


Figure 1-2-25

5. Attach the cassette heater using the M3 x 8 S tight screw.
6. Pass the cassette heater cable through the clamp. Connect the connector of the cassette heater cable to the connector of the machine.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

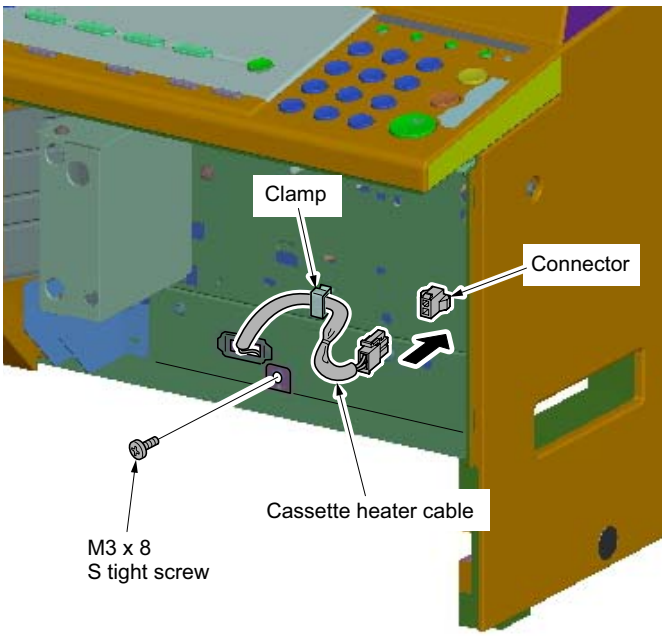


Figure 1-2-26

1-2-5 Installing the cassette heater for paper feeder (option) (22 ppm model only)

Installing the cassette heater requires the following component:
Cassette heater (P/N 303MH94060): for 220 to 240 V specifications only
Cassette heater (P/N 303MH94050): for 120 V specifications
One (1) M3 x 8 P tight screw (P/N 7BB202308H)

Procedure

1. Remove the screw and the pin and then remove the cassette rear cover.
2. Pull out the cassette.

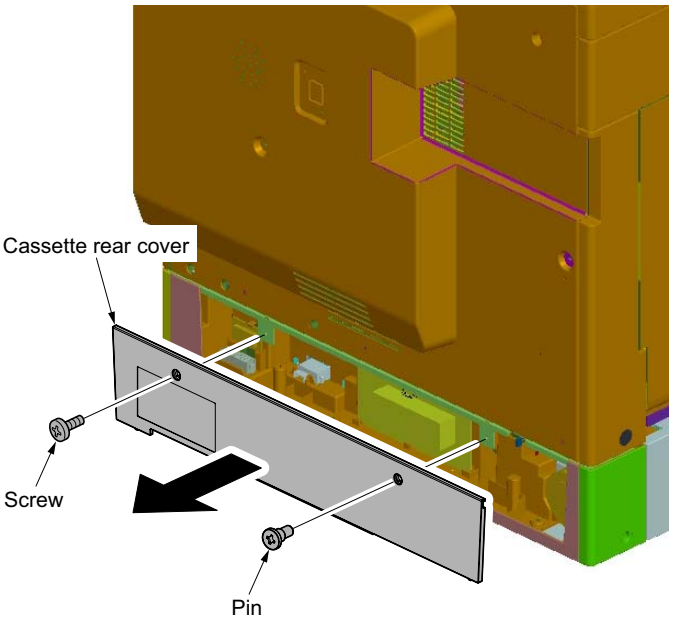


Figure 1-2-27

3. Pass the cassette heater cable through the hole at the machine rear side.
4. Insert the stay of the cassette heater into the hole at the machine rear side.
5. Attach the cassette heater using the M3 x 8 P tight screw.

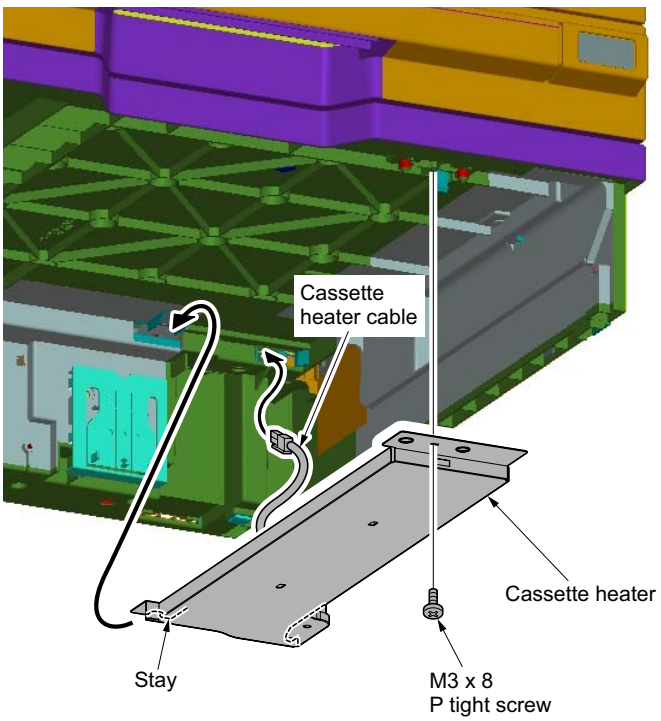


Figure 1-2-28

6. Connect the connector of the cassette heater cable to the connector of the machine.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

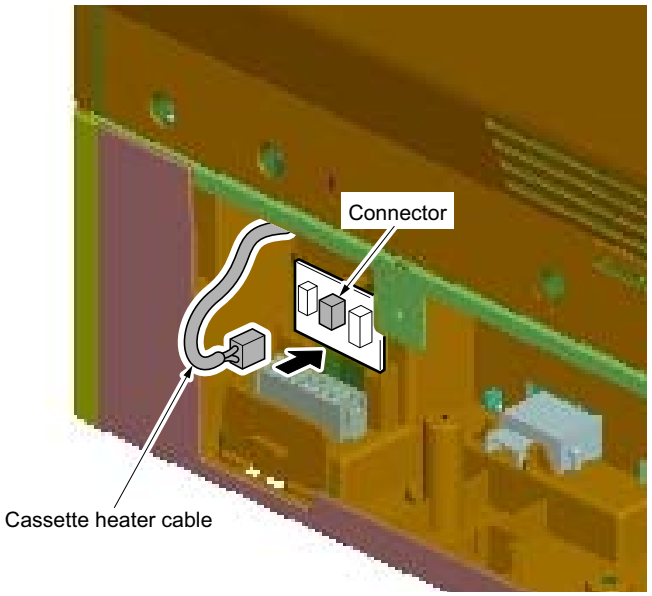
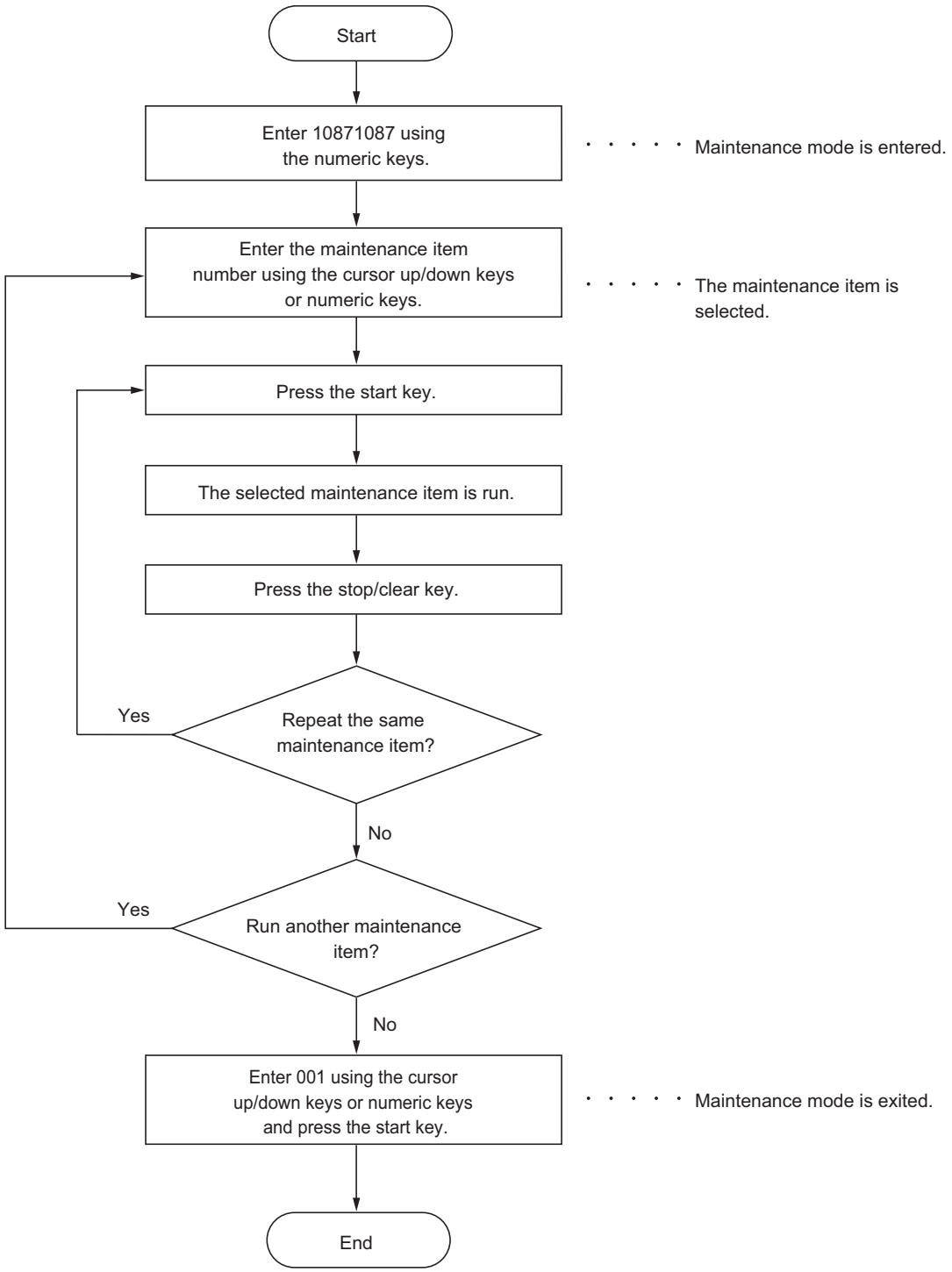


Figure 1-2-29

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance modes item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	-
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	**********[*1,*2]
	U004	Displaying the machine number	-
	U005	Copying without paper	-
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Initialization	U020	Initializing all data	-
	U021	Initializing counters and mode settings	-
	U022	Initializing backup memory	-
	U026	Evacuation of backup data	-
	U027	Return of backup data	-
Drive, paper feed, paper conveying and cooling system	U030	Checking motor operation	-
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	-
	U032	Checking clutch operation	-
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing Adjusting the leading edge registration Adjusting the center line Adjusting the trailing edge registration	2.8/0.0/0.0/0.0/0.0/0.8[*1] -2.4/0.0/0.0/0.0/0.0/0.0[*1] 2.0[*1]
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length/Width	330/210[*1]
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper	30/20/0/-20/-20/20[*1]
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed	0.4/0.6/-0.5/0.0/-0.1 -0.2/-0.3/0.0/0.0/0.5/0.0[*1]
Optical	U060	Adjusting the scanner input properties	12[*1]
	U061	Turning the exposure lamp on	-
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0[*1]
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification Main scanning direction/auxiliary scanning direction	0/-10[*1]
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0[*1]
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	-4/0[*1]
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0[*1]
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0[*1]
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0[*1]
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0/0[*1]
	U073	Checking scanner operation	-
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	0[*1]
	U076	Executing DP automatic adjustment	-
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	ON/35[*1]
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	-
	U092	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-
	U093	Setting the exposure density gradient Text and photo/Text/Photo	0/0/0/2/3[*1]
	U099	Adjusting original size detection	170/30/240[*1]

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
High voltage	U100	Setting the main high voltage Grid control voltage Copy interval Copy quantity Correction amount	 107[*1] 60[*1] 50[*1] 10[*1]
	U101	Setting the other high voltages Setting the developing bias Setting the transfer voltage Setting the separation voltage	 27/45/22/45[*1] 123/126/33/31[*1] 1/20/42/2[*1]
	U110	Checking the drum count	-
Developing	U130	Initial setting for the developing unit	-
	U144	Setting toner loading operation	OFF/5/30[*1]
	U150	Checking sensors for toner	-
	U157	Checking/clearing the developing drive time	-
	U158	Checking the developing count	-
Fuser and cleaning	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature Primary stabilization fixing temperature Secondary stabilization fixing temperature Copying operation temperature 1 Copying operation temperature 2	 145[*1] 165[*1] 175[*1] 185[*1] 1[*1] 2[*1]
	U162	Stabilizing fixing forcibly	-
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser counts	-
	U198	Setting the fuser phase control	OFF[*1,*2]
	U199	Checking the fuser temperature	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-
	U203	Checking DP operation	-
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF[*1,*2]
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-
	U233	Limiting job separator output	MODE0[*1]
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-
	U245	Checking messages	-
	U246	Setting the finisher	4/4/4[*1]
	U249	Checking the paper ejection to optional devices	-
Mode setting	U250	Setting the maintenance cycle	150000[*1,*2]
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-
	U252	Setting the destination	JAPAN[*1]
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)[*1,*2]
	U254	Turning auto start function ON/OFF	ON[*1,*2]
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	EJECT[*1,*2]

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Mode setting	U264	Setting the display order of the date	MONTH-DATE-YEAR (inch) DATE-MONTH-YEAR (metric)
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0*1
	U277	Setting auto application change time	30*1,*2
	U285	Setting service status page	ON*1
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON*1,*2
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0/1.0/1.0*1,*2
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-
	U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON*1,*2
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF*1,*2
	U344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR (inch)*1,*2 GEEA (metric)*1,*2
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	0*1,*2
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	3.0/3.0/4.0*1
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen	2.0/3.0/2.0/2.0*1
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	2.0/3.0/2.0/2.0*1
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	0.0*1
Network scanner	U504	Initializing the scanner NIC	-
	U506	Setting the time out	10*1,*2
Others	U901	Checking copy counts by paper feed locations	-
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-
	U904	Checking/clearing the service call counts	-
	U905	Checking counts by optional devices	-
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-
	U910	Clearing the black ratio data	-
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	-
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-
	U925	Checking/clearing the system error counts	-
	U926	Rewriting FAX program	-
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-
	U931	Setting the automatic toner install	OFF*1
	U941	Setting the default magnification ratio of the default cassette	100%*1,*2
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0*1
	U969	Checking of toner area code	-
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	-
	U991	Checking the scanner count	-
	U993	Outputting a VTC-PG pattern	-

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
Outputting an own-status report
Description
Prints out a list of the current settings of all maintenance items, and occurrences of paper jams and service calls.
Purpose
To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or the occurrences of paper jams and service calls. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, print out a list of the current settings of the maintenance items so that you can reenter the same settings after initialization or replacement.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be output.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>JAM</td><td>List of the paper jam occurrences</td></tr>
<tr><td>SERVICE CALL</td><td>List of the service call occurrences</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The interrupt copy mode is entered and a list is output.
When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location.
When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U001</td><td>
Exiting the maintenance mode
Description
Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.
Purpose
To exit the maintenance mode.
Method
Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U002</td><td>
Setting the factory default data
Description
Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings.
Purpose
To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed).
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key.
The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U003</td><td>
Setting the service telephone number
Description
Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.
Purpose
To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits) using the numeric keys.
Move the cursor using the cursor left/right keys and select a number or symbol using the cursor up/down keys.
To enter symbols, press the keys shown below as required.
<table>
<tr><th>Key</th><th>Symbol</th></tr>
<tr><td>* key</td><td>*</td></tr>
<tr><td># key</td><td>#</td></tr>
<tr><td>Image mode selection key</td><td>(</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto density key</td><td>)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lighter key</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Darker key</td><td>Space</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The phone number is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U004</td><td>
Displaying the machine number
Description
Displays the machine number.
Purpose
To check the machine number.
Method
1. Press the start key. The currently machine number is displayed.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U005</td><td>
Copying without paper
Description
Simulates the copy operation without paper feed.
Purpose
To check the overall operation of the machine.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be operated.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>PPC</td><td>Only the machine operates.</td></tr>
<tr><td>PPC + DP</td><td>Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key.
4. Press the interrupt key. The copy mode screen is displayed.
5. Set the operation conditions required on the copy mode screen. Changes in the following settings can be made.
Paper feed locations
Magnifications
Simplex or duplex copy mode
Number of copies: in simplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed when set to 999; in duplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed regardless of the setting.
Copy density
Keys on the operation panel
6. To control the paper feed pulley, remove all the paper in the drawers, or the drawers. With the paper present, the paper feed pulley does not operate.
7. Press the start key. The operation starts.
Copy operation is simulated without paper under the set conditions.
To stop continuous operation, press the stop/clear key.
8. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the interrupt key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U019</td><td>
Displaying the ROM version
Description
Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.
Purpose
To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.
Method
1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Main ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>LANG(St)</td><td>Standard language ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>LANG(Op)</td><td>Optional language ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN BOOT</td><td>Boot of main ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>PRINTER</td><td>Printer ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>NWS</td><td>Optional network scanner ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP</td><td>Optional DP ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>FINISHER</td><td>Optional built-in finisher ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASS2</td><td>Optional first paper feeder ROM (standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASS3</td><td>Optional second paper feeder ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASS4</td><td>Optional third paper feeder ROM</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U020</td><td>
Initializing all data
Description
Initializes all the backup RAM on the main PWB to return to the original settings.
Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.
Reset each intialized mode based on an own-status report U000 printed at installing the machine.
Purpose
To be executed as required.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. All data in the backup memory is initialized and the default setting for the Japan specifications is registered.
4. When initialization is complete, the machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U021</td><td>
Initializing counters and mode settings
Description
Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination.
Refer to *2 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.
Purpose
To return the machine settings to their factory default.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting.
4. When initialization is complete, the machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U022</td><td>
Initializing backup memory
Description
Initializes only the data set for the optical section or initializes various setting data when installing the optional network scanner board.
Purpose
To be executed as required.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key.
The data for the optical section (U060 to 067, U092 to 099, U403, U990 and U991) is initialized.
The setting data of scanner function initial settings are initialized, and the registered transmission and reception are cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U026</td><td>
Evacuation of backup data
Description
Transfers the backup data of the main PWB to the EEPROM.
Purpose
Used when replacing the main PWB.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key to transfer the backup data. The screen displays the result.

EXECUTE
CHECK SUM : ****
CODE : XXXX (See the table below)
<table>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0000</td><td>Processing ends correctly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0101</td><td>Verification abnormality occurs.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0102</td><td>Verification abnormality occurs at the time of check sum entry.</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the stop/clear key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U027</td><td>
Return of backup data
Description
Transfers the backup data of the EEPROM which was transferred with the U026 to flash memory.
Purpose
To use after the main PWB replaced.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key to transfer the backup data. The screen displays the result.

EXECUTE
CHECK SUM : ****
CODE : XXXX (See the table below)
<table>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0000</td><td>Processing ends correctly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0203</td><td>Check sum does not agree when reading out from the EEPROM.</td></tr>
</table>
4. Disconnect and connect the power plug.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U030</td><td>
Checking motor operation
Description
Drives each motor.
Purpose
To check the operation of each motor.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the motor to be operated using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Drive motor (DM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>DRUM</td><td>Drum motor (DRM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>T1</td><td>Cassette drive motor 1 (CDM1) is turned ON
(option for 18 ppm model / standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>T2</td><td>Cassette drive motor 2 (CDM2) is turned ON (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>T3</td><td>Cassette drive motor 3 (CDM3) is turned ON (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>EJE1</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned ON (forward)</td></tr>
<tr><td>EJE2</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned ON (reverse)</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U031</td><td>
Checking switches for paper conveying
Description
Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.
Purpose
To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status.
When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr>
<tr><td>EJE</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>RES</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF2</td><td>Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1)
(option for 18 ppm model / standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF3</td><td>Cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>BRA</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>DUP</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>JOB</td><td>Job eject switch (JBESW) (option)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U032</td><td>
Checking clutch operation
Description
Turns each clutch or solenoid on.
Purpose
To check the operation of each clutch or solenoid.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the clutch or solenoid to be operated using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The clutch or solenoid turns on for 1 s.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Clutches and solenoid</th></tr>
<tr><td>PF1</td><td>Paper feed clutch (PFCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PFBYP</td><td>MP solenoid (MPSOL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>REG</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>DUP</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF2</td><td>Cassette paper feed clutch 1 (CPFCL1)
(option for 18 ppm model / standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF3</td><td>Cassette paper feed clutch 2 (CPFCL2) (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF4</td><td>Cassette paper feed clutch 3 (CPFCL3) (option)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U034	**Adjusting the print start timing** **Description** Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the trailing edges of the copy image and original. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
ADJ. RCL ON TIMING	Leading edge registration adjustment
ADJ. LSU ON TIMING	Center line adjustment
ADJ. MGN REAR	Trailing edge margin adjustment

Adjustment: Leading edge registration adjustment

1. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
RCL ON	Paper feed from cassette	-5.0 to 10.0	2.8	0.1 mm
RCL BYP	Paper feed from MP tray	-5.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
RCL T1	Paper feed from optional first paper feeder (standard for 22ppm model)	-5.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
RCL T2	Paper feed from optional second paper feeder	-5.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
RCL T3	Paper feed from optional third paper feeder	-5.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
RCL DUP	Duplex mode (second side)	-5.0 to 10.0	0.8	0.1 mm

2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For output example 1, decrease the value.
   For output example 2, increase the value.

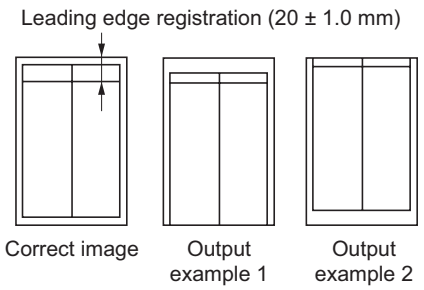
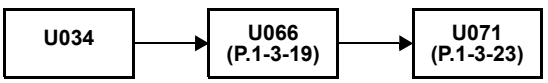


Figure 1-3-1

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Maintenance item No.	Description
U034	**Adjustment: Center line adjustment**

1. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
LSU OUT	Paper feed from cassette	-7.0 to 10.0	-2.4	0.1 mm
LSU BYP	Paper feed from MP tray	-7.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
LSU T1	Paper feed from optional first paper feeder (standard for 22ppm model)	-7.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
LSU T2	Paper feed from optional second paper feeder	-7.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
LSU T3	Paper feed from optional third paper feeder	-7.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm
LSU DUP	Duplex mode (second side)	-7.0 to 10.0	0.0	0.1 mm

2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For output example 1, decrease the value.
   For output example 2, increase the value.

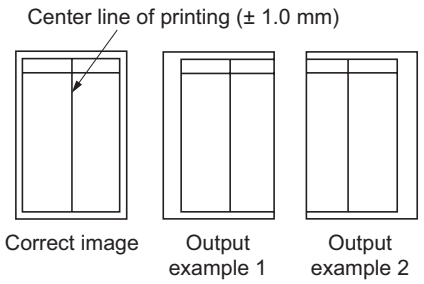
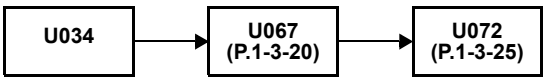


Figure 1-3-2

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



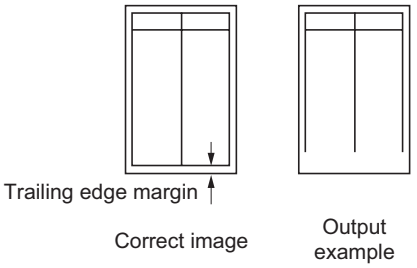
<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U034</td><td>
Adjustment: Trailing edge margin adjustment
1. Select [MGN REAR].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>MGN REAR</td><td>Trailing edge margin adjustment</td><td>-4.0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.1 ms</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
For output example, increase the value.


Figure 1-3-3
5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U035</td><td>
Setting the printing area for folio paper
Description
Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.
Purpose
To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr>
<tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U051	**Adjusting the deflection in the paper** **Description** Adjusts the deflection in the paper. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
PF1	Paper feed from cassette	-50 to 127	30
BYPASS	Paper feed from MP tray	-50 to 127	20
PF2	Paper feed from optional first paper feeder (standard for 22ppm model)	-50 to 127	0
PF3	Paper feed from optional second paper feeder	-50 to 127	-20
PF4	Paper feed from optional third paper feeder	-50 to 127	-20
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)	-50 to 127	20

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For output example 1, increase the value.
   For output example 2, decrease the value.
   The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.

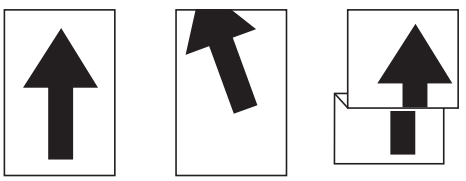


Figure 1-3-4

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

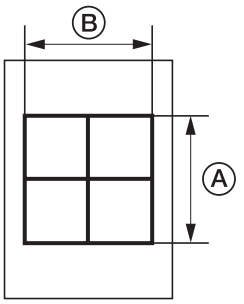
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U053	**Setting the adjustment of the motor speed** **Description** Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors. **Purpose** To adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MAIN	Drive motor speed adjustment	-5.0 to 5.0	0.4
POLY	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-5.0 to 5.0	0.6
EJE	Eject motor speed adjustment	-5.0 to 5.0	-0.5
DRUM	Drum motor speed adjustment	-5.0 to 5.0	0.0
BYP	Motor speed adjustment (for paper feed from MP tray)	-5.0 to 5.0	-0.1
CAS	Motor speed adjustment (for paper feed from optional paper feeder)	-5.0 to 5.0	-0.2
DUP	Motor speed adjustment (for duplex mode)	-5.0 to 5.0	-0.3
EJE2	Eject motor speed (optional ejection correction value in the case of paper size of A3, B4 and Ledger)	-5.0 to 5.0	0.0
EJE3	Eject motor speed (optional ejection correction value in the case of paper size other than those above)	-5.0 to 5.0	0.0
EJE4	Eject motor speed (ejection motor correction value at the time of duplex inner ejection)	0.0 to 5.0	0.5
DF	Paper conveying motor speed adjustment (for optional built-in finisher)	-4.0 to 4.0	0.0

Adjustment

1. Press the interrupt key.
2. Press the start key to output an A3/Ledger VTC pattern.



Correct values for an A3/Ledger output are:
A = 300 ± 1.0 mm
B = 270 ± 1.0 mm

Figure 1-3-5

3. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   A: Drive motor speed adjustment
   Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.
   B: Polygon motor speed adjustment
   Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the main scanning direction.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U060</td><td>
Adjusting the scanner input properties
Description
Adjusts the image scanning density.
Purpose
Used when the entire image appears too dark or light.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Image scanning density</td><td>0 to 23</td><td>12</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the density lower, and decreasing it makes the density higher.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Caution
The following settings are also reset to the initial values by performing this maintenance item:
Exposure density gradient set in maintenance mode (U093)
Exposure set in the copy default item of the copier management mode
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U061</td><td>
Turning the exposure lamp on
Description
Turns the exposure lamp on.
Purpose
To check the exposure lamp.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.
3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop/clear key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U063</td><td>
Adjusting the shading position
Description
Changes the shading position of the scanner.
Purpose
Used when white lines continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>Shading position</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U065	**Adjusting the scanner magnification** **Description** Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect. **Caution** Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order. U053 (P.1-3-16) → U065 (main scanning direction) → U065 (auxiliary scanning direction) → U067 (P.1-3-20) → U070 (P.1-3-22) **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	-10	0.1 %

Adjustment: Main scanning direction

1. Select [MAIN SCAN ADJ] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

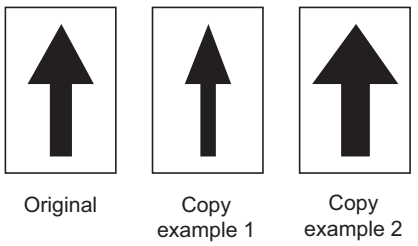


Figure 1-3-6

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Adjustment: Auxiliary scanning direction

1. Select [SUB SCAN ADJ] using the cursor up/down keys.
1. Press the interrupt key.
2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

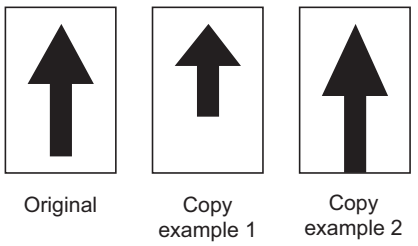


Figure 1-3-7

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U066	**Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration** **Description** Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner leading edge registration	-32 to 20	0	0.17 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-20 to 20	0	0.084 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

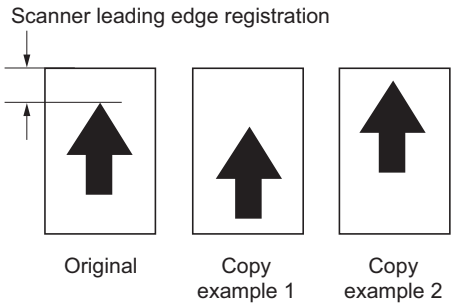
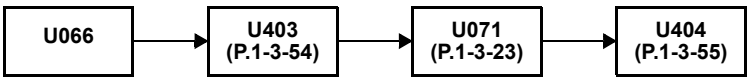


Figure 1-3-8

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U067	**Adjusting the scanner center line** **Description** Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner center line	-39 to 39	-4	0.17 mm
ADJUST DATA 2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-39 to 39	0	0.084 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value.

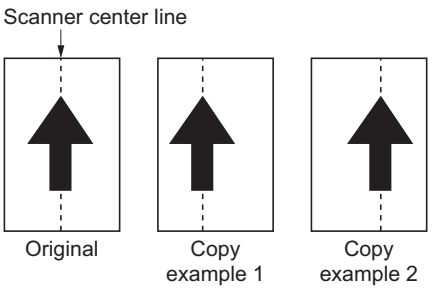
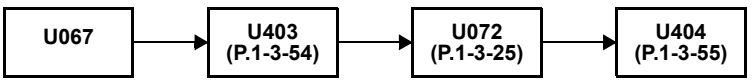


Figure 1-3-9

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U068	**Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP** **Description** Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. **Purpose** Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-17 to 17	0	0.17 mm

Increasing the value moves the image backward, and decreasing it moves the image forward.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U070	**Adjusting the DP magnification** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning speed. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the optional DP is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
CONVEY SPEED 1	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (first page)	-25 to 25	0	0.2 mm
CONVEY SPEED 2	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (second page)	-25 to 25	0	0.2 mm

1. Press the interrupt key.
2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

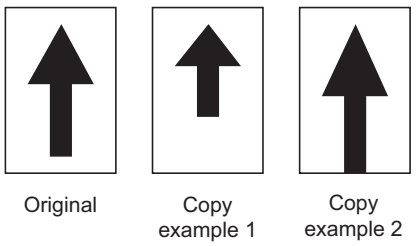
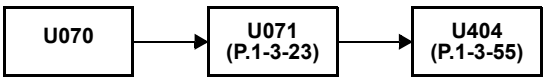


Figure 1-3-10

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	**Adjusting the DP scanning timing** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning timing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
LEAD 1	Leading edge registration (first page)	-32 to 22	0	0.2 mm
TRAIL 1	Trailing edge registration (first page)	-22 to 32	0	0.2 mm
LEAD 2	Leading edge registration (second page)	-32 to 22	0	0.2 mm
TRAIL 2	Trailing edge registration (second page)	-22 to 32	0	0.2 mm

Adjustment: Leading edge registration

1. Select [LEAD 1] or [LEAD 2] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

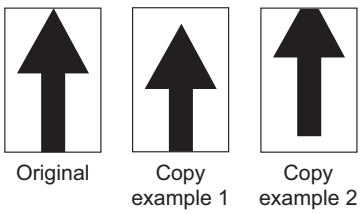
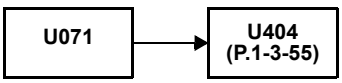


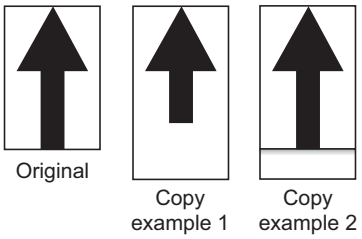
Figure 1-3-11

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	**Adjustment: Trailing edge registration** 1. Select [TRAIL 1] or [TRAIL 2] using the cursor up/down keys. 2. Press the interrupt key. 3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy. 4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.  **Figure 1-3-12** 5. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode. **U071** → **U404 (P.1-3-55)** **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U072	**Adjusting the DP center line** **Description** Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
1sided	DP center line (simplex mode)	-39 to 39	0	0.15 mm
2sided front	DP center line (first page of duplex mode)	-39 to 39	0	0.15 mm
2sided back	DP center line (second page of duplex mode)	-39 to 39	0	0.15 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

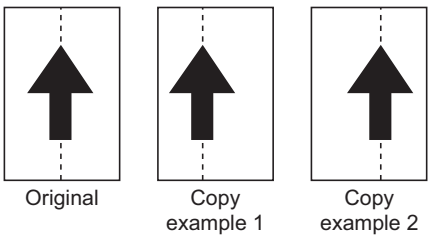
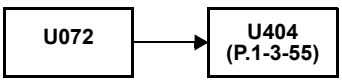


Figure 1-3-13

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U073</td><td>
Checking scanner operation
Description
Simulates the scanner operation under arbitrary conditions.
Purpose
To check scanner operation.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be changed using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operating conditions</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>ZOOM</td><td>Magnification</td><td>100 to 400%</td></tr>
<tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Original size</td><td>See below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>LAMP</td><td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td><td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td></tr>
</table>
Original sizes for each setting in SIZE
<table>
<tr><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>A4</td><td>42</td><td>A5R</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>B5</td><td>47</td><td>Folio</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>11" x 8 1/2"</td><td>52</td><td>11" x 17"</td></tr>
<tr><td>36</td><td>A3</td><td>53</td><td>11" x 15"</td></tr>
<tr><td>39</td><td>B4</td><td>55</td><td>8 1/2" x 14"</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>A4R</td><td>56</td><td>8 1/2" x 11"</td></tr>
<tr><td>41</td><td>B5R</td><td>58</td><td>5 1/2" x 8 1/2"</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.
5. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U074</td><td>
Adjusting the DP input light luminosity
Description
Adjusts the luminosity of the exposure lamp for scanning originals from the DP.
Purpose
Used if the exposure amount differs significantly between when scanning an original on the platen and when scanning an original from the DP.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>DP input light luminosity</td><td>0 to 8</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the luminosity higher, and decreasing it makes the luminosity lower.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U076	**Executing DP automatic adjustment** **Description** Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the DP scanning section. Adjusting the DP magnification (U070) Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071) Adjusting the DP center line (U072) When you run this maintenance mode, the preset values of U070, U071 and U072 will also be updated. **Purpose** To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the DP scanning section. **Method** 1. Set a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) in the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.

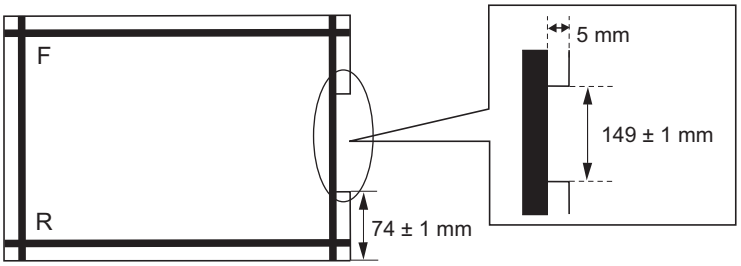


Figure 1-3-14

2. Press the start key.
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
   When adjustment is complete, each adjusted value is displayed.

Display	Description
CONVEY SPEED	DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction
LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration
DP CENTER	DP original center line

If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, DATA: XX (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.

Completion

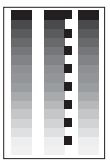
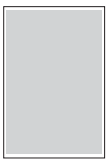
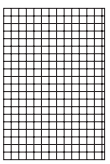
Press the stop/clear key after auto adjustment is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.

If the stop/clear key is pressed during auto adjustment, adjustment stops and no settings are changed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U087</td><td>
Setting DP reading position modification operation
Description
The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals.
Purpose
When using DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>DP scanning position adjust mode on</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>DP scanning position adjust mode off</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting the reference data for identifying dust
Available only when the mode is turned on.
1. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Minimum density to be regarded as dust</td><td>10 to 95</td><td>35</td></tr>
</table>
Example
The figure indicates the density in 256 levels of gray (0: white, 255: black). When the setting is 35, data of the level of 35 or higher is regarded as dust and data of lower level is regarded as the background (scan data taken when there is no original).
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U089</td><td>
Outputting a MIP-PG pattern
Description
Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the machine.
Purpose
To check copier status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr>
<tr><td>GRAYSCALE</td><td>  </td><td>To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MONO-LEVEL</td><td>  </td><td>To check the drum quality.</td></tr>
<tr><td>256-LEVEL</td><td>  </td><td>To check resolution reproducibility in printing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 dot-LINE</td><td>  </td><td>To check fine line reproducibility.
To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)</td></tr>
</table>
3. To change the output conditions of MONO-LEVEL and 1dot-LINE, use the cursor left/right keys to change the preset values and press the start key to register the setting.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Output density of MONO-LEVEL</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1dot-LINE</td><td>0 to 21</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the interrupt key.
5. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U092</td><td>
Adjusting the scanner automatically
Description
Makes auto scanner adjustments in the order below using the specified original.
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting scanner magnification in the auxiliary direction (U065)
When this maintenance item is performed, the settings in U065, U066 and U067 are also changed.
Purpose
Used to make respective auto adjustments for the scanner.
Method
1. Place the specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the contact glass.
2. Press the start key.
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
When adjustment is complete, each adjusted value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>SCN CENTER</td><td>Scanner center line</td></tr>
<tr><td>SCN TIMING</td><td>Scanner leading registration</td></tr>
<tr><td>SUB SCAN</td><td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN SCAN</td><td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td></tr>
</table>
If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, DATA: XX (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key after auto adjustment is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
If the stop/clear key is pressed during auto adjustment, adjustment stops and no settings are changed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U093	**Setting the exposure density gradient** **Description** Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes. **Purpose** To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the image quality mode using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
MIXED	Density in the text and photo mode
TEXT	Density in text mode
PHOTO	Density in photo mode
FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode
FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode

Setting: Density in text and photo mode

1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0
MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0

Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.

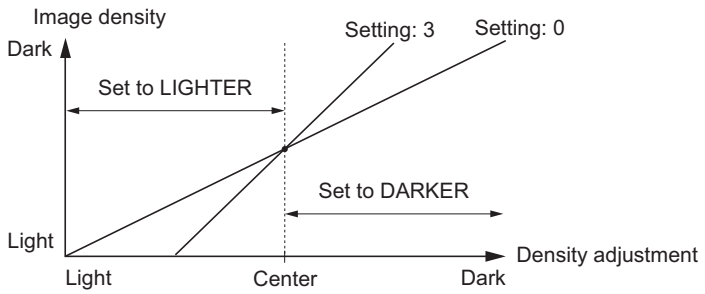


Figure 1-3-15

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Setting: Density in text mode

1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0
TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0

Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U093</td><td>
Setting: Density in photo mode
1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PHOTO LIGTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Setting: Density in text in fax mode
1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>FAX TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 4</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 4</td><td>2</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Setting: Density in photo in fax mode
1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>FAX PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 6</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX PHOTO LIGTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 6</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U099	**Adjusting original size detection** **Description** Checks the operation of the original size detection sensor and sets the sensing threshold value. **Purpose** To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size detection sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data
B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time

Method to display the data for the sensor

1. Place the original and close the original cover or DP.
2. Press the start key. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed.

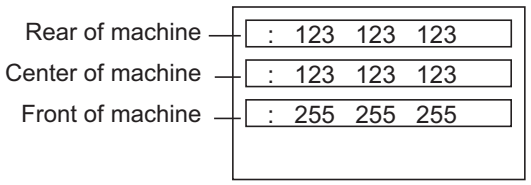


Figure 1-3-16

3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Setting

1. Select an item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Adjust the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
LEVEL	Detection sensor threshold value	0 to 255	170
WAIT TIME	Original size judgment time	0 to 100	30
A4R AREA	Threshold value in the main scan direction for A4R detection	220 (mm)/ 240 (mm)	240
ORIG AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	0 to 350	-
SIZE	Detected original size display	0 to 63	-

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Completion

Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U100	**Setting the main high voltage** **Description** Changes the surface potential by changing the grid control voltage. Also performs main charging. Also changes the setting of main charging copy quantity correction. **Purpose** To set the surface potential or check main charging. Also used when reentering data after initializing the set data. **Start** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description
MC DATA	Changing the grid control voltage
MC ON	Turning the main charger on
LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off
INTERVAL	Main charging copy quantity correction, copy interval
COPY CNT	Main charging copy quantity correction, copy quantity
MC ADJUST	Main charging copy quantity correction, correction amount

Method for main charger output

1. Select [MC ON] or [LASER ON/OFF] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the start key. The selected operation starts.
3. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.

Setting the grid control voltage

1. Select [MC DATA] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Grid control voltage	0 to 255	107

Increasing the setting makes the surface potential higher, and decreasing it makes the potential lower.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting the main charging copy quantity correction

1. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
INTERVAL	Copy interval	1 to 255 (minute)	60
COPY CNT	Copy quantity	1 to 255 (10 sheets)	50
MC ADJUST	Correction amount	0 to 50 (bit)	10

Copy interval: Sets the time interval from the previous copying. If the time from the previous copying exceeds this preset value, the copy quantity counter will be reset.
Copy quantity: Sets the copy quantity from which copy quantity correction starts. When the copy quantity counter reaches this preset value, correction will start.
Correction amount: Sets the correction amount for copy quantity correction.
Set the values in the range from 5 to 120 minutes for copy interval, from 10 to 2,000 sheets for copy quantity, and from 5 to 50 bits for correction amount.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop/clear key when main charger output stops while a selection item is displayed. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U101	**Setting the other high voltages** **Description** Changes the developing bias voltage and transfer/separation voltage. **Purpose** To check the developing bias and the transfer/separation voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
DEV	Setting the developing bias
TC	Setting the transfer voltage
SC	Setting the separation voltage

Setting the developing bias

1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
BIAS C	Developing bias clock frequency (copier mode)	2 to 255	27
DUTY C	Developing bias clock duty (copier mode)	1 to 99	45
BIAS P	Developing bias clock frequency (printer mode)	2 to 255	22
DUTY P	Developing bias clock duty (printer mode)	1 to 99	45

Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting the transfer voltage

1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
TC DATA1	Transfer control voltage (large size)	0 to 255	123
TC DATA2	Transfer control voltage (small size)	0 to 255	126
OFF TIMING	Transfer charging output OFF timing	0 to 255	33
ON TIMING	Transfer charging output ON timing	0 to 255	31

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting the separation voltage

1. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
SC SEL	Separation control voltage	0 to 2	1
SC ON TIMING	Separation charging output ON timing	0 to 255	20
SC OFF TIMING	Separation charging output OFF timing	0 to 255	42
SC MODE	Separation control mode	0 to 3	2

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement

While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the interrupt key).

Completion

Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U110	**Checking the drum count** **Description** Displays the drum counts for checking. **Purpose** To check the drum status. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The drum counter count is displayed. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U130	**Initial setting for the developing unit** **Description** Replenishes toner to the developing unit to a certain level from the toner container that has been installed. **Purpose** To operate when installing the machine or replacing the developing unit. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 1. Select [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys. 2. Press the start key. Installation of toner starts and time (minutes) is indicated until the installation ends. 3. When the installation is complete, [FINISHED] will be displayed if the installation is successful or [NG] will be displayed if it has failed. If [NG] is displayed, check to see if the toner container contains toner and to see if the toner container sensor malfunctions and then try again. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key after operation is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U144</td><td>
Setting toner loading operation
Description
Sets toner loading operation after completion of copying.
Purpose
To set whether or not toner is loaded on the drum after low density copying. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Toner loaded</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Toner not loaded</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting
Available only when the setting is on.
1. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Number of pages set</td><td>1 to 50</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>PERCENT</td><td>Printing ratio</td><td>10 to 40</td><td>30</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U150</td><td>
Checking sensors for toner
Description
Displays the on-off status of sensor related to toner.
Purpose
To check if the sensor operate correctly.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Turn sensor on and off manually to check the status.
When the on-status of a sensor is detected, that sensor is displayed in reverse.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Sensor</th></tr>
<tr><td>CONTAINER SENSOR</td><td>Toner container sensor (TCS)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U157</td><td>
Checking/clearing the developing drive time
Description
Displays the developing drive time for checking, or clearing a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.
Purpose
To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.
Method
1. Press the start key. The developing drive time is displayed in minutes.
Setting
1. Select [TIME(M)] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Enter a drive time (in minutes) using the numeric key.
3. Press the start key. The time is set.
Clearing
1. Select [CLEAR] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the start key. The time is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U158</td><td>
Checking the developing count
Description
Displays the developing count for checking.
Purpose
To check the developing count after replacing the developing unit.
Method
1. Press the start key. The developing counter count is displayed.
Setting
1. Select [COUNT] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the count using the numeric key.
3. Press the start key. The count is set.
Clearing
1. Select [CLEAR] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U161</td><td>
Setting the fuser control temperature
Description
Changes the fuser control temperature.
Purpose
Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>1ST TEMP</td><td>Primary stabilization fixing temperature</td><td>120 to 185</td><td>145</td></tr>
<tr><td>2ND TEMP</td><td>Secondary stabilization fixing temperature</td><td>120 to 185</td><td>165</td></tr>
<tr><td>COPY TEMP1</td><td>Copying operation temperature 1</td><td>160 to 220</td><td>175</td></tr>
<tr><td>COPY TEMP2</td><td>Copying operation temperature 2</td><td>160 to 220</td><td>185</td></tr>
<tr><td>UP TEMP</td><td>Step-up operation temperature</td><td>1 to 99</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOWN TEMP</td><td>Step-down operation temperature</td><td>1 to 99</td><td>2</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U162	**Stabilizing fixing forcibly** **Description** Stops the stabilization fixing drive forcibly, regardless of fixing temperature. **Purpose** To forcibly stabilize the machine before the fixing section reaches stabilization temperature. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the start key. The forced stabilization mode is entered, and stabilization operation stops regardless of fixing temperature. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. To exit the forced stabilization mode, turn the power off and on. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U163	**Resetting the fuser problem data** **Description** Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section. **Purpose** To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Press the start key. The fuser problem data is initialized. 4. The machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.
U167	**Checking/clearing the fuser counts** **Description** Displays and clears the fuser counts for checking. **Purpose** To check or clear the fuser counts after replacing the fuser unit. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The fuser counts is displayed. **Setting** 1. Select [COUNT] using the cursor up/down keys. 2. Change the count using the numeric key. 3. Press the start key. The count is set. **Clearing** 1. Select [CLEAR] using the cursor up/down keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U198</td><td>
Setting the fuser phase control
Description
Sets the use of fuser phase control to reduce electrical noise generated by the machine.
Purpose
Normally no change is necessary. If electrical noise generated by the machine causes flickering of the lights around the machine, select fuser phase control to reduces the noise.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
1. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Fuser phase control present</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Fuser phase control absent</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U199</td><td>
Checking the fuser temperature
Description
Displays the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.
Purpose
To check the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.
Method
1. Press the start key. The fuser temperature and ambient temperature are displayed in centigrade (°C) and the absolute humidity is displayed in percentage (%).
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>FIX TEMP</td><td>Fuser temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>SURROUND TEMP</td><td>Ambient temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U200</td><td>
Turning all LEDs on
Description
Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.
Purpose
To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.
Method
1. Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light.
2. Press the stop/clear key. The LEDs turns off.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U202</td><td>
Setting the KMAS host monitoring system
Description
Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system.
This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U203</td><td>
Checking DP operation
Description
Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the DP.
Purpose
To check the DP operation.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.
3. Select the item to be operated using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADP</td><td>With paper, single-sided original</td></tr>
<tr><td>RADP</td><td>With paper, double-sided original</td></tr>
<tr><td>ADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)</td></tr>
<tr><td>RADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The operation starts.
5. To stop continuous operation, press the stop/clear key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U204</td><td>
Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter
Description
Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.
Purpose
To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the optional counter to be installed using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not installed</td></tr>
<tr><td>KEY-CARD</td><td>The key card is installed</td></tr>
<tr><td>KEY-COUNTER</td><td>The key counter is installed</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U207</td><td>
Checking the operation panel keys
Description
Checks operation of the operation panel keys.
Purpose
To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.
Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
2. COUNT1 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights.
3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light.
4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U233</td><td>
Limiting job separator output
Description
Sets a limit of number of output pages from the job separator.
Purpose
Settings may be modified if curled paper is output from the job separator.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the mode using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE 0</td><td>All sizes: 100 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE 1</td><td>A3/Ledger sizes: 50, other sizes: 100</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE0
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U243</td><td>
Checking the operation of the DP motors
Description
Turns the motors and solenoids in the DP on.
Purpose
To check the operation of the DP motors or solenoids.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be operated using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Motors and solenoids</th></tr>
<tr><td>F MOT</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>C MOT</td><td>Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>R MOT</td><td>Original switchback motor (OSBM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>RJ SL</td><td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>RP SL</td><td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL) is turned on.</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U244</td><td>
Checking the DP switches
Description
Displays the status of the respective switches in the DP.
Purpose
To check if respective switches in the DP operate correctly.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status.
When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr>
<tr><td>SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>TMG SW</td><td>DP timing switch (DPTSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAT SW</td><td>DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>COV SW</td><td>DP interlock switch (DPILSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>REV SW</td><td>Original switchback switch (OSBSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>SZ A SW</td><td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U245</td><td>
Checking messages
Description
Displays a list of messages or graphics on the operation panel.
Purpose
To check the messages or graphics to be displayed.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be displayed using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The selected item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Check display messages</td><td>Check the messages</td></tr>
<tr><td>Check display graphics</td><td>Check the graphics</td></tr>
</table>
Method to display the messages
1. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys to display each message one at a time. Select the language using the cursor left/right keys.
2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Method to display the graphics
1. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys to display each graphic one at a time. Select the background (black or white) using the cursor left/right keys.
2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U246</td><td>
Setting the finisher
Description
Provides various settings for the built-in finisher, if furnished.
Purpose
Adjusts the side registration cursor stop position if paper registration is poor or stapling is made outside the specified area.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the desired cursor position using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Front side registration cursor stop position</td><td>0 to 8</td><td>4</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>REAR</td><td>Rear side registration cursor stop position</td><td>0 to 8</td><td>4</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration cursor stop position</td><td>0 to 8</td><td>4</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U249</td><td>
Checking the paper ejection to optional devices
Description
Eject paper to the optional ejection device. When the job separator or the built-in finisher is connected, this operation cannot be run.
Purpose
To check that paper is ejected properly to the optional ejection device.
Method
1. While pressing the feedshift switch by your hand, press the start key.
Paper transfer operation starts.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U250</td><td>
Setting the maintenance cycle
Description
Displays and changes the maintenance cycle.
Purpose
To check and change the maintenance cycle.
Method
1. Press the start key. The currently set maintenance cycle is displayed.
Setting
1. Change the setting using the numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td><td>150000</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.
Clearing
1. Press the reset key.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U251</td><td>
Checking/clearing the maintenance count
Description
Displays, clears and changes the maintenance count.
Purpose
To check the maintenance count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.
Method
1. Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.
Setting
1. Select [COUNT] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the count using the numeric key.
3. Press the start key. The count is set.
Clearing
1. Select [CLEAR] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U252	**Setting the destination** **Description** Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination. **Purpose** To be executed after replacing the backup RAM on the main PWB or initializing the backup RAM by running maintenance item U020, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization. **Method** Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications
CHINA	China specifications

3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. The machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.

Supplement
The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.

Initial setting according to the destinations

Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific, China
253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double
264	Setting the display order of the date	YEAR-MONTH-DATE	MONTH-DATE-YEAR	DATE-MONTH-YEAR
344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR	ENERGY STAR	GEEA

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U253</td><td>
Switching between double and single counts
Description
Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.
Purpose
Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the count system using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>SINGLE COUNT</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)</td><td>Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U254</td><td>
Turning auto start function ON/OFF
Description
Selects if the auto start function is turned on.
Purpose
Normally no change is necessary. If incorrect operation occurs, turn the function off: this may solve the problem.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Auto start function on</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Auto start function off</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U260</td><td>
Selecting the timing for copy counting
Description
Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.
Purpose
To be set according to user (copy service provider) request.
If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional document finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier.
If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the copy count timing using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr>
<tr><td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: EJECT
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U264</td><td>
Setting the display order of the date
Description
Selects year, month and day as the order of that appears on lists, etc.
Purpose
Set according to the user preference.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the desired order using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>YEAR-MONTH-DATE</td><td>Year/Month/Day</td></tr>
<tr><td>MONTH-DATE-YEAR</td><td>Month/Day/Year</td></tr>
<tr><td>DATE-MONTH-YEAR</td><td>Day/Month/Year</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MONTH-DATE-YEAR (for the inch specifications)
DATE-MONTH-YEAR (for the metric specifications)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U265</td><td>
Setting OEM purchaser code
Description
Sets the OEM purchaser code.
Purpose
Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the preset value using the numeric keys or cursor left/right keys.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U277</td><td>
Setting auto application change time
Description
Sets the time that passes until the machine starts automatically printing after completing copying or operation when the machine is used as a printer.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Default setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Switching time</td><td>30 to 270 (s)</td><td>30 (s)</td></tr>
</table>
The setting can be changed by 30 s per step.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U285</td><td>
Setting service status page
Description
Determines displaying the digital dot coverage report on reporting.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the digital dot coverage</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the digital dot coverage</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U326</td><td>
Setting the black line cleaning indication
Description
Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.
Purpose
Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the platen when scanning from the DP.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U332</td><td>
Setting the size conversion factor
Description
Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.
Purpose
To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/11" x 8 1/2" size for copying printing and fax respectively.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select copying (COPY), printing (PRT) or fax (FAX) using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Default setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>COPY</td><td>Size parameter for copying</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>PRINTER</td><td>Size parameter for printing</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX</td><td>Size parameter for fax</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U341</td><td>
Specific paper feed location setting for printing function
Description
Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output.
Purpose
To use a paper feed location only for printer output.
A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the paper feed location for the printer using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>PF1</td><td>Cassette</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF2</td><td>Optional first paper feeder (standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF3</td><td>Optional second paper feeder</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF4</td><td>Optional third paper feeder</td></tr>
</table>
3. Change the setting using the cursor left/right keys.
0: OFF/1: ON
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U342</td><td>
Setting the ejection restriction
Description
Sets or cancels the restriction on the number of sheets to be ejected continuously when the internal eject tray is selected as the eject location.
Purpose
According to user request, sets or cancels restriction on the number of sheets.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Sets restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Cancels restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
Details of restriction (number of sheets to be ejected continuously after the start key is pressed)
<table>
<tr><th>Condition</th><th>Number of sheets</th></tr>
<tr><td>When no optional ejection device is installed</td><td>250</td></tr>
<tr><td>When the job separator is installed</td><td>150</td></tr>
<tr><td>When the built-in finisher is installed</td><td>100</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U343</td><td>
Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode
Description
Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.
Purpose
To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U344</td><td>
Setting the low-power mode
Description
Changes the control for low-power mode.
Purpose
According to user request, selects which has priority, the recovery time from low-power or energy saver.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select control mode using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ENERGY STAR</td><td>STAR The fixing control temperature is lowered by 20°C/68°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td></tr>
<tr><td>GEEA</td><td>The fixing control temperature is lowered by 15°C/59°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ENERGY STAR (inch specifications)/GEEA (metric specifications)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U345</td><td>
Setting the value for maintenance due indication
Description
Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends.
When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed.
Purpose
To change the time for maintenance due indication.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Time for maintenance due indication
(Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)</td><td>0 to 9999</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U402	**Adjusting margins of image printing** **Description** Adjusts margins for image printing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
AC	Printer left and right margin	-3.4 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	-5.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

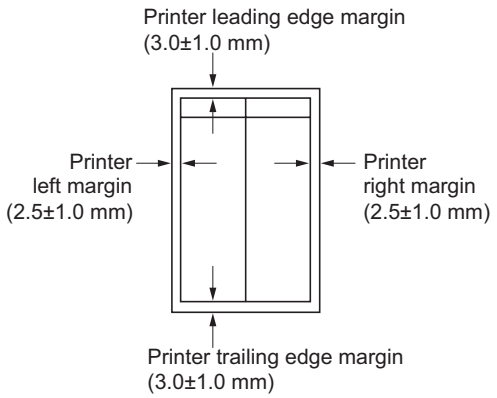
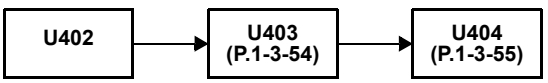


Figure 1-3-17

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U403	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen** **Description** Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the platen. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

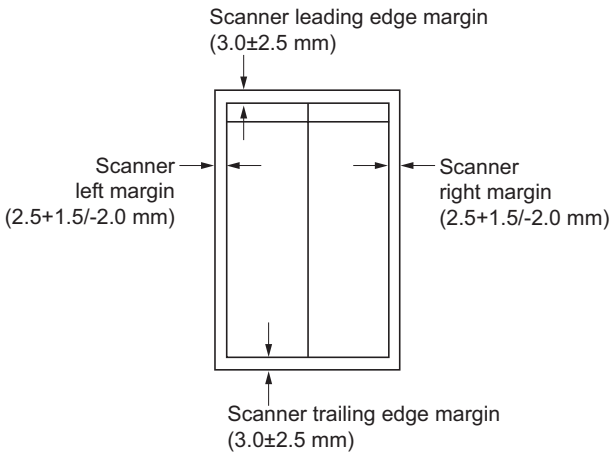
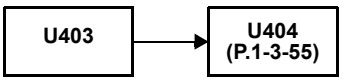


Figure 1-3-18

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U404	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP** **Description** Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect when the optional DP is used. **Caution** Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode. U402 (P.1-3-53) → U403 (P.1-3-54) → U404 **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A MARGIN	DP left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm
B MARGIN	DP leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
C MARGIN	DP right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm
D MARGIN	DP trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.1 mm

3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

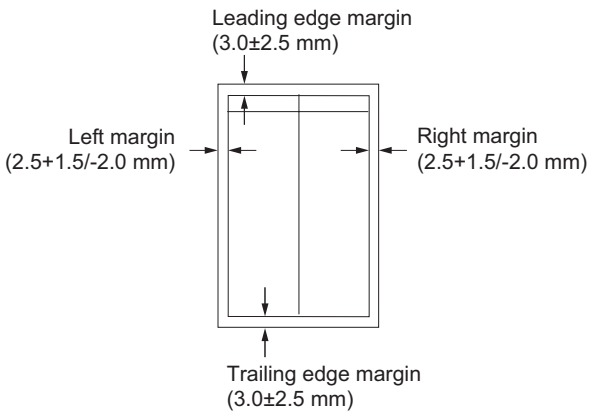
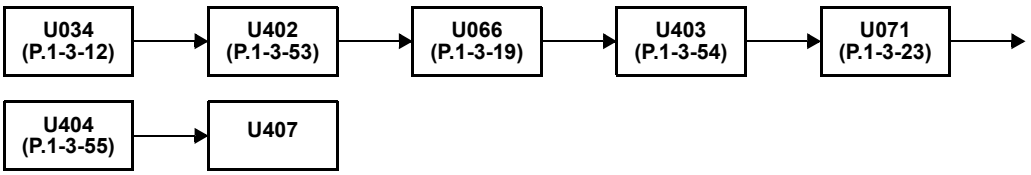


Figure 1-3-19

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U407	**Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing** **Description** Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying. **Purpose** Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying. **Caution** Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.



Adjustment

1. Press the start key.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-2.0 to 2.0	0.0	0.1 mm

2. Press the interrupt key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
   For copy example 1, decrease the value.
   For copy example 2, increase the value.

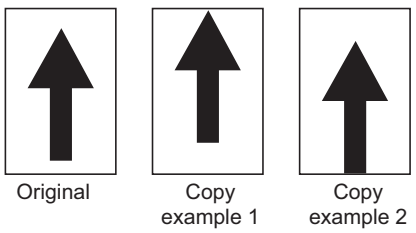


Figure 1-3-20

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U504</td><td>
Initializing the scanner NIC
Description
Initializing the optional scanner NIC to its factory default.
Purpose
To return to a setup at the time of factory shipments.
Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
2. Select [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. All data in the scanner NIC is initialized.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U506</td><td>
Setting the time out
Description
Sets the communication timeout time for connection to a computer.
Purpose
To change the preset value if a communication error occurs after connection to a computer continues for a long time. By delaying the error detection timing, the error may be cleared. If the error is not cleared after the preset value is changed, however, return the preset value to the initial value.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Timeout time</td><td>10 to 120 (s)</td><td>10</td></tr>
</table>
The setting can be changed by 10 s per step.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U901</td><td>
Checking copy counts by paper feed locations
Description
Displays and clears copy counts by paper feed locations.
Purpose
To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.
Method
1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Paper feed locations</th></tr>
<tr><td>BYP</td><td>MP tray</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF1</td><td>Cassette</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF2</td><td>Optional first paper feeder (standard for 22 ppm model)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF3</td><td>Optional second paper feeder</td></tr>
<tr><td>PF4</td><td>Optional third paper feeder</td></tr>
<tr><td>DUP</td><td>Duplex section</td></tr>
</table>
When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.

Clearing
1. Select the count to be cleared using the cursor up/down keys.
However, PF2, 3, and 4 are displayed only and cannot be cleared.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U903</td><td>
Checking/clearing the paper jam counts
Description
Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.
Purpose
To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
4. Change the screen using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr>
</table>
Method: Clears the jam counts
1. Select [ALL] using the cursor up/down keys.
The individual counter cannot be cleared.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U904</td><td>
Checking/clearing the service call counts
Description
Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.
Purpose
To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
4. Change the screen using the cursor left/right keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the service call counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total service call counts</td></tr>
</table>
Method: Clears the service call counts
1. Select [ALL] using the cursor up/down keys.
The individual counter cannot be cleared.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U905</td><td>
Checking counts by optional devices
Description
Displays the counts of DP or finisher.
Purpose
To check the use of DP and finisher.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. The count of the selected device is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>DP</td><td>Counts of optional DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>FINISHER</td><td>Counts of optional finisher</td></tr>
</table>
DP
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr>
</table>
Finisher
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr>
<tr><td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>BUNDLE EJECT</td><td>Frequency the bundle discharge has been activated</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U906	**Resetting partial operation control** **Description** Resets the service call code for partial operation control. **Purpose** To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the casettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control. 4. The machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.
U908	**Checking the total counter value** **Description** Displays the total counter value. **Purpose** To check the total counter value. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U910	**Clearing the black ratio data** **Description** Clears the accumulated black ratio data for A4 sheet. **Purpose** To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys. Press the start key. The accumulated black ratio data is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U911	**Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes** **Description** Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes. **Purpose** To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed. **Clearing** 1. Select the paper size using the cursor up/down keys. To clear all counts, select [ALL]. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U917	**Setting backup data reading/writing** **Description** Stores backup data from the fax control PWB (when an optional fax kit is installed) into CompactFlash or reads the data from CompactFlash. **Purpose** To store and write data when replacing the PWB. **Setting** 1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. 2. Remove the screw and remove the slot cover. 3. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the machine. 4. Connect the power plug. While pressing the copier key, turn the main power switch on. Press and hold on the Copier key until the message "Please wait." disappears. 5. Enter the maintenance item. 6. Press the start key. 7. Select the item using the cursor up/down keys.

Display	Description
SRAM→CF:BKUP	Writing the backup data of fax control PWB
CF→SRAM:BKUP	Reading the backup data of fax control PWB
SRAM→CF:DIAL	Writing the backup data of fax dial information
CF→SRAM:DIAL	Reading the backup data of fax dial information

8. Press the start key. Reading or writing is executed, and the screen displays the result.
   If the operation was successful:
   EXECUTE 0100
   CHECK SUM ****
   CODE 0000
   If the operation failed:
   EXECUTE 0100
   CHECK SUM ****
   CODE XXXX
   Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure.
   See Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926 below.
9. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
10. Remove the Compact Flash from the machine.
11. Refit the slot cover.

Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926

Code	Description
0102	Detects call for service on fax control PWB.
0103	Detects call for service on engine PWB.
0104	Communication error.
0105	Detects call for service on main PWB.
01FF	CF error.
0202	No CF card.
0203	No data in CF card.
0204	CF data is incompatible.
0205	Bad CF data (Checksum error)
0206	CF read error.
0207	CF write error.
0212	Fax control PWB flash memory error.

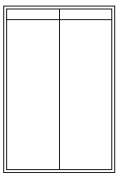
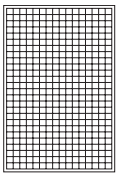
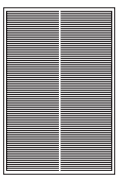
Maintenance item No.	Description
U920	**Checking the copy counts** **Description** Checks the copy counts. **Purpose** To check the copy counts. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The current counts of copy counter, printer counter and fax counter are displayed. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U925	**Checking/clearing the system error counts** **Description** Displays and clears the count value of system error. **Purpose** To check the system error status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The count for system error detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor left/right keys. **Clearing** 1. Select [ALL] using the cursor up/down keys. The individual counter cannot be cleared. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U926	**Rewriting FAX program** **Description** Downloads the fax program and fax fonts when installing an optional fax kit. **Purpose** To run when upgrading the fax program and fax fonts. **Setting** 1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. 2. Remove the screw and remove the slot cover. 3. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the machine. 4. Connect the power plug. While pressing the copier key, turn the main power switch on. Press and hold on the Copier key until the message "Please wait." disappears. 5. Enter the maintenance item. 6. Press the start key. Downloading of the fax program starts and the result shown below is displayed. If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE 0000 If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. 7. Then, downloading of the fax fonts starts and the result shown below is displayed. If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE 0000 If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. See Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926 on P.1-3-61. 8. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. 9. Remove the Compact Flash from the machine. 10. Refit the slot cover.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U927</td><td>
Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)
Description
Resets all of the counts back to 0.
Purpose
To start the counters with value 0 when installing the machine.
Supplement
The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [EXECUTE] using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared.
[CANNOT EXECUTE] is displayed if the count cannot be cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U928</td><td>
Checking machine life counts
Description
Displays the machine life counts.
Purpose
To check the machine life counts.
Method
1. Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U931</td><td>
Setting the automatic toner install
Description
Sets automatic toner installation on or off when power is turned on.
Purpose
Changed to off when deactivating automatic toner installation.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Automatic toner install function ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Automatic toner install function OFF</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U941</td><td>
Setting the default magnification ratio of the default cassette
Description
Sets the default magnification ratio when paper selection of copy default setting is set to the default cassette.
Purpose
To be set according to user request.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the magnification using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>100% magnification</td></tr>
<tr><td>Aut</td><td>Auto magnification selection</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: 100% magnification
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U942</td><td>
Setting of deflection for feeding from DP
Description
Adjusts the deflection generated when the DP is used.
Purpose
Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the DP is used.
Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be adjusted using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>FEED MOT</td><td>Deflection in the original feed motor</td><td>-10 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>REV MOT</td><td>Deflection in the original switchback motor</td><td>-10 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys.
The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.
If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.
6. Press the start key. The value is set.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U969</td><td>
Checking of toner area code
Description
Displays the toner area code.
Purpose
To check the toner area code.
Method
1. Press the start key. The toner area code is displayed.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

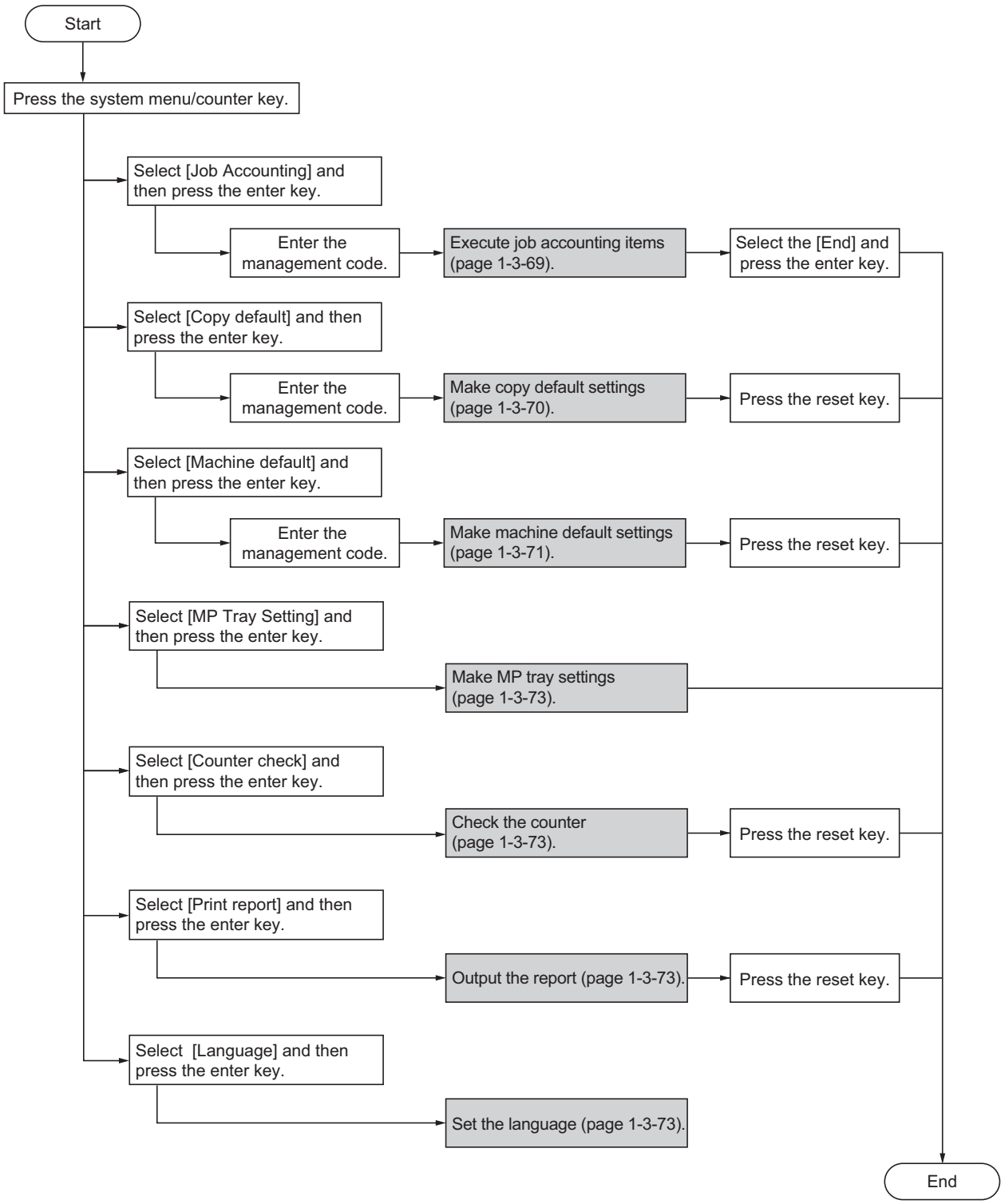
<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U990</td><td>
Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light
Description
Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the exposure lamp to light.
Purpose
To check duration of use of the exposure lamp. Also to clear the accumulated time for the lamp after replacement.
Method
1. Press the start key.
The accumulated time of illumination for the exposure lamp is displayed in minutes.
Setting
1. Select [TIME] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Change the accumulated time using the numeric key.
3. Press the start key. The accumulated time is set.
Clearing
1. Select [CLEAR] using the cursor up/down keys.
2. Press the start key. The accumulated time is cleared.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U991</td><td>
Checking the scanner count
Description
Displays the scanner operation count.
Purpose
To check the status of use of the scanner.
Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for the scanner operation count is desplayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>COPY</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX</td><td>Scanner operation count for fax</td></tr>
<tr><td>NWS</td><td>Network scanner operation count</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U993</td><td>
Outputting a VTC-PG pattern
Description
Selects and outputs a VTC-PG pattern created in the machine.
Purpose
When performing respective image printing adjustments, used to check the machine status apart from that of the scanner with a non-scanned output VTC-PG pattern.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the VTC-PG pattern to be output using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr>
<tr><td>PG1</td><td>  </td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment
Center line adjustment
Margin adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>PG2</td><td>  </td><td>Lateral squareness adjustment
Magnification adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>PG3</td><td>  </td><td>Driving unevenness of drum</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the interrupt key.
4. Press the start key. A VTC-PG pattern is output.
Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

1-3-2 Management mode

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the machine is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users (mainly by the administrator). In this management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

(1) Using the management mode



(2) Setting the job accounting

Registering a new account

Registers ID-codes and the limit of use for each account.

1. Select [Edit Job Accounting] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [New registration] and then press the enter key.
3. Enter the ID-code (up to 8 digits) using the numeric keys.
4. Press the enter key.
5. Set the limit of use.

Deleting an account

1. Select [Edit Job Accounting] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Delete] and then press the enter key.
3. Select the ID-code to delete and then press the enter key.
4. Select [Yes] or [No] and then press the enter key.

Changing limit of use

1. Select [Edit Job Accounting] using the cursor up/down keys and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Change limit in use] using the cursor up/down keys and then press the enter key.
3. Select the ID-code to change and then press the enter key.
4. Change the limit of use.

All account management

You can browse the total output count, output the job accounting report, and clear the counter for all accounts.

1. Select [Job Accounting Total] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Print report] and then press the enter key. The management report is printed out.
3. Select [Counter clear] and then press the enter key.
4. Select [Yes] or [No] and then press the enter key.

Individual account management

Checks the output count and/or clears the counter for individual accounts.

1. Select [Each Job Accouning TL] and then press the enter key. The output counts of individual accounts are displayed.
2. Select the ID-code to clear and then press the enter key.
3. Select [Yes] or [No] and then press the enter key.

Enabling job accounting

1. Select [Job Accounting On/Off] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Copier job accounting

1. Select [Job Accounting Def. Set.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Copy Job Account.] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Printer job accounting

1. Select [Job Accounting Def. Set.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Prnt Job Account.] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Scanner job accounting

Note: This setting is only available when the optional network scanner board is installed in the machine.

1. Select [Job Accounting Def. Set.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Scanner Job Accnt] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Fax job accounting

Note: This setting is only available when the optional fax kit is installed in the machine.

1. Select [Job Accounting Def. Set.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Fax Job Accountng] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Operation against excess over limit

Determines whether to stop output by prohibiting immediately use of the machine, to stop the operation from the next job or to display a warning message only, when the limit of count that has been set with the function of the limit of use is exceeded.

1. Select [Job Accounting Def. Set.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Excess limit Set.] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [Stop job immediately], [Stop after job done] or [Only warning]and then press the enter key.

(3) Copy default

Density mode

Selects the exposure mode at power-on.

1. Select [Exposure Mode] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Manual] or [Auto] and then press the enter key.

Original image quality

Selects the original image quality at power-on.

1. Select [Orig Image] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Text+Photo], [Photo] or [Text] and then press the enter key.

Eco print mode ON/OFF

Determines whether or not the eco print mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select [EcoPrint] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Background color adjustment

Adjust the ground color of the copied paper.

1. Select [Background adjst] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the exposure and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 5

Paper selection

Sets whether the copier will automatically select the same size of copy paper as the original once an original is set, or whether the designated default drawer will be automatically selected.

1. Select [Paper Select] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Auto] or [Default cassette] and then press the enter key.

Paper type (Auto paper selection mode)

Selects the types of paper that will be available for selection under the APS (Auto Paper Selection) mode.

1. Select [Paper type(Auto)] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.
3. If selected [On], select the desired paper type and then press the enter key.

Default cassette

Sets one cassette that will be selected automatically regardless of the size of paper loaded in that cassette.

1. Select [Default cassette] and then press the enter key.
2. Select the drawer that will be used with priority. Settings: Cassette 1/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/ Cassette 4

Default magnification

Sets whether or not the appropriate magnification ratio to be calculated automatically when selecting the size of copy paper.

1. Select [Default magnif.] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [100%] or [Auto %] and then press the enter key.

Auto density adjustment

Adjusts the overall density level for the auto density mode.

1. Select [Adj.Auto dens] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the density and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 7

Auto density adjustment (OCR)

Adjusts the overall density level for scanning with OCR (Optical Character Recognition) software when using the optional scanner functions of this machine.

1. Select [Auto dens(OCR)] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the density and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 7

Density adjustment for Text + Photo originals

Adjusts the median density value when the text+photo mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select [Txt+Photo Dens] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the density and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 7

Density adjustment for Text originals

Adjusts the median density value when the text mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select [Txt Ori Density] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the density and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 7

Density adjustment for Photo originals

Adjusts the median density value when the photo mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select [Photo Ori Dnsity] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the density and then press the enter key. Setting range: 1 to 7

Collate copying

Determines whether or not the Sort mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select [Collate] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Offset copying

Determines whether or not the offset copy will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select [Offset] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Auto rotation copy

Determines whether or not the Auto Rotation mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select [Auto Rotation] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Margin width default value

Determines the default value of the location and width of the margins in the margin mode.

1. Select [Margin Width] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets the margin widths and then press the enter key.
   Setting range: 1/8" to 3/4" in 1/8" increments (inch specifications) 1 to 18 mm in 1mm increments (metric specifications)

Border erase width default value

Determines the default value for the width of the border to be erased in the two border erase modes.

1. Select [BorderEraseWidth] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets the widths and then press the enter key.
   Setting range: 1/8" to 3/4" in 1/8" increments (inch specifications) 1 to 18 mm in 1mm increments (metric specifications)

Limit of number of copies

Sets the limit for the number of copies (or copy sets) that can be made at a time.

1. Select [Copy Limit] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets the copy limit and then press the enter key.
   Setting range: 1 to 999

Black streaking reduction processing

Reduces black lines that may be caused when the DP is used.

1. Select [Corr. Black line] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [None], [Weak] or [Strong] and then press the enter key.

(4) Machine default

Auto cassette switching

Turns automatic cassette switching ON or OFF.

1. Select [Auto Cassette SW] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On/All types of paper], [On/Only same paper type] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Paper size (cassettes 1 to 4)

Sets the size of paper that is loaded in cassettes 1 through 4.

1. Select one of the [Paper Size (1st) to (4th)] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Auto Detection Metric], [Auto Detection Inch] or a paper size and then press the enter key.

Paper type (cassettes 1 to 4)

Sets the type of paper that is loaded in cassettes 1 through 4.

1. Select one of the [Paper Type (1st) to (4th)] and then press the enter key.
2. Select the paper type and then press the enter key.

MP tray confirmation display

1. Select one of the [Check MP Tray] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Paper weight for paper type

Sets the paper weight for each paper type.

1. Select [P. type (Weight)] and then press the enter key.
2. Select paper type and then press the enter key.
3. Select paper weight and then press the enter key.

Duplex print for paper type

Sets whether or not each custom type of paper (custom 1 to custom 8) will be available for use in duplex printing.

1. Select [P. type (Duplex)] and then press the enter key.
2. Select one of the [Custom 1 to 8] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Custom paper type

Sets whether or not to match the orientation in one-sided printing and two-sided printing.

1. Select [Special P. type] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Match Print Direction] or [Fast Mode] and then press the enter key.

Original orientation

Sets the default original orientation.

1. Select [Orig. direction] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Top Edge Top] or [Top Edge Left] and then press the enter key.

Auto sleep time

Sets the time that elapses before the auto sleep function.

1. Select [Sleep mode time] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets sleep mode type and then press the enter key.
   Setting range:
   1 to 240 min (Inch specifications)
   1 to 120 mim (metric specifications)

Auto low power time

Sets the time that elapses before the low power mode is automatically activated.

1. Select [Low power time] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets low power time and then press the enter key.
   Setting range:
   1 to 240 mm (Inch specifications)
   1 to 120 mm (metric specifications)

Copy output destination

Sets the paper output location with priority for copying. This setting is only available when the optional finisher or job separator are installed in the machine.

1. Select [Copy Otput Destn] and then press the enter key.
2. Select output location and then press the enter key.

Fax output destination

Sets where incoming faxes will be ejected. This setting is only available when the optional fax kit, finisher or job separator are installed in the machine.

1. Select [Fax Otput Destn] and then press the enter key.
2. Select output location and then press the enter key.

Default operation mode

Sets whether the display that appears after power is turned on to the machine will be the one for the copy operation mode or for the fax operation mode. This setting is only available when the optional fax kit is installed.

1. Select [Main mode] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Copy mode] or [Fax mode] and then press the enter key.

Key sound

Sets whether or not the operation panel will emit a beep sound each time a key is pressed.

1. Select [Key sound On/Off] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Date and time

Sets the current date and time.

1. Select [Date/Time] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets the current date and time.
3. Select [End] and then press the enter key.

Display contrast adjustment

Adjust the display contrast.

1. Select [Display Contrast] and then press the enter key.
2. Adjust the contrast and then press the enter key.
   Setting range: 1 to 7

Administrator management code change

Changes the administrator management code.

1. Select [Admin. Code] and then press the enter key.
2. Enter a new 4-digit administrator management code using the numeric keys.

Auto sleep

Sets whether or not to have the auto sleep function. This setting is displayed only on the inch specification model.

1. Select [Auto Sleep] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Auto clear

Sets whether or not to have the auto clear function.

1. Select [Auto Clear] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Auto clear time

Sets the time that elapses from completion of copying to activation of the auto clear function.

1. Select [Auto Clear Time] and then press the enter key.
2. Sets the time and then press the enter key. Setting range: 10 to 270 s

Silent mode

Sets whether or not to use the silent mode which shortens the length of time that the laser data writing motor continues to spin after each copy job is finished.

1. Select [Silent Mode] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [On] or [Off] and then press the enter key.

Machine administrator management code change

Changes the four-digit management code for the security administrator of the other machine.

1. Select [MachineAdminCode] and then press the enter key.
2. Enter a new security administrator management code using the numeric keys.

(5) MP Tray setting

Paper size and type

Sets the paper size and paper type for the MP tray settings.

1. Select paper size.
   If the paper size is unknown or no particular paper size setting is required, select [Universal Size].
2. When setting a size, turn on the size input and use the left/right cursor key to select the paper size.
   Setting range:
   (Inch specifications)
   Width: 3 7/8" to 11 5/8"
   Length: 5 7/8" to 17"
   (Metric specifications)
   Width: 98 to 297 mm
   Length: 148 to 432 mm
3. Press the enter key.
4. Select paper type and then press the enter key.

Selecting other standard sizes

Sets a special standard size.

1. Select [Other Regular Size] and then press the enter key.
2. Select paper size and then press the enter key.
3. Select paper type and then press the enter key.

(6) Checking the total counter and printing out the counter report

Checks the total count of copies, etc., and prints out the information as a counter report.

1. Select [Counter check] and then press the enter key.
2. Select [Output count] or [Scan count] and then press the enter key.
3. Select [End] and then press the enter key.
4. Select [Print counter report] and then press the enter key to print out a counter report.

(7) Report output

Prints out one of the status report.

1. Select [Print Report] and then press the enter key.
2. Select the report to print out and then press the enter key.
   [Copy report]
   [Machine report]
   [Coverage report]
   The selected status report will be printed out.

(8) Language setting

Switches the language to be displayed on the operation panel.

1. Select [Language] and then press the enter key.
2. Select the language to use and then press the enter key.
   Available languages:
   Inch specifications
   Japanese, English, French and Spanish
   Metric specifications
   English, German, French, Spanish and Italian

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.
Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.
To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the front cover, left cover or pull the cassette out.
To remove original jammed in the optional DP, open the document processor top cover.
To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.
Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

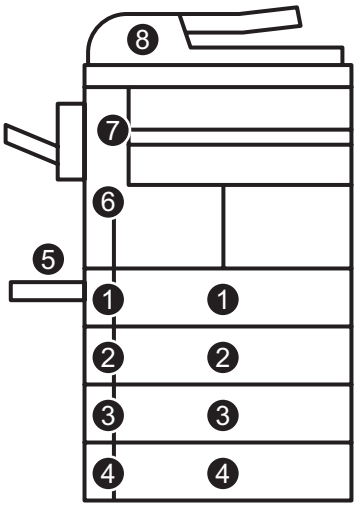


Figure 1-4-1

(1) Misfeed in cassette
(2) Misfeed in first paper feeder
(3) Misfeed in second paper feeder
(4) Misfeed in third paper feeder
(5) Misfeed in MP tray
(6) Misfeed in paper conveying section
(7) Misfeed in eject section
(job separator or built-in finisher)
(8) Misfeed in document processor

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

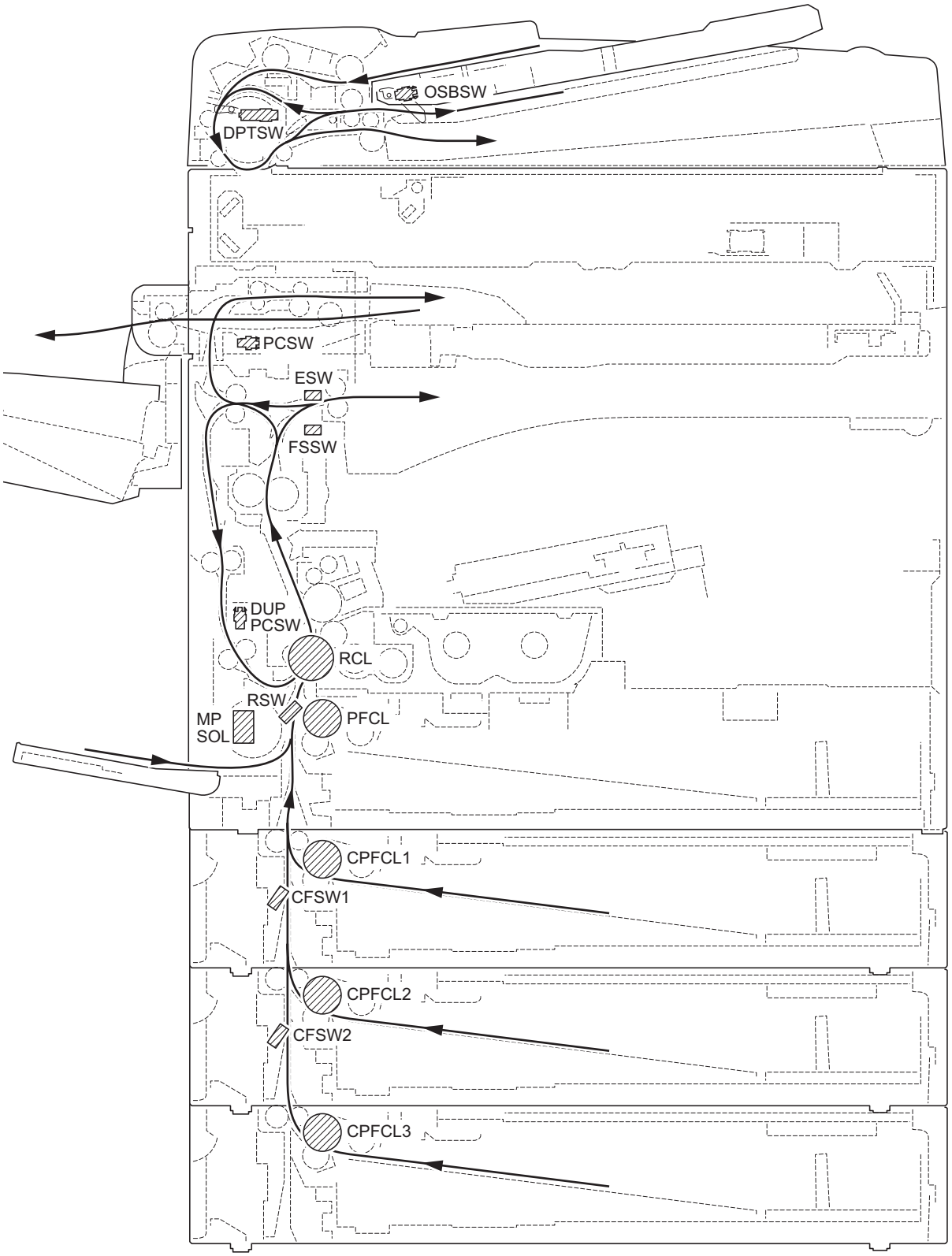


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
System	00 No paper feed	The power is turned on when a sensor in the conveying system is on.	-
		The document processor is opened while originals fed from the document processor are scanned.	-
	04 Cover open	Cover is open during copying.	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	30 s
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from MP tray	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper MP solenoid (MPSOL) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1570 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1327 ms
	12 No paper feed from first paper feeder	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 1 (CPFCL1) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	2290 ms
	13 No paper feed from second paper feeder	Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 2 (CPFCL2) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1953 ms
	14 No paper feed from third paper feeder	Cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 3 (CPFCL3) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1953 ms
	15 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 1	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) turning on.	2243 ms
		Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn off within specified time of cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) turning on.	1916 ms
		Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn off within specified time of cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) turning off.	1916 ms
		Left cover is opened in prior to the cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) is turned off.	-
	16 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 2	Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn on within specified time of cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) turning on.	1916 ms
		Left cover is opened in prior to the cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) is turned off.	-
	20 Multiple sheets in MP tray	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	5907 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within the specified time of paper MP solenoid (MPSOL) turning on.	1570 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	21 Multiple sheets in cassette	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	5907 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within the specified time of paper feed clutch (PFCL) turning on.	1327 ms
	22 Multiple sheets in first paper feeder	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	5907 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 1 (CPFCL1) turning on.	2290 ms
	23 Multiple sheets in second paper feeder	Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	5907 ms
		Cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) does not turn off within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 2 (CPFCL2) turning on.	1953 ms
	24 Multiple sheets in third paper feeder	Cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	5907 ms
		Cassette feed switch 2 (CFSW2) does not turn off within the specified time of cassette paper feed clutch 3 (CPFCL3) turning on.	1953 ms
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/ transfer section	A message, which is not the one indicating start of secondary paper feed, is received when the machine waits for start of secondary paper feed.	-
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) turning on (paper feed from second paper feeder).	2523 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) turning on (paper feed from third paper feeder).	2243 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the cassette feed switch 1 (CFSW1) turning off.	2243 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1589 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
	41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
	42 Misfeed in fuser section (first paper feeder)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
	43 Misfeed in fuser section (second paper feeder)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Fuser section	44 Misfeed in fuser section (third paper feeder)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
	45 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2766 ms
		The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2056 ms
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section (MP tray)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms
	53 Misfeed in feedshift section (cassette)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms
	54 Misfeed in feedshift section (first paper feeder)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms
	55 Misfeed in feedshift section (second paper feeder)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Feedshift section	56 Misfeed in feedshift section (third paper feeder)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms
	57 Misfeed in feedshift section (duplex section)	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2056 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of paper switchback operation.	1364 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2766 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	5907 ms
Duplex section	60 Misfeed in duplex paper conveying section	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	3037 ms
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	3037 ms
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	3037 ms
	61 Misfeed in duplex eject section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1589 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.	1589 ms
Document processor	70 No original feed	During primary feed of the second original in the simplex or duplex mode, even if retry operation is performed five times, primary original feed is not performed.	-
	71 An original jam in the original conveying section 1	During the secondary original feed in the simplex mode, DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within specified time of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	9900 pulses
	72 An original size error jam	DP timing switch (DPTSW) turns off within the specified time of period of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on in the simplex or duplex mode.	1145 pulses
	73 An original jam in the original conveying section 2	During original conveying in the duplex mode, DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within specified time of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	9900 pulses
	74 An original jam in the original conveying section 3	During secondary original feed in the duplex mode, DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time of the original switchback motor (OSBM) turning on.	2300 pulses

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Document processor	75 An original jam in the original switchback section	During original switchback in the duplex mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn on within specified time of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	10700 pulses
	78 Document processor cover open	The document processor or document processor top cover is opened during original feeding. The original set switch (OSSW) or original size length switch (OSLSW) turns on when starting the original paper feed.	-
Finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper conveying switch (PCSW) turning on.	15 s
	81 Finisher paper entry nonarrival jam	The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2598 ms
	83 Finisher paper entry jam	The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is conveyed to the process table from the paper conveying unit.	1869 ms + Paper length
	84 Finisher eject jam	The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on within the specified time when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the process table.	2570 ms
		The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the process table.	1869 ms + Paper length

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Registration switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulley.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the MP solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the MP solenoid to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette). Jam code 11	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulley.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the paper feed clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from first paper feeder). Jam code 12	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulley.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 1 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-32).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from second paper feeder). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulley.
	Broken cassette feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective cassette feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn cassette feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 2 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from third paper feeder). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulley.
	Broken cassette feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective cassette feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn cassette feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 3 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 3 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 3.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 1). Jam code 15	Broken registration switch, cassette feed switch 1 or 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Registration switch, cassette feed switch 1, 2
	Check if the paper feed clutch, cassette paper feed clutch 1, 2 or 3 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch, cassette paper feed clutch 1, 2 or 3.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 2). Jam code 16	Broken cassette feed switch 1 or 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Cassette feed switch 1, 2
	Check if the paper feed clutch, cassette paper feed clutch 1 or 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch, cassette paper feed clutch 1 or 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray). Jam code 20	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the MP solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the MP solenoid to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
	Check if the right and left registration rollers contact each other.	Check visually and replace.
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette). Jam code 21	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the paper feed clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
	Check if the right and left registration rollers contact each other.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in first paper feeder). Jam code 22	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 1 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
	Check if the right and left registration rollers contact each other.	Check visually and replace.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in second paper feeder). Jam code 23	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken cassette feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective cassette feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn cassette feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 2 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in third paper feeder). Jam code 24	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken cassette feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective cassette feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn cassette feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the cassette paper feed clutch 3 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the cassette paper feed clutch 3 to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the cassette paper feed clutch 3.	Check (see page 1-4-32).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(14) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (misfeed in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken registration switch, cassette feed switch 1 or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Registration switch, cassette feed switch 1, duplex paper conveying switch
(15) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (misfeed in fuser section). Jam codes 40, 41, 42, 43, 44 and 45	Check if the front fuser guide is deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace if necessary.
	Check if the heat roller separation claws are dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace if necessary.
	Check if the heat roller and its separation claws contact each other.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken eject switch or feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Eject switch, feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(16) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (misfeed in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch or registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Eject switch, registration switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(17) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (misfeed in job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken feedshift switch or job eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Feedshift switch, job eject switch

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(18) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (misfeed in feedshift section). Jam code 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57	Broken feedshift switch, registration switch or job eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Feedshift switch, registration switch, job eject switch
	Check if the eject motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U030 and select the eject motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the eject motor.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(19) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (misfeed in duplex paper conveying section). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Feedshift switch, duplex paper conveying switch
	Check if the eject motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U030 and select the eject motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the eject motor.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
	Check if the duplex feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the duplex feed clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the duplex feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(20) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (misfeed in duplex eject section). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch or registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Duplex paper conveying switch, registration switch
	Check if the duplex feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the duplex feed clutch to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the duplex feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-32).
(21) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original set switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original set switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original feed motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original feed motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the DP paper feed pulley or DP separation pad is deformed.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(22) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (an original jam in the original conveying section 1). Jam code 71	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(23) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (an original size error jam). Jam code 72	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(24) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (an original jam in the original conveying section 2). Jam code 73	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(25) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (an original jam in the original conveying section 3). Jam code 74	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(26) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (an original jam in the original switchback section). Jam code 75	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light.
	Check if the original switchback motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original switchback motor to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(27) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (jam between the finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
(28) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (finisher paper entry nonarrival jam). Jam code 81	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
(29) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (finisher paper entry jam). Jam code 83	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(30) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (finisher eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Check if the eject roller or eject pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace.

1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem.
A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.
After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning the main power switch off and back on.

List of system errors
When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the main power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0410	Document processor communication problem	System error → service call
0420	First paper feeder communication problem	System error → service call
0440	Built-in finisher communication problem	System error → service call
0500	Second paper feeder communication problem	System error → service call
0510	Third paper feeder communication problem	System error → service call

Table 1-4-1

Partial operation control
If any of the following calls for service is detected, partial operation control will be activated. After taking measures against the cause of trouble, run maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents
C8170	Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8210	Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher)

Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems
If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater break
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor center temperature
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor center temperature
C6400	Zero-cross signal error

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0030	**Fax control PWB system problem** Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a hardware or software problem.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0070	**Abnormal detection of fax control PWB incompatibility** Fax software is not compatible with main software	Fax software or main software is something of the other machine.	Check the version of the fax software and the main software, upgrade the version to the compatible software.
C0100	**Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Main PWB)** Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0110	**Backup memory data problem (Main PWB)** Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0130	**Backup memory device problem (Main EEPROM)** Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0140	**Backup memory data problem (Main EEPROM)** Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0150	**Backup memory device problem (Engine EEPROM)** Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0160	**Backup memory data problem (Engine EEPROM)** Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0170	**Copy counts problem** When the power is turned on, the total count and the scan count are abnormal both on the main PWB and the engine PWB.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0180	**Machine number mismatch** Machine number of main PWB and engine PWB does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0210	**Communication problem between the main and engine** When the power is turned on, the machine does not detect the low level of SBSY and the high level of SDIR for 10 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0240	**Printer PWB communication problem** The printer PWB does not respond 120 s after the power is turned on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0250	**Scanner network board communication problem** The scanner network board does not respond.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or scanner network board and check for correct operation.
C0280	**Communication problem between the fax control PWB and main PWB** Communication between the fax control PWB and the main PWB of the machine cannot be performed normally.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0410	**Document processor communication problem** Communication fails five times successively.	Document processor installed incorrectly.	Check the installation state of the document processor and adjust it if it is not properly installed.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
C0420	**First paper feeder communication problem** Communication fails five times successively.	First paper feeder installed incorrectly.	Check the installation state of the first paper feeder and adjust it if it is not properly installed.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or cassette main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0440	**Built-in finisher communication problem** Communication fails five times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the engine PWB and the connector of the built-in finisher, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0500	**Second paper feeder communication problem** Communication fails five times successively.	Second paper feeder installed incorrectly.	Check the installation state of the second paper feeder and adjust it if it is not properly installed.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or cassette main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0510	**Third paper feeder communication problem** Communication fails five times successively.	Third paper feeder installed incorrectly.	Check the installation state of the third paper feeder and adjust it if it is not properly installed.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or cassette main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0610	**Bitmap (DIMM) problem** There is a problem with the data or address bus of the bitmap DRAM.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.
		Defective DIMM.	Replace the DIMM and check for correct operation.
C0630	**DMA problem** DMA transmission of compressed, decompressed, rotated, relocated or blanked-out image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0800	**Image processing problem** JAM05 is detected twice.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0820	**Fax control PWB CG ROM checksum error** A checksum error occurred with the CG ROM data of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0830	**Fax control PWB flash program area checksum error** A checksum error occurred with the program of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0860	**Fax control PWB software switch checksum error** A checksum error occurred with the software switch value of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0870	**Fax control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer problem** High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PWB and the main PWB of the machine was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried the specified times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0880	**Fax control PWB program archive problem (optional fax)** When power is turned on, the compressed program in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0890	**Fax control PWB CG FONT archive problem (optional fax)** When power is turned on, the compressed CG font in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0900	**Fax software incompatibility detection problem** Version of fax software is not compatible with that of main software.	Fax software version or main software is earlier.	Check the version of the fax software and the main software, upgrade the version to the compatible software.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0920	**Fax file system error** The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C2000	**Drive motor problem** A stable state does not continue for 1 s from 1 s after the drive motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective drive motor.	Replace the drive motor.
C2200	**Drum motor problem** A stable state does not continue for 1 s from 1 s after the drum motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective drum motor.	Replace the drum motor.
C3100	**Scanner carriage problem** The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the engine PWB and the connector on the home position switch, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective home position switch.	Replace the home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror flames and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3200	**Exposure lamp problem** Non-lighting of the exposure lamp is detected at the beginning of copying.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the contact glass (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the home position switch.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
C3300	**AGC problem** After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the main PWB and the connector on the CCD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C4000	**Polygon motor synchronization problem** The polygon motor does not reach the stable speed within 20 s of the START signal turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4010	**Polygon motor steady-state problem** Stable OFF is detected for 5 s continuously after polygon motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4200	**BD steady-state problem** ASIC detects a BD error for 600 ms after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

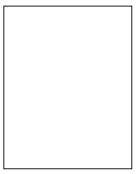
Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6000	**Fuser heater break** The temperature does not reach 70 °C/158°F in 15 s before secondary stabilization. Temperature rise of 1°C/1.8°F does not occur in 5 s before secondary stabilization (except during printing).	Poor contact in the fuser thermistor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Fuser thermistor installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Fuser thermostat triggered.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fuser thermostat.
		Fuser heater installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Broken fuser heater wire.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fuser heater.
C6020	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature** Fuser thermistor is detected 230°C/446°F or more for 40 ms.	Shorted thermistor.	Measure the resistance. If it is 0 Ω, replace the thermistor.
		Broken heater control circuit on the power source PWB.	Replace the power source PWB and check for correct operation.
C6050	**Abnormally low fuser thermistor temperature** Fuser thermistor remains below 90°C/194°F for 1 s.	Poor contact in the fuser thermistor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Broken fuser thermistor wire.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fixing thermistor.
		Fuser thermistor installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Fuser thermostat triggered.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fuser thermostat.
		Fuser heater installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Broken fuser heater wire.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fuser heater.
C6400	**Zero-cross signal error** Interrupt of the zero-cross signal does not occur more than 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective power source PWB.	Check if the zero-crossing signal is output from YC2-2 on the power source PWB. If not, replace the power source PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB if C6400 is detected while YC2-2 on the power source PWB outputs the zero-crossing signal.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7800	**Broken external thermistor wire** The thermistor output value is 0.5 V or less.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the cassette PWB and check for correct operation.
C7810	**Short-circuited external thermistor wire** The thermistor output value is 4.5 V or more.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the cassette PWB and check for correct operation.
C8170	**Built-in finisher front side registration motor problem** When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration motor.	Replace front side registration motor.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration home position sensor.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	**Built-in finisher rear side registration motor problem** When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration motor.	Replace rear side registration motor.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration home position sensor.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8190	**Built-in finisher trailing edge registration motor problem** When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration motor.	Replace trailing edge registration motor.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration home position sensor.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8210	**Built-in finisher stapler problem** The stapler home position sensor does not change state from nondetection to detection within 200 ms of the start of stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1)No image appears (entirely white).



See page 1-4-26.

(2)No image appears (entirely black).



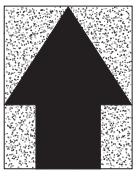
See page 1-4-26.

(3)Image is too light.



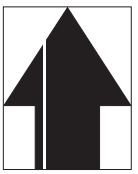
See page 1-4-27.

(4)Background is visible.



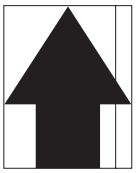
See page 1-4-27.

(5)A white line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-27.

(6)A black line appears longitudinally.



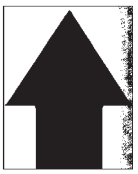
See page 1-4-28.

(7)A black line appears laterally.



See page 1-4-28.

(8)One side of the copy image is darker than the other.



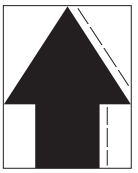
See page 1-4-28.

(9)Black dots appear on the image.



See page 1-4-28.

(10)Image is blurred.



See page 1-4-29.

(11)The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



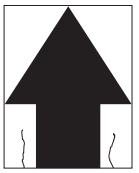
See page 1-4-29.

(12)The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.



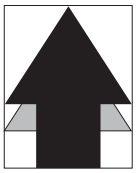
See page 1-4-29.

(13)Paper creases.



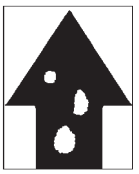
See page 1-4-29.

(14)Offset occurs.



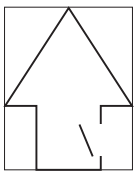
See page 1-4-30.

(15)Image is partly missing.



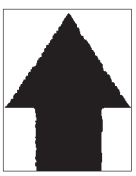
See page 1-4-30.

(16)Fusing is poor.



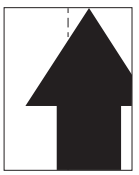
See page 1-4-30.

(17)Image is out of focus.



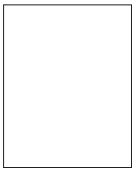
See page 1-4-30.

(18)Image center does not align with the original center.



See page 1-4-31.

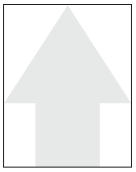
(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No transfer charging.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-4 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-35).
		Defective main PWB.	Check if YC6-5 on the main PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the main PWB.
	No developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-9 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-9 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.

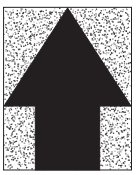
(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).
		Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-7 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-7 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when YC1-3 on the inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC16-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.

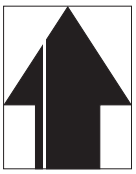
(3) Image is too light.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Defective transfer charging output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-4 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Dirty main charger wire.		Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).
	Dirty main charger grid.		Clean the grid or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).

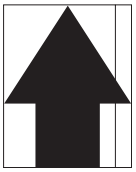
(4) Background is visible.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	The developing bias voltage is not properly.	Replace the high voltage PWB and check for correct operation.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).

(5) A white line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-44).
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.

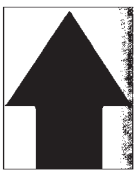
(6) A black line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Clean the drum or, if it is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).

(7) A black line appears laterally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Clean the drum or, if it is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
	Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

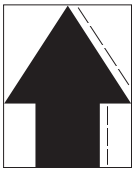
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-24).

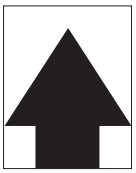
(9) Black dots appear on the image.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Clean the drum or, if it is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
	Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

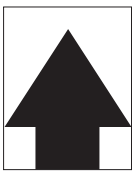
(10) Image is blurred.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-49).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

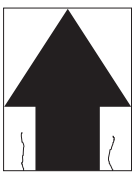
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-12).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-19).

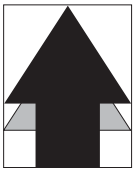
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper feed clutch, MP solenoid or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of each clutch or solenoid. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.

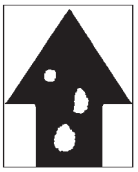
(13) Paper creases.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.

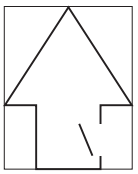
(14) Offset occurs.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Defective fuser unit.	Check the heat roller and press roller.
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.

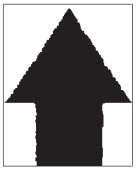
(15) Image is partly missing.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Change the paper.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Clean the drum or, if it is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller.

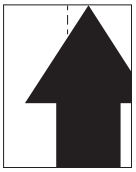
(16) Fusing is poor.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-49).
	Flawed fuser heater.	Replace the fuser heaters (see page 1-5-51).

(17) Image is out of focus.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-33).
	Drum condensation.	Clean the drum.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-13).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-20).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.

1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC1-2, YC1-3 and YC1-4 on the power source PWB. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) The eject motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) The cassette drive motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective cassette drive motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the cassette drive motor operates. If not, replace the cassette drive motor.
	4. Defective cassette main PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the cassette drive motor operates. If not, replace the cassette main PWB.
(4) The scanner motor or cooling fan motor 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
(5) The paper feed clutch, registration clutch or duplex feed clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective cassette PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the cassette PWB goes low. If not, replace the cassette PWB. Paper feed clutch: YC7-2 on the cassette PWB Registration clutch: YC6-2 on the cassette PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC5-6 on the cassette PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Paper feed clutch: YC7-17 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC7-18 on the engine PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC7-12 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) The MP solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective cassette PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the cassette PWB goes low. If not, replace the cassette PWB. MP solenoid: YC8-2 on the cassette PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. MP solenoid: YC7-16 on the engine PWB
(7) The cleaning lamp does not turn on.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective cleaning lamp.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cleaning lamp.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	If YC3-B6 and YC3-B7 on the engine PWB is always low, replace the engine PWB.
(8) The exposure lamp does not turn on or off.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective exposure lamp.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with YC2-1 and YC2-4 on the inverter PCB go low. If not, replace the exposure lamp.
	3. Defective inverter PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with YC1-3 on the inverter PWB go low. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		If the exposure lamp does not turn off with YC1-3 on the inverter PWB high, replace the inverter PWB.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC16-4 on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		If YC16-4 on the engine PWB is always low, replace the engine PWB.
(9) Main charging is not performed.	1. Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-43).
	2. Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	3. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	4. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-7 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-7 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(10) No developing bias is output.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-9 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-9 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) Transfer charging is not performed.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-4 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC8-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(12) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size detection sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC5-B8 on the engine PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size detection sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.
(13) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper switch or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper switch or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper switch: YC2-2 on the cassette PWB MP paper switch: YC5-12 on the cassette PWB
(14) The size of paper on the cassette or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper size length switch: YC9-B3, B4, B6 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC5-2 on the cassette PWB
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, eject or duplex section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around registration switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not light. Registration switch, eject switch, duplex paper conveying switch

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(16) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover safety switch or left cover safety switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover safety switch or left cover safety switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(17) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley, registration roller, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pad.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper/lower forwarding pulleys, forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pad is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-18).
	Electrical problem with the following clutches and solenoid: paper feed clutch, registration clutch and MP solenoid.	See page 1-4-32.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-32.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-26).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-32.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the separation pulley is worn.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pad is worn.	Replace the MP separation pad if it is worn (see page 1-5-18).
(6) Paper jams.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following clutches and solenoid are installed correctly: paper feed clutch, registration clutch and MP solenoid.	Correct.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
Turning off the main power switch before pressing the power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.
When fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.
When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.
The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.
Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
Use only the specified parts to replace the fuser unit thermostat. Never substitute electric wires, as the machine may be seriously damaged.
When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.
Take care not to get the cables caught.
To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

(2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.
When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.
Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 90% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.
Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.
Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

(3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.
Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window
A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

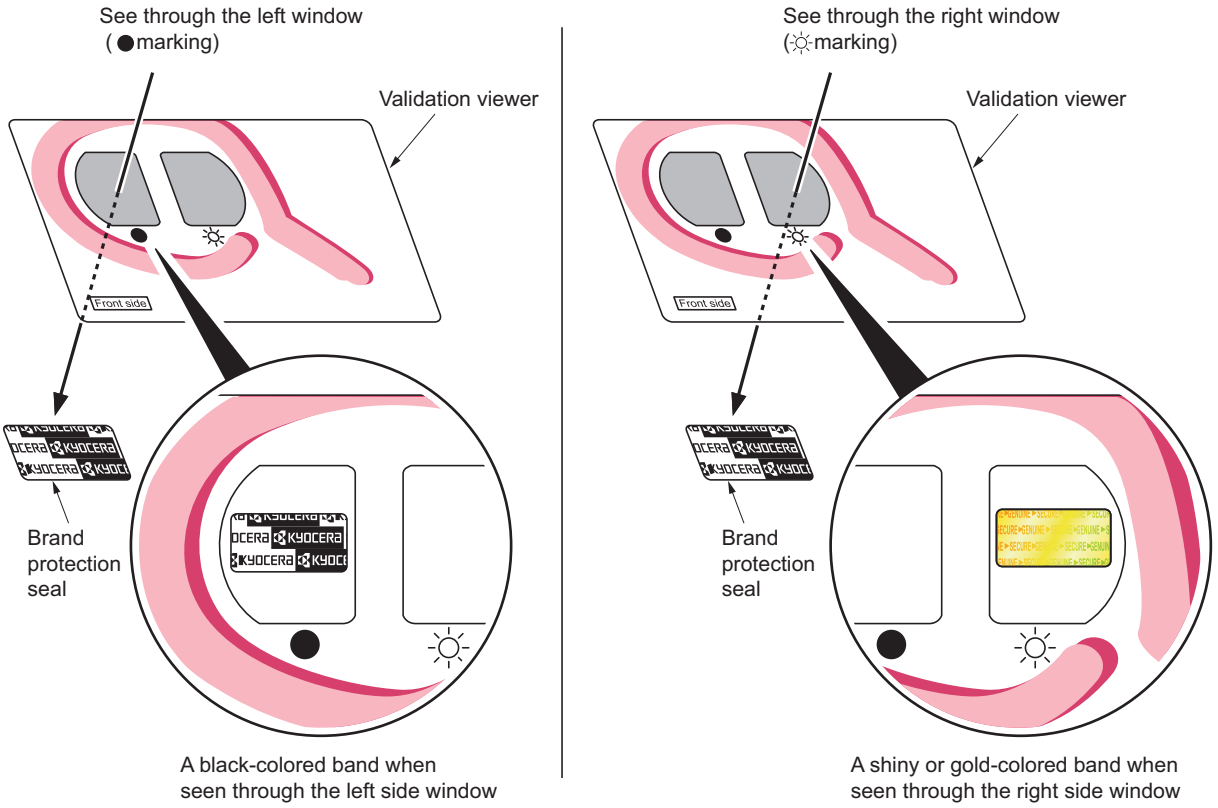


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

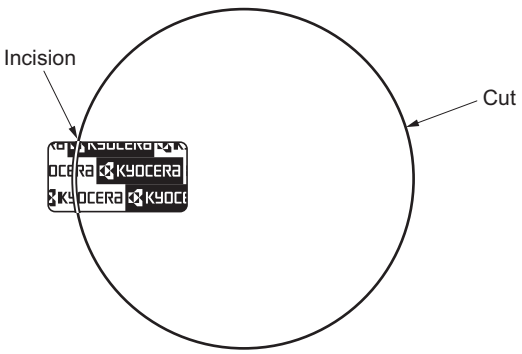


Figure 1-5-2

1-5-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the separation pulley

Follow the procedure below to replace the separation pulley.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and left cover.
2. Pull out the cassette.

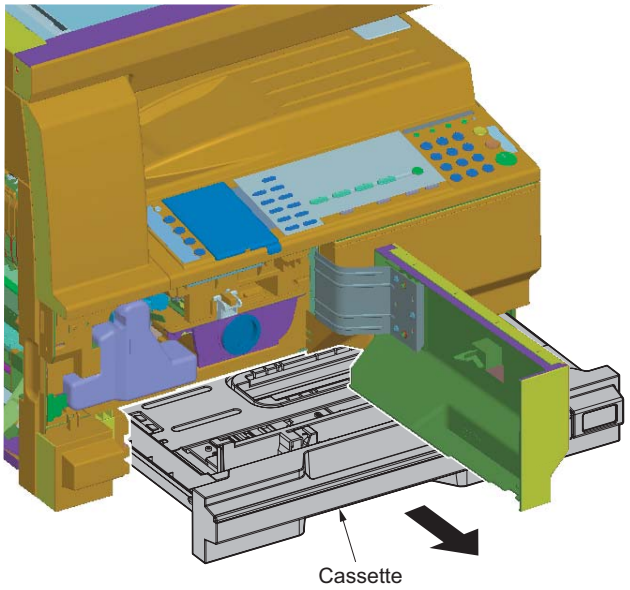


Figure 1-5-3

3. Remove the screw and remove the front left lower cover.

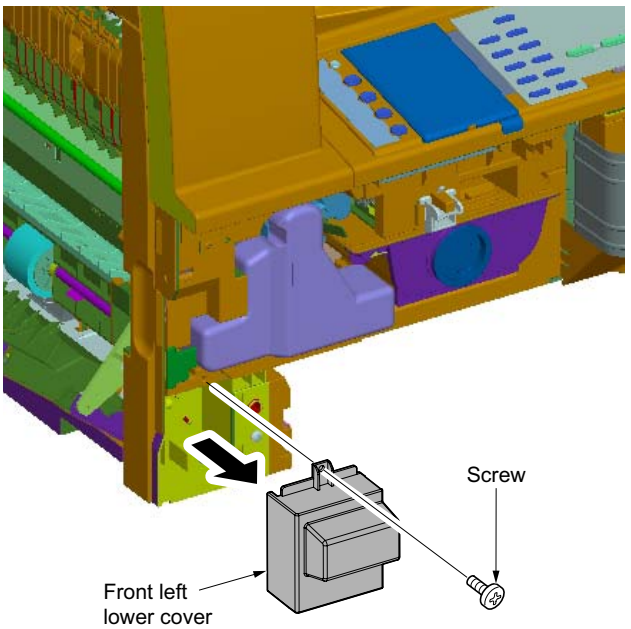


Figure 1-5-4

4. Remove the screw and remove the lower paper feed unit.

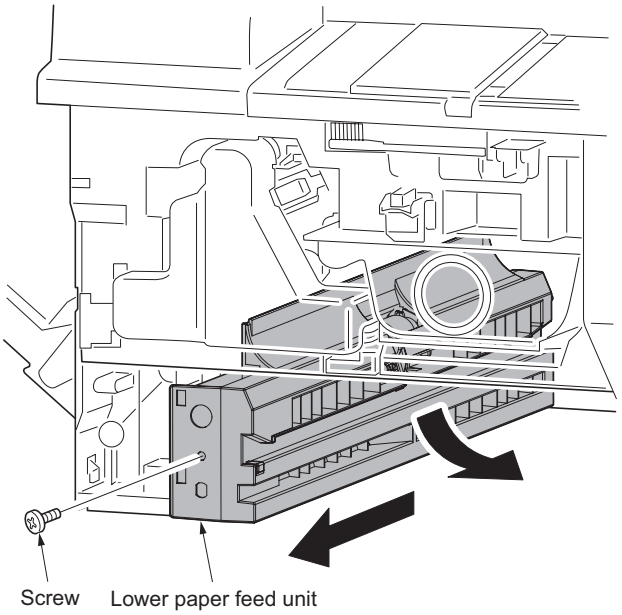


Figure 1-5-5

5. Release two hooks and remove the separation pulley unit from the lower paper feed unit.

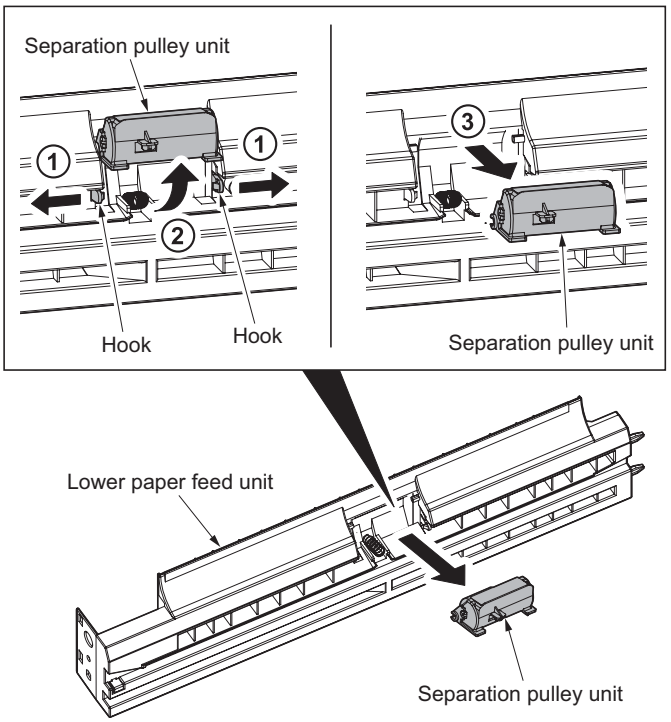


Figure 1-5-6

6. Remove the separation pulley shaft from the separation pulley unit.
7. Remove the separation pulley from the separation pulley shaft.
8. Replace the separation pulley and refit all the removed parts.

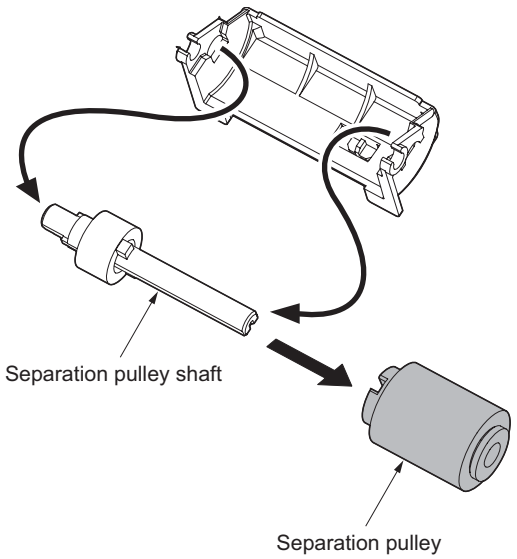


Figure 1-5-7

(2) Detaching and refitting the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley.

Procedure

1. Remove the lower paper feed unit (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
3. Remove five screws and remove the rear cover.

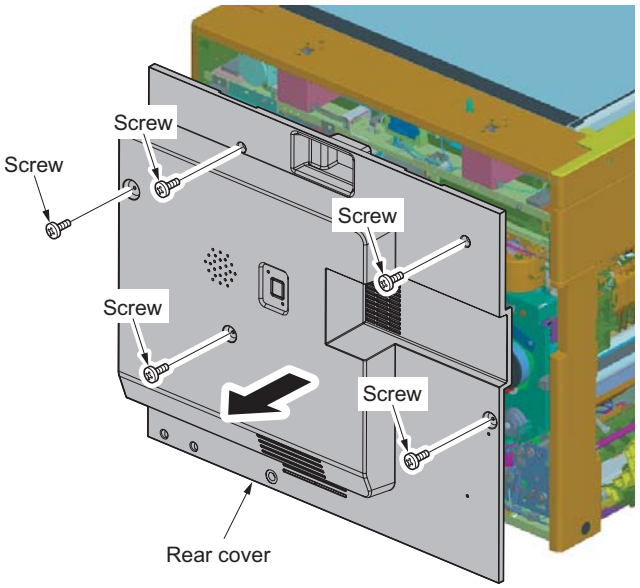


Figure 1-5-8

4. Remove the connector of the paper feed clutch.
5. Remove the paper feed clutch, stop ring and bush.

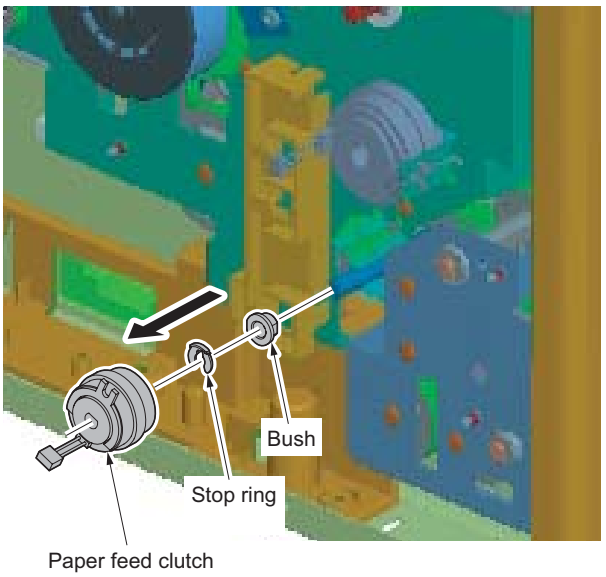


Figure 1-5-9

6. Remove the screw and remove the registration guide.

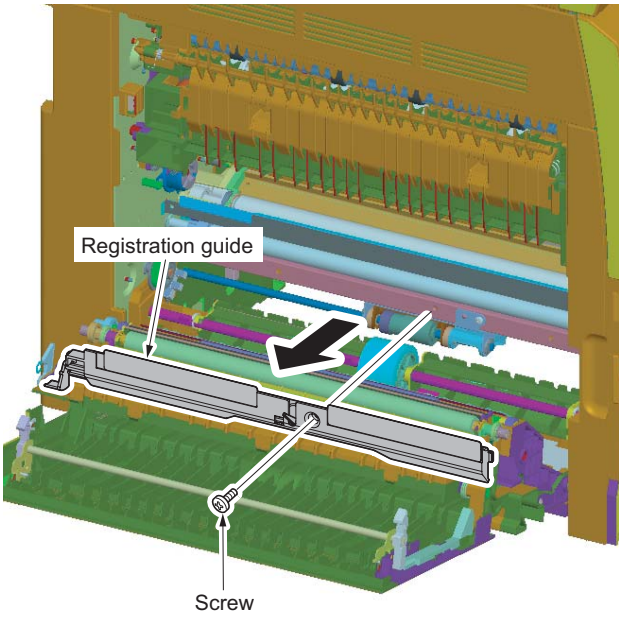


Figure 1-5-10

7. Remove the screw and remove the upper paper feed unit.

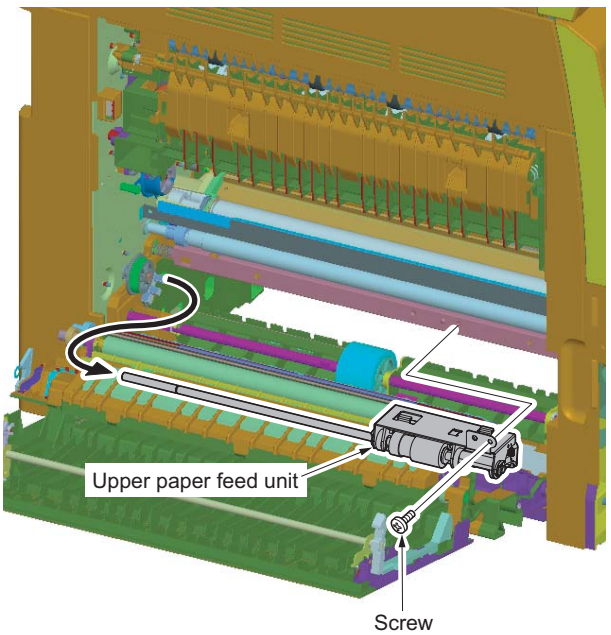


Figure 1-5-11

8. Remove the springs, stop ring and bush and then remove the shaft holder from the upper paper feed unit.

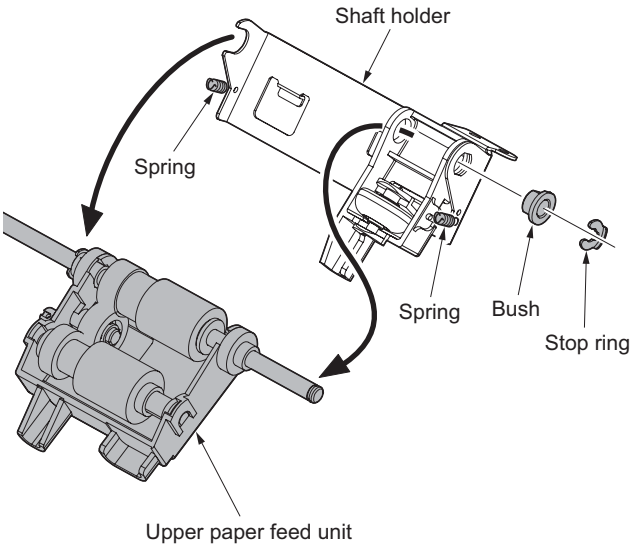


Figure 1-5-12

9. Remove the forwarding pulley from the upper paper feed unit.
10. Remove the paper feed pulley shaft from the upper paper feed unit.
11. Remove the collar and the paper feed pulley from the upper paper feed shaft.
12. Replace the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley and refit all the removed parts.

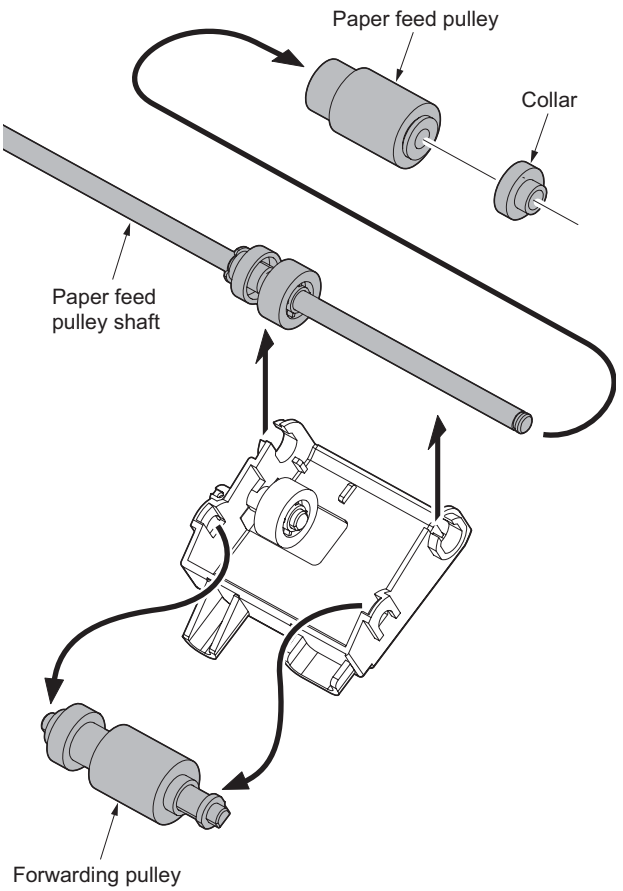


Figure 1-5-13

(3) Detaching and refitting the feed roller (22 ppm model only)

Follow the procedure below to replace the feed roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the front left lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove three cover labels.
3. Remove five screws and remove the main body from paper feeder.

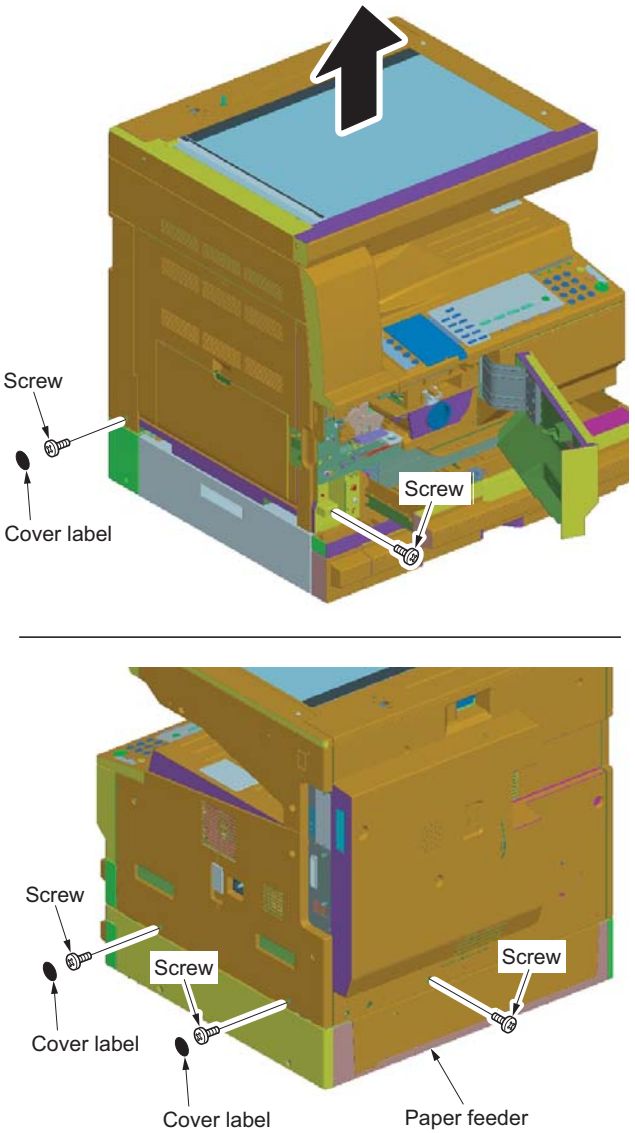


Figure 1-5-14

4. Open the cassette left cover.
5. Remove the stop ring from rear side of the feed roller and slide the bush toward the inside.
6. Lift the rear of the feed roller upward. Slide the feed roller toward the rear side and remove the roller from the paper feeder.

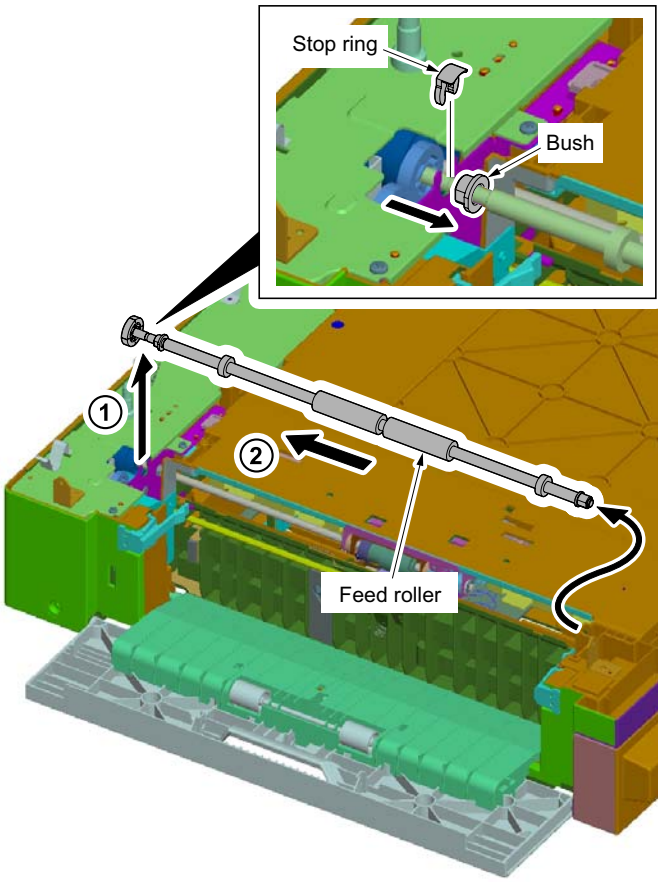


Figure 1-5-15

7. Remove the gear, spring pin and two bushes from the feed roller.
8. Replace the feed roller and refit all the removed parts.

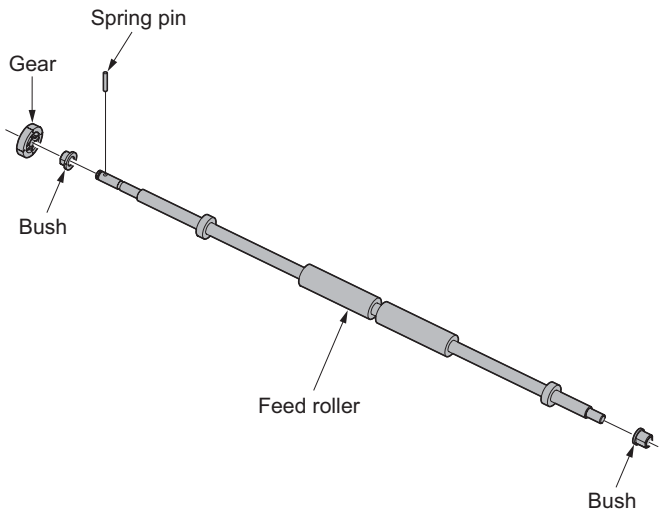


Figure 1-5-16

(4) Detaching and refitting the cassette separation pulley (22 ppm model only)

Follow the procedure below to replace the cassette separation pulley.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and left cover.
2. Pull out the cassette.
3. Remove the screw and remove the lower paper feed unit.

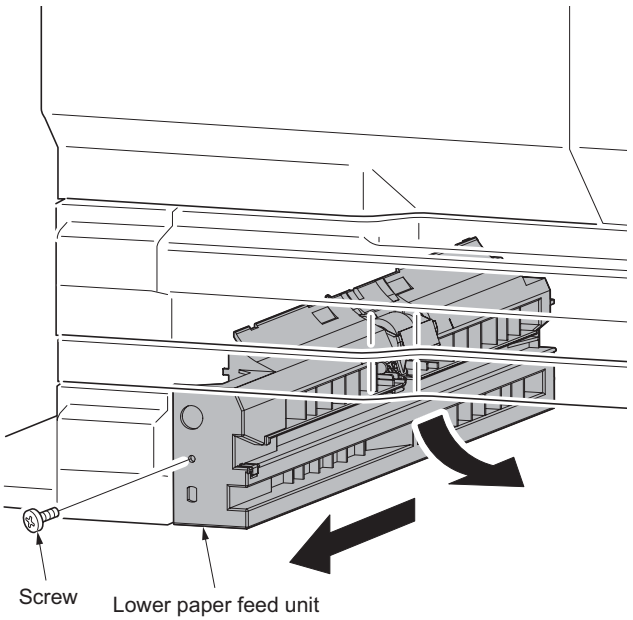


Figure 1-5-17

4. Release two hooks and remove the separation pulley unit from the lower paper feed unit.

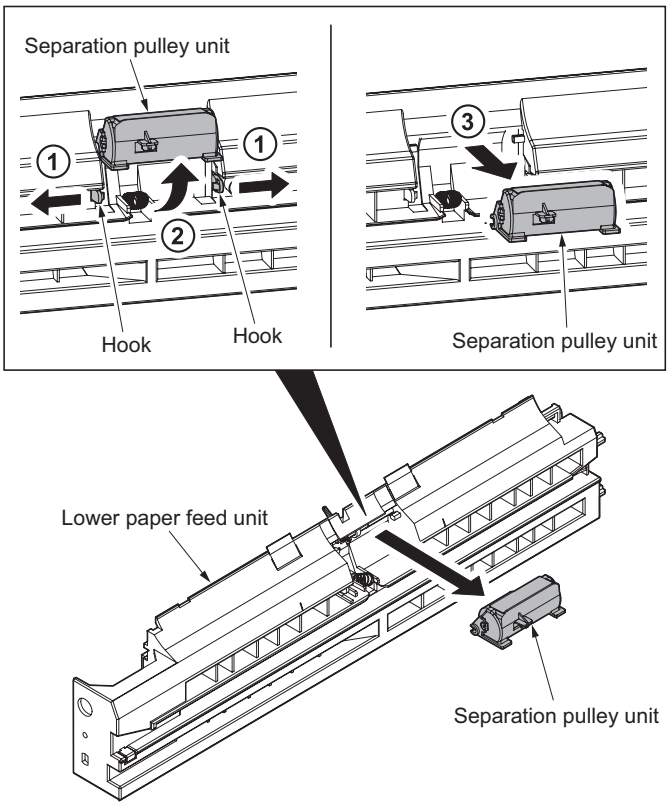


Figure 1-5-18

5. Remove the separation pulley shaft from the separation pulley unit.
6. Remove the cassette separation pulley from the separation pulley shaft.
7. Replace the cassette separation pulley and refit all the removed parts.

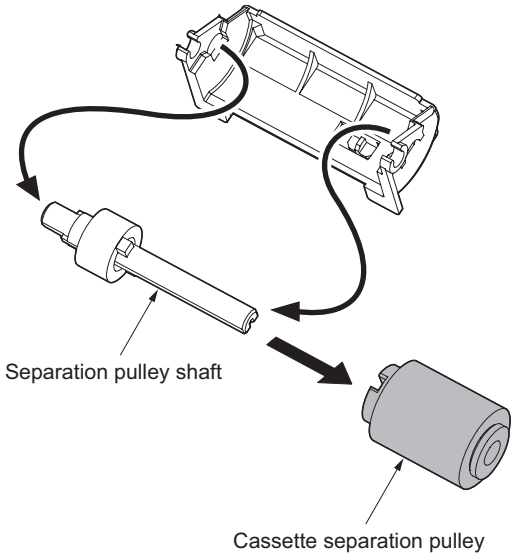


Figure 1-5-19

(5) Detaching and refitting the cassette forwarding pulley and cassette paper feed pulley (22 ppm model only)

Follow the procedure below to replace the cassette forwarding pulley and cassette paper feed pulley.

Procedure

1. Remove the feed roller (see page 1-5-9).
2. Remove the lower paper feed unit (see page 1-5-11).
3. Remove the screw and the pin and then remove the cassette rear cover.

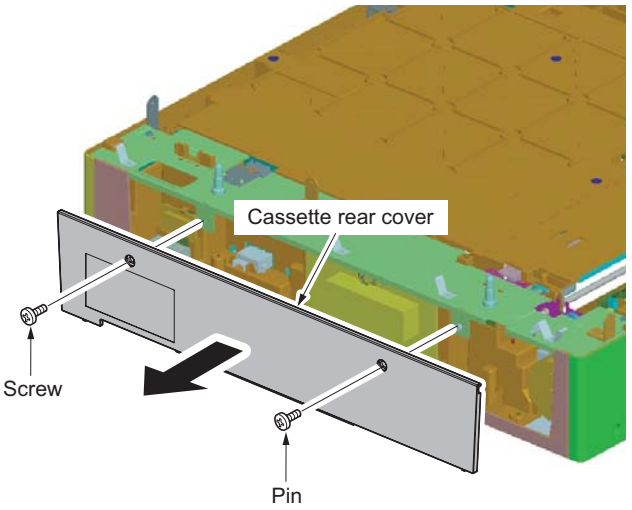


Figure 1-5-20

4. Remove the connector of the cassette paper feed clutch.
5. Remove the stop ring and remove the cassette paper feed clutch.
6. Remove the stop ring and the bush.

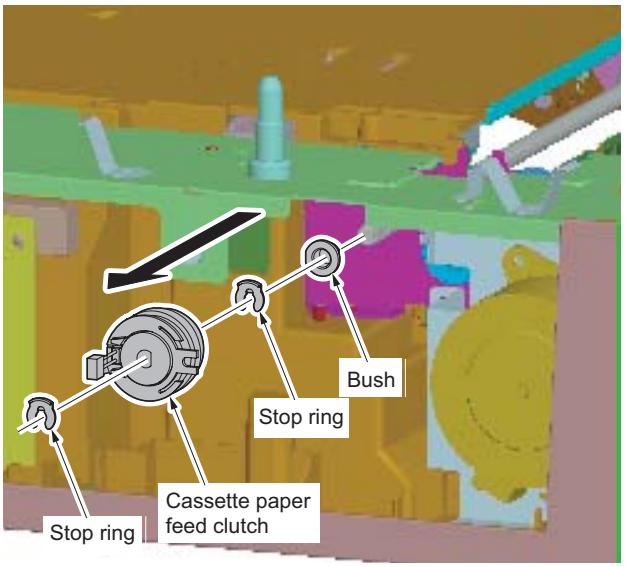


Figure 1-5-21

7. Remove the screw and remove the upper paper feed unit.

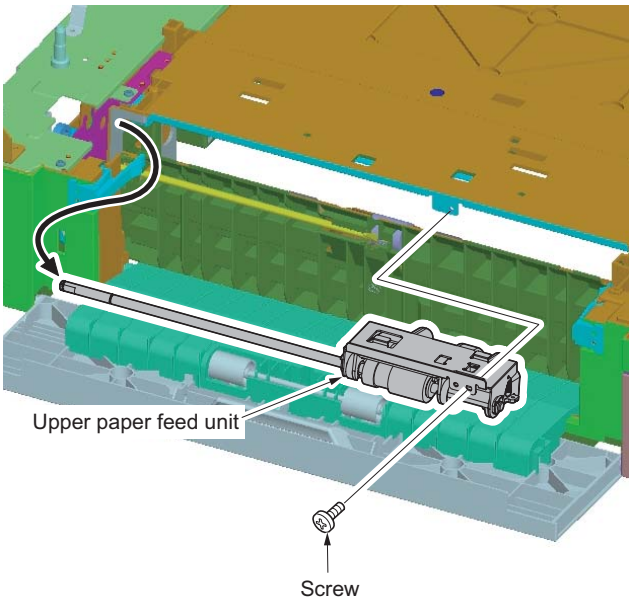


Figure 1-5-22

8. Remove the springs, stop ring and bush and then remove the shaft holder from the upper paper feed unit.

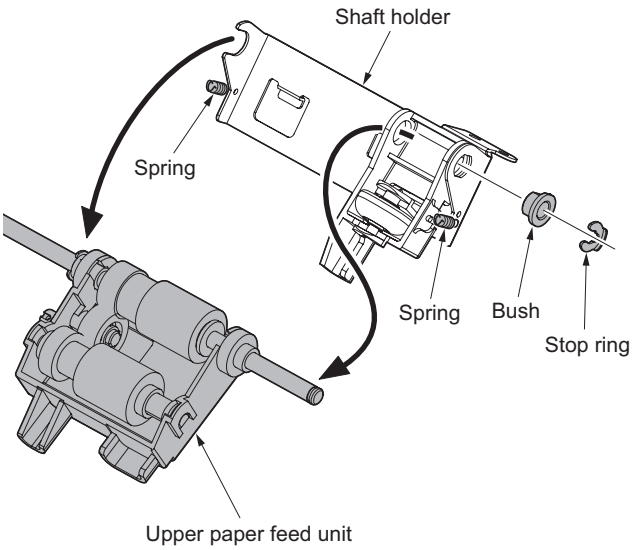


Figure 1-5-23

9. Remove the cassette forwarding pulley from the upper paper feed unit.
10. Remove the paper feed pulley shaft from the upper paper feed unit.
11. Remove the collar and the cassette paper feed pulley from the upper paper feed shaft.
12. Replace the cassette forwarding pulley and cassette paper feed pulley and refit all the removed parts.

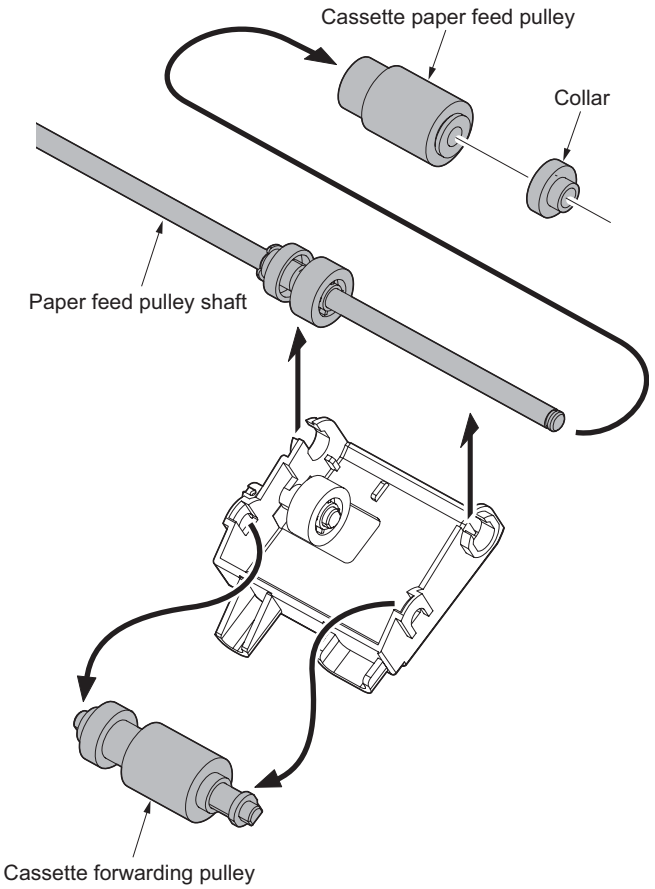


Figure 1-5-24

(6) Detaching and refitting the paper conveying unit

Follow the procedure below to maintenance of the paper feed section.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove the lower paper feed unit (see page 1-5-11).
3. Remove the stop ring and strap from the rear side of the left cover.
   Remove the stop ring and stopper from the front side of the left cover.

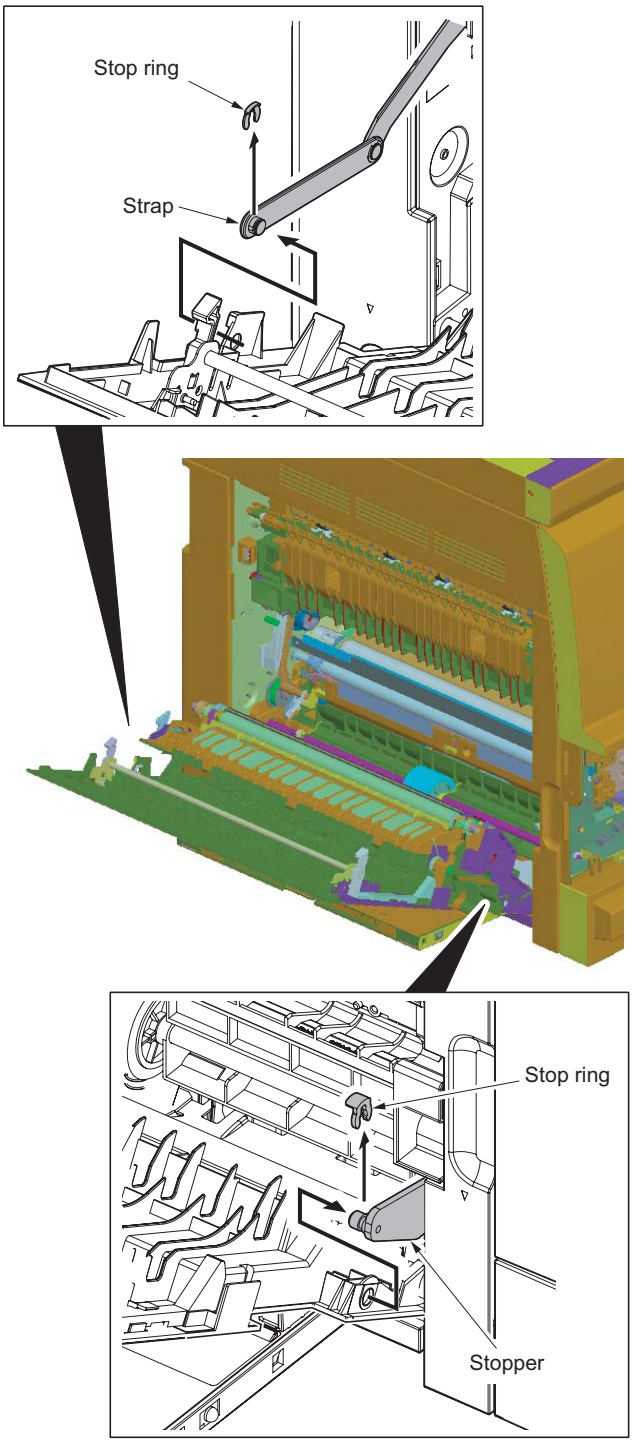


Figure 1-5-25

4. Remove the left cover from machine.
5. Remove the paper conveying unit from the machine.

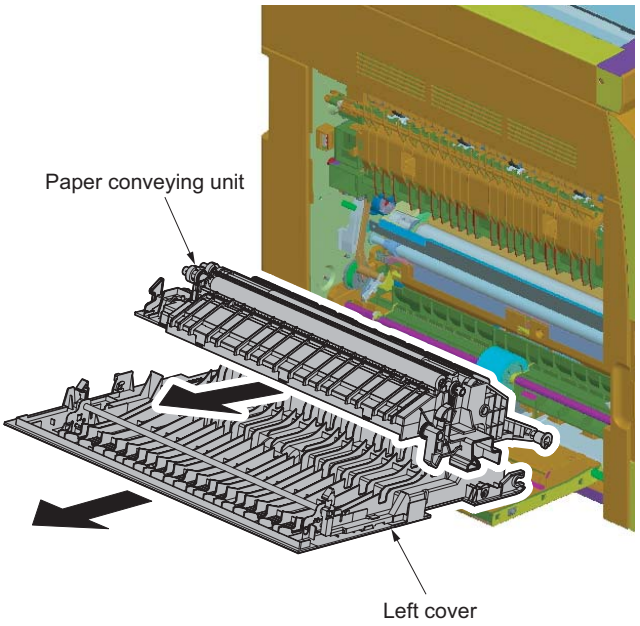


Figure 1-5-26

(7) Detaching and refitting the MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pad

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pad.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and remove the waste toner box. Pull out the cassette.
2. Remove the screw and remove the front left lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
3. Remove the paper conveying unit (see page 1-5-16).
4. Remove the stop ring and bush from the front side of the machine.

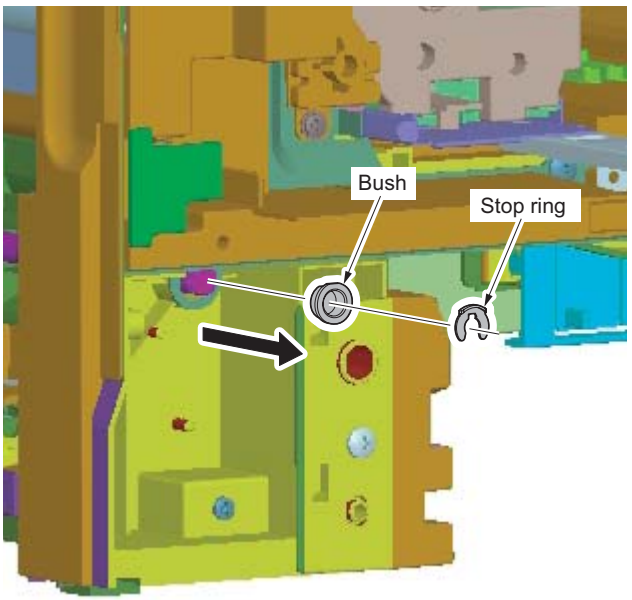


Figure 1-5-27

5. Remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-6).
6. Remove three screws and remove the MP drive unit.

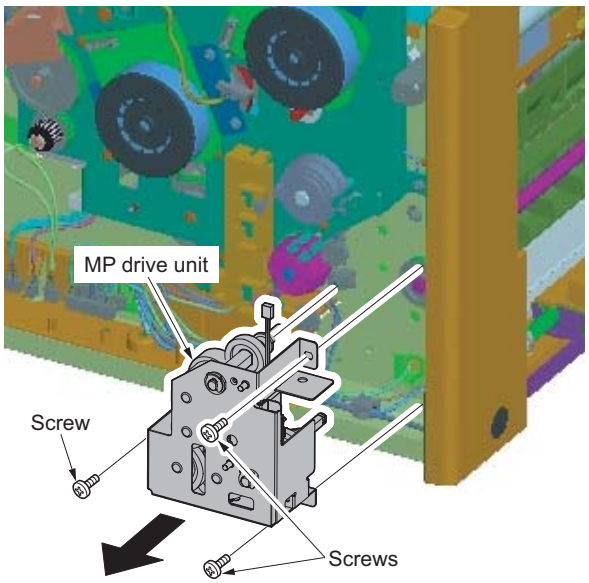


Figure 1-5-28

7. Remove the stop ring, gear and bush.

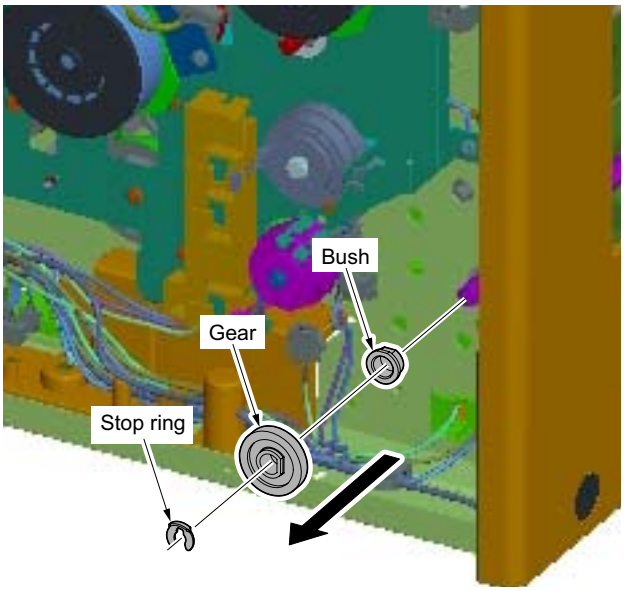


Figure 1-5-29

8. Temporarily push the MP paper feed pulley unit into the rear side to unlock the front side and then remove it from the machine.

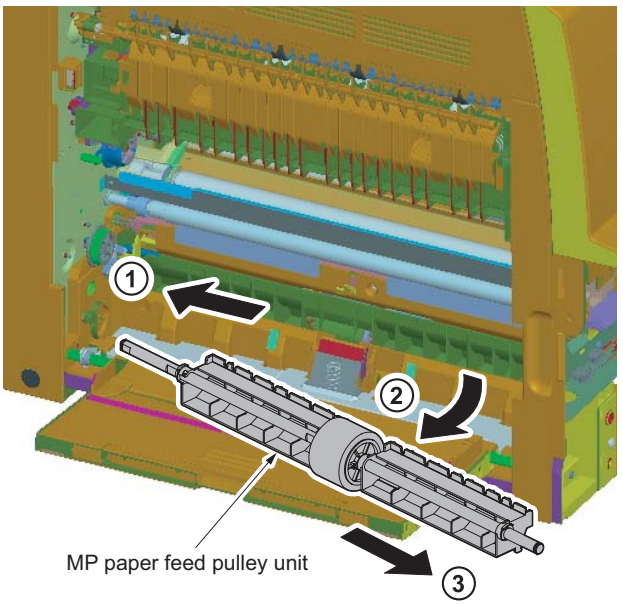


Figure 1-5-30

9. Remove the stop ring, MP paper guide, spring pin and the MP paper feed pulley.

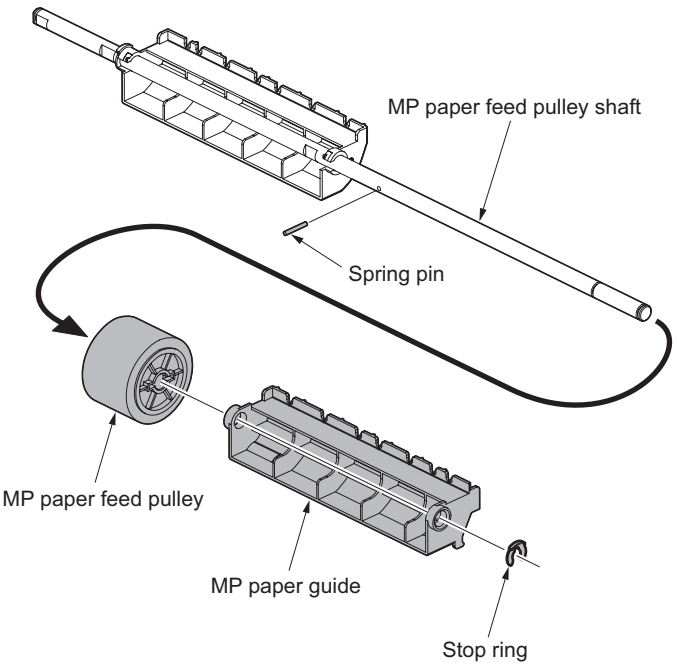


Figure 1-5-31

10. Push the inserted parts of the MP separation pad and remove the pad from the machine.
11. Replace the MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pad and refit all the removed parts.
    Cautions
    Confirm that the MP paper guide does not rotate (locked) after refit the MP paper feed pulley unit.

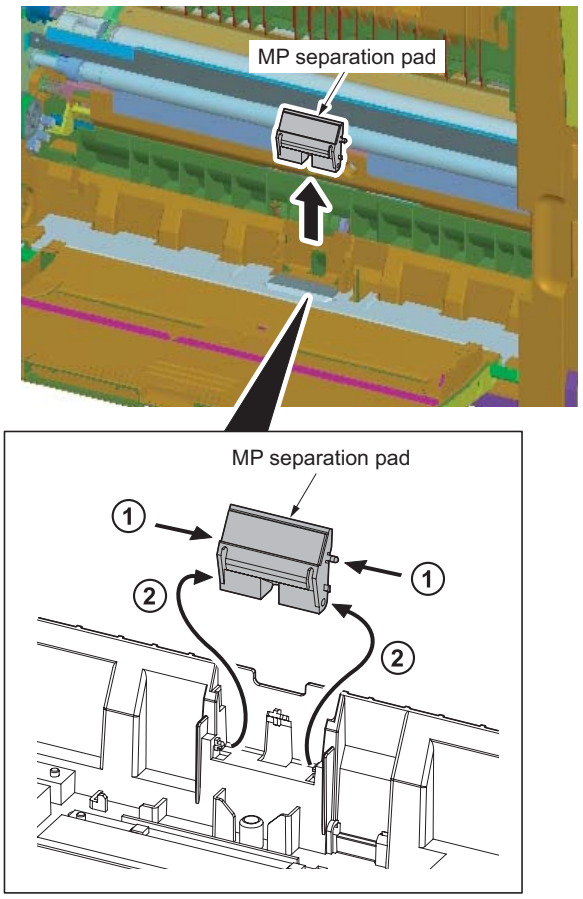


Figure 1-5-32

(8) Detaching and refitting the left registration roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the left registration roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the paper conveying unit (see page 1-5-16).
2. Release the stoppers at the front and rear side, and then remove the left registration roller from the paper conveying unit.

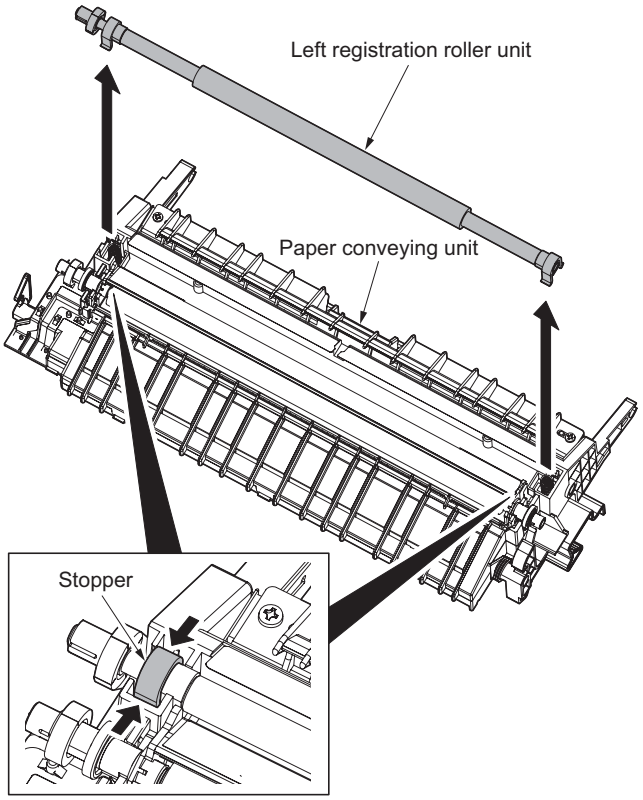


Figure 1-5-33

3. Remove two stoppers, gear and two bushes.
4. Replace the left registration roller and refit all the removed parts.

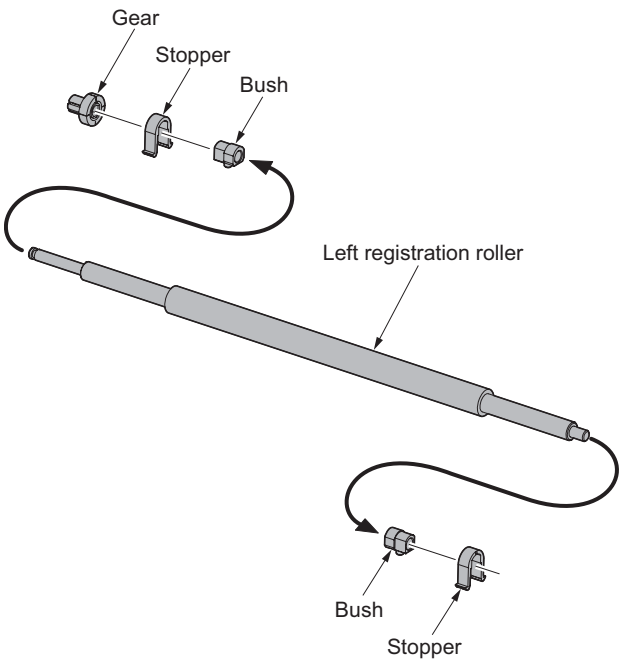


Figure 1-5-34

(9) Detaching and refitting the right registration roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the right registration roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-6).
3. Remove the connector and remove the registration clutch.

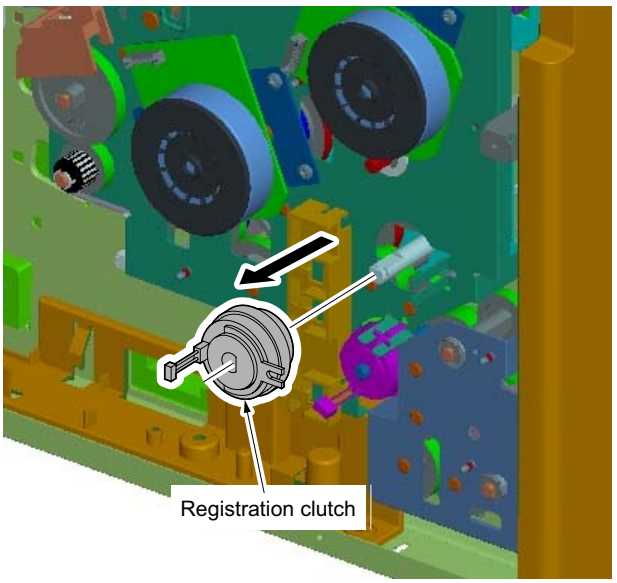


Figure 1-5-35

4. Remove the stop ring.
5. Remove the right registration roller from the machine.

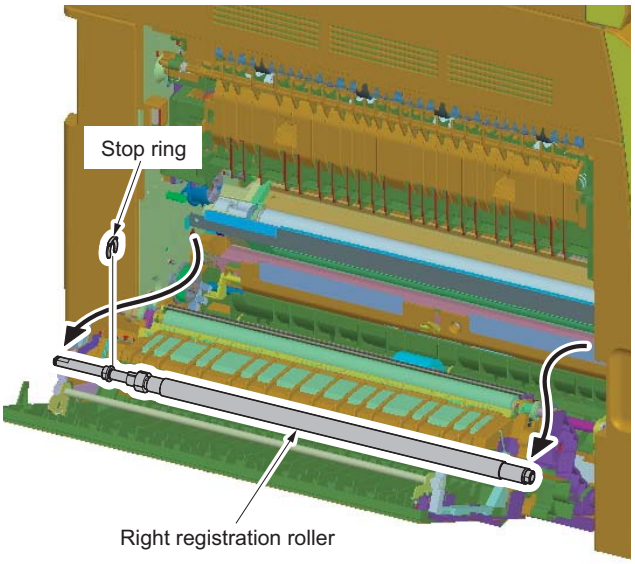


Figure 1-5-36

6. Remove two bushes and gear.
7. Replace the right registration roller and refit all the removed parts.

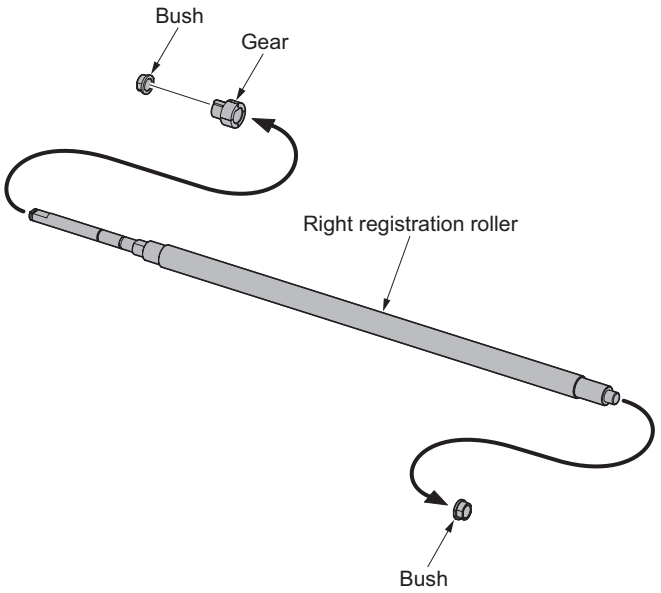


Figure 1-5-37

1-5-3 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Follow the procedure below to replace the exposure lamp.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the document processor.
2. Remove two screws and remove the right upper cover.
   Remove the contact glass.

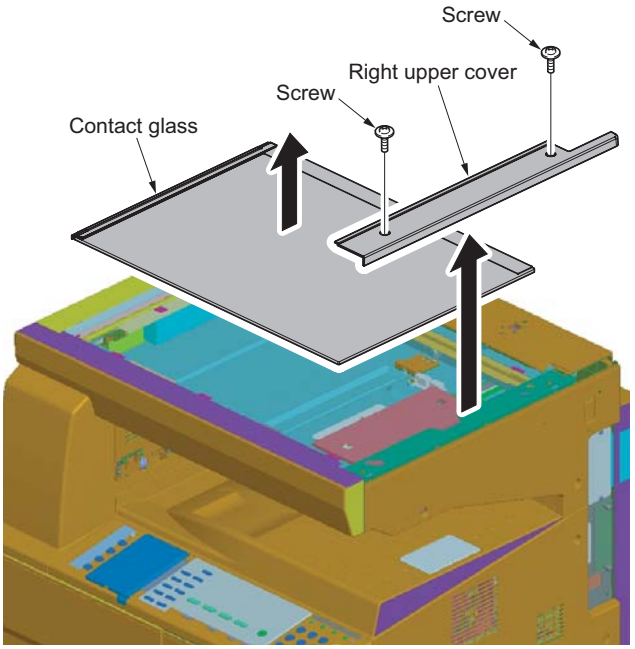


Figure 1-5-38

3. Open the front cover and left cover.
4. Remove the front left cover (see page 1-5-47).
5. Release five hooks and both and then remove the front scanner cover.
6. Remove two screws and remove the rear upper cover.

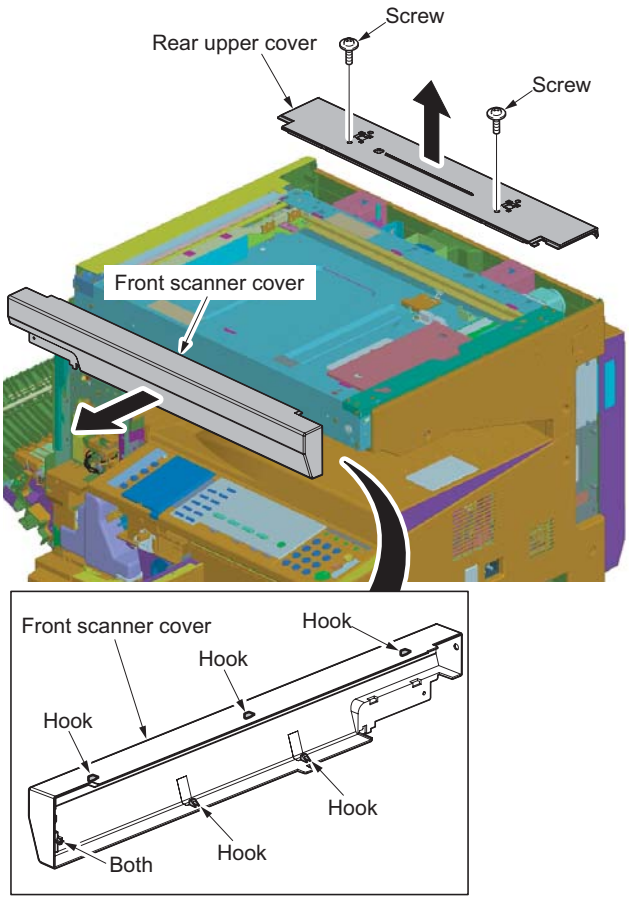


Figure 1-5-39

7. Remove two films from the scanner unit.
8. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position. When moving the mirror 1 frame, do not touch the exposure lamp and the inverter PWB.

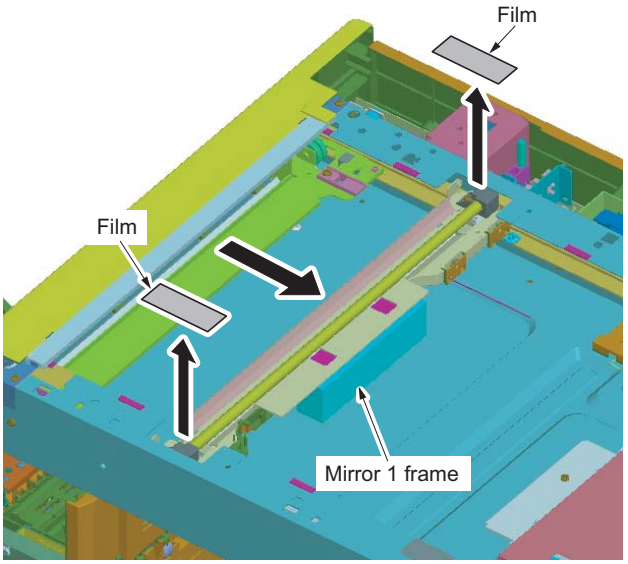


Figure 1-5-40

9. Remove the connector of the exposure lamp from inverter PWB and remove the lamp wire from ribs.

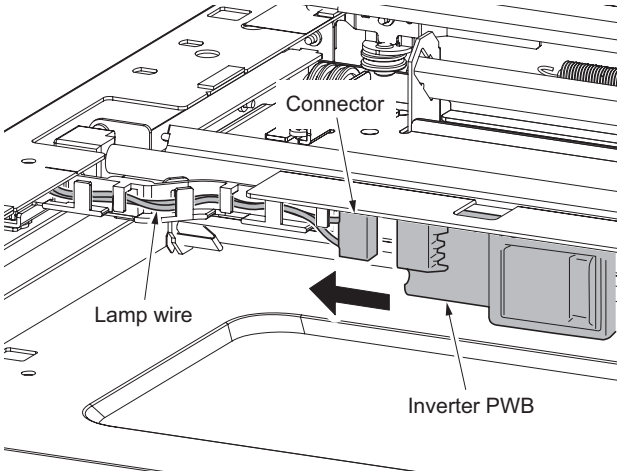


Figure 1-5-41

10. Remove two screws and remove the exposure lamp.
11. Replace the exposure lamp and refit all the removed parts.

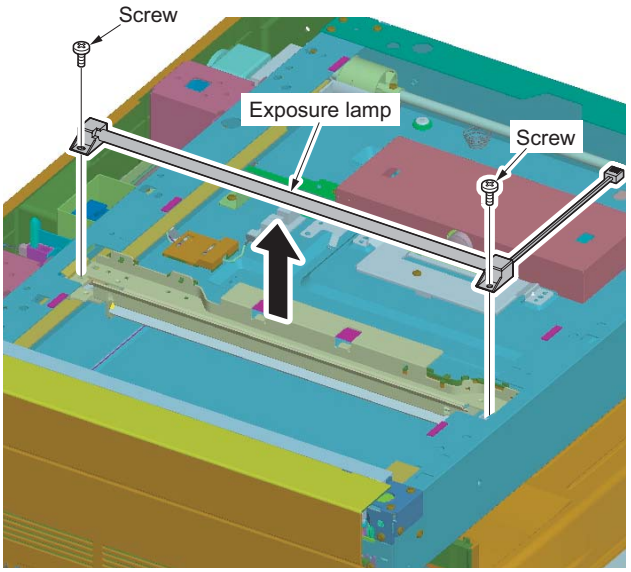


Figure 1-5-42

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

(2-1) Detaching the scanner wires

Procedure

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-24).
2. Open the left cover.
3. Release six hooks and both and then remove the left middle cover.

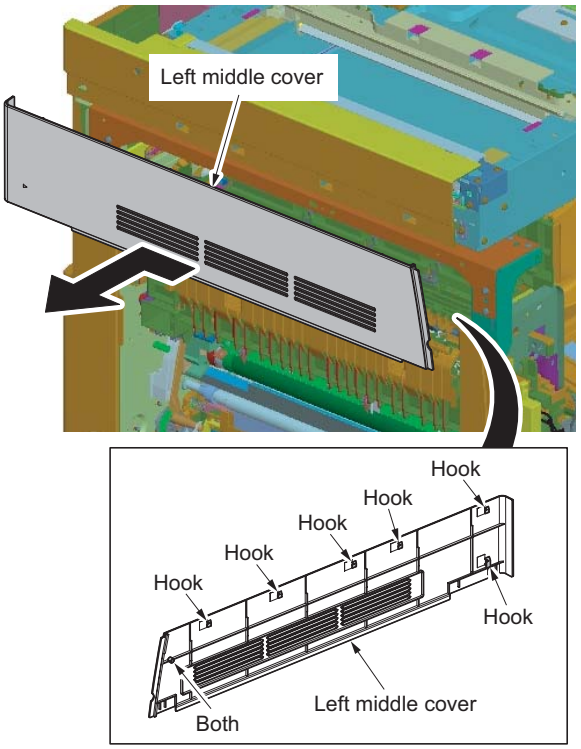


Figure 1-5-43

4. Release five hooks and two bothes and then remove the left upper cover.

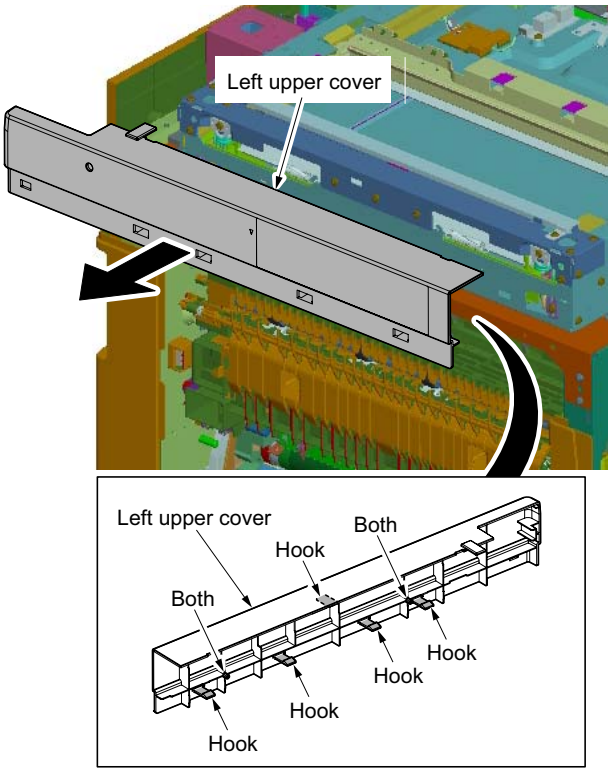


Figure 1-5-44

5. Remove the screw and remove the slit retainer and slit glass.

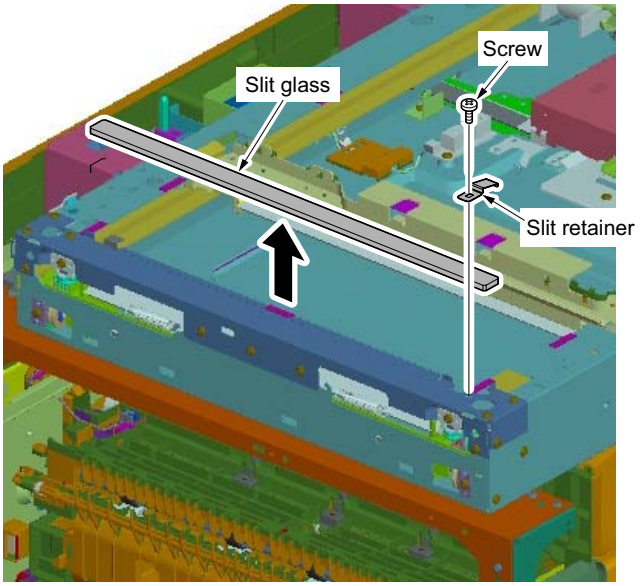


Figure 1-5-45

6. Remove two wire guides.
7. Remove the inverter wire from the inverter PWB.

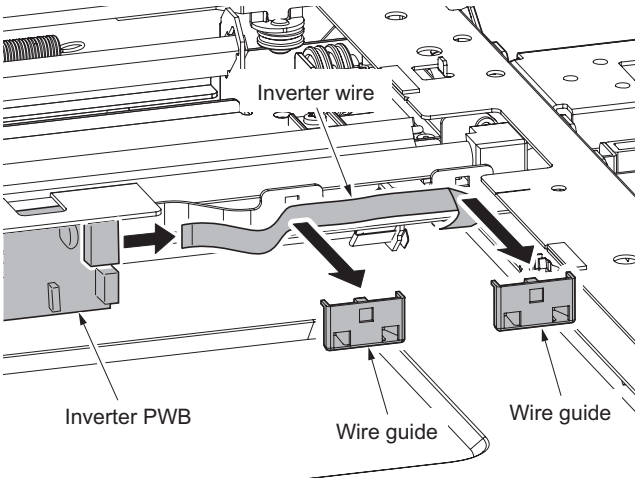


Figure 1-5-46

8. Remove each screw and remove front and rear wire holder plates.
   Remove the mirror 1 frame from the scanner unit.

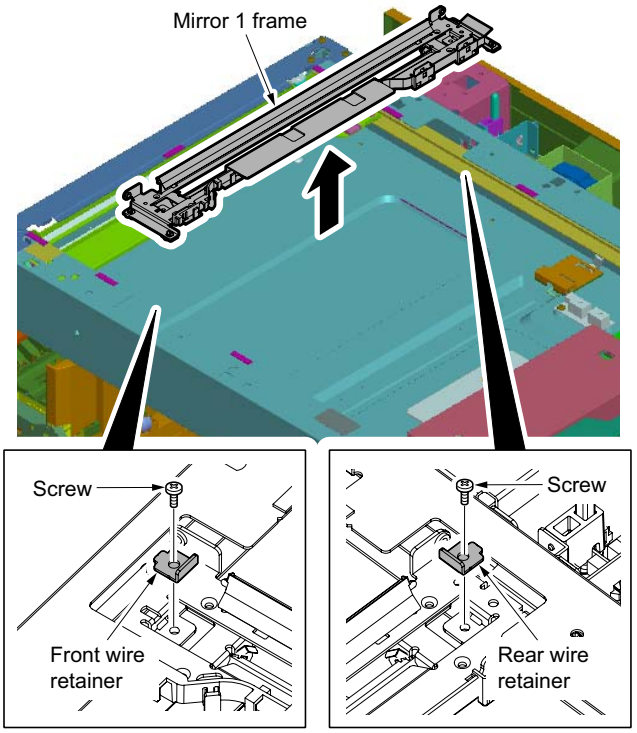


Figure 1-5-47

9. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs.
10. Remove the scanner wires.

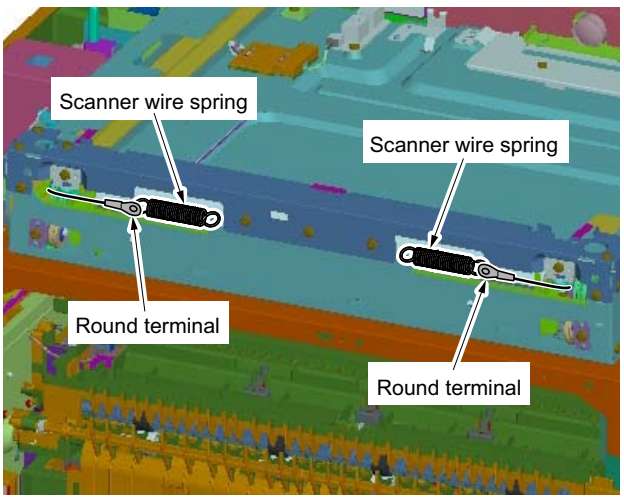


Figure 1-5-48

(2-2) Fitting the scanner wires

NOTE
When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.
Machine front: (P/N: 2C91236), gray
Machine rear: (P/N: 2C91235), black

Fitting requires the following tools
Two frame securing tools (P/N 302C968310)
Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

Procedure

1. Remove the rear cover.

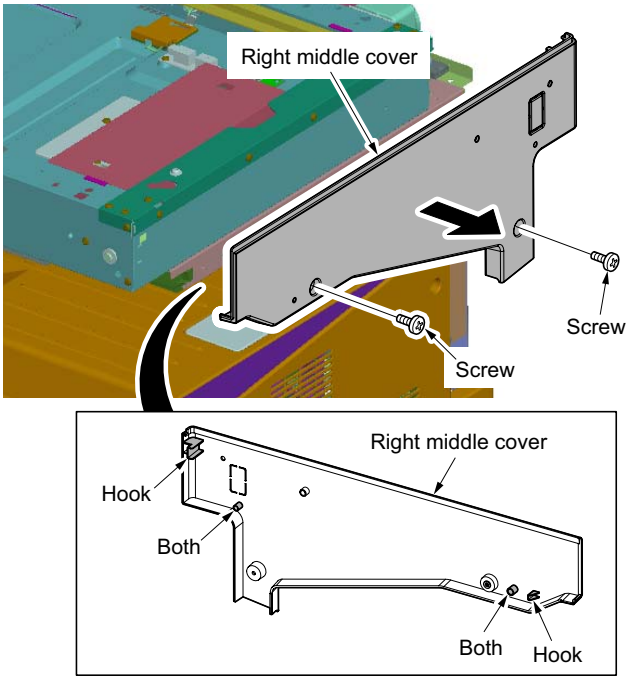


Figure 1-5-49

2. Remove the screw and remove the scanner wire drum gear from the rear side of the machine.
3. Remove the stop ring and bush.

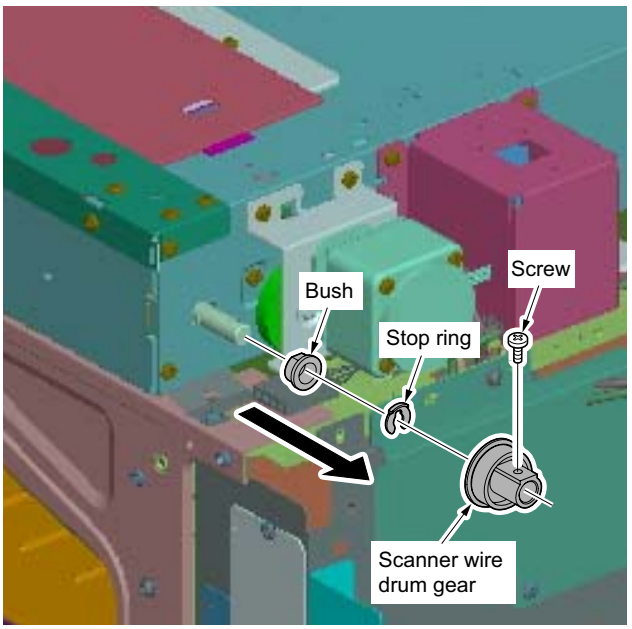


Figure 1-5-50

4. Remove the stop ring and bush from the front of the machine.
5. Remove the scanner wire drum shaft from the scanner unit.

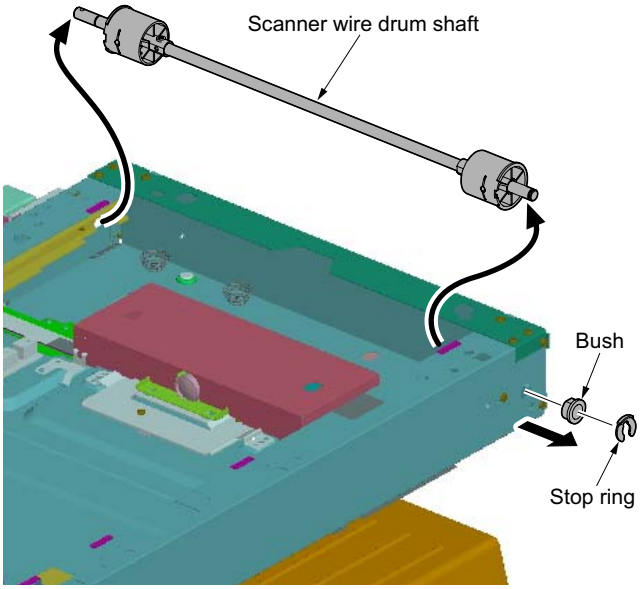


Figure 1-5-51

6. Insert the locating ball on each of the scanner wires into the hole in the respective scanner wire drum and wind the scanner wire three turns inward and four turns outward.
   With the locating ball as the reference point, wind the shorter end of each of the wires outward.
7. Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.

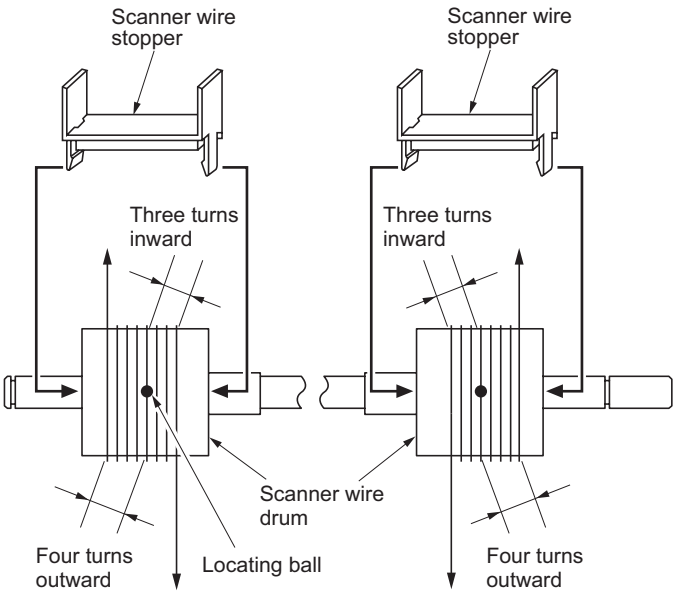


Figure 1-5-52

8. Refit the scanner wire drum shaft to the scanner unit.
9. Insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

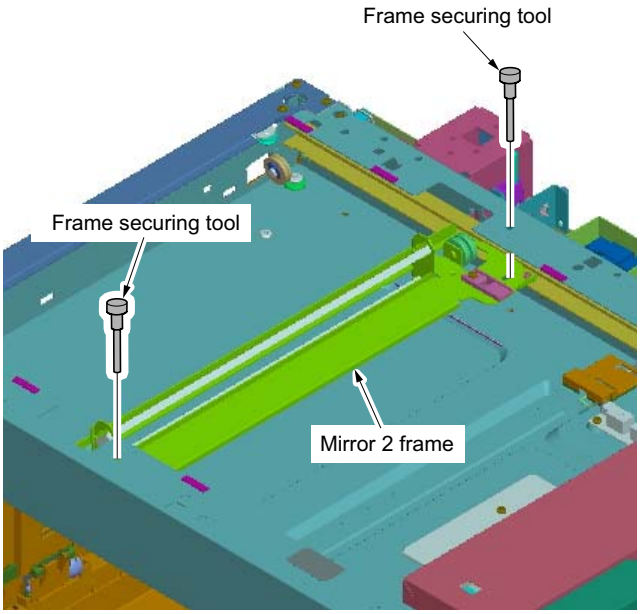


Figure 1-5-53

10. Loop the outer ends of the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. ..... (1)
11. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside the scanner unit. ..... (2)
12. Loop the inner ends of the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit, winding from below to above. ..... (3)
13. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from above to below. ..... (4)
14. Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire guides at the left of the scanner unit. ..... (5)
15. Hook the round terminals onto the scanner wire springs. ..... (6)

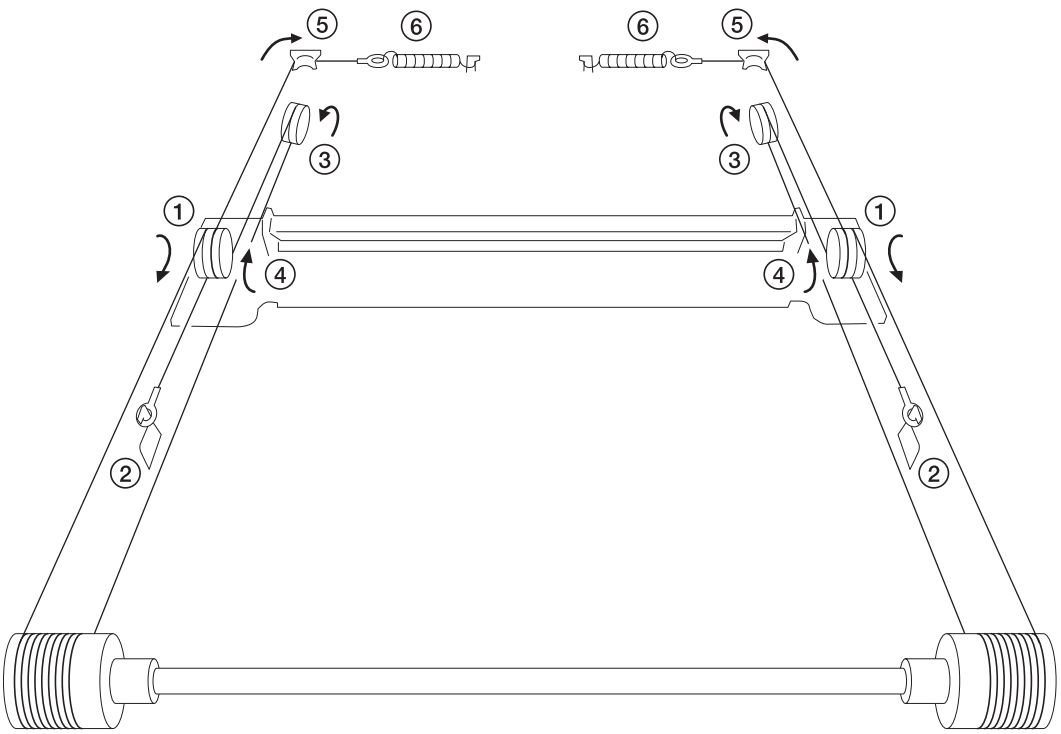


Figure 1-5-54

16. Remove two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
17. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
18. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
19. Put the mirror 1 frame on the scanner rail and move it toward the left side of the machine.
20. Insert the frame securing tools into the positioning holes (leftmost holes) at the front and rear of the scanner unit and screw the mirror 1 frame while securing both the mirror 1 frame and the mirror 2 frame.
21. Remove two frame securing tools.
22. Refit all the removed parts.

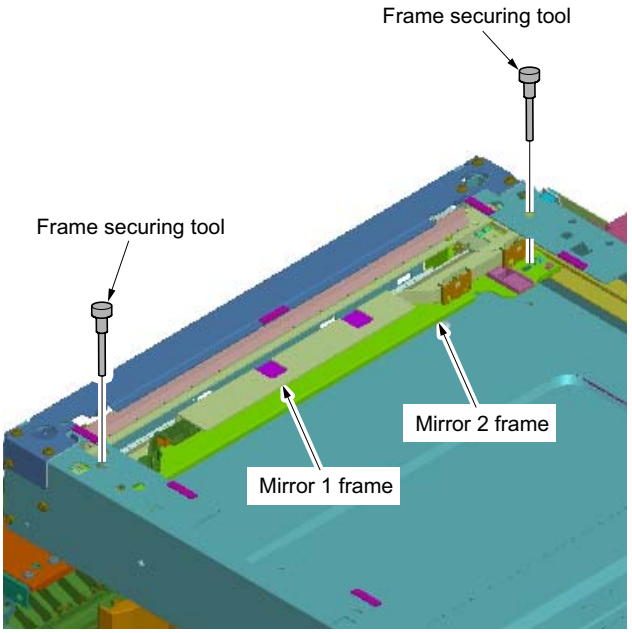


Figure 1-5-55

(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

Procedure

1. Remove the contact glass (see page 1-5-24).
2. Remove four screws and remove the ISU cover.

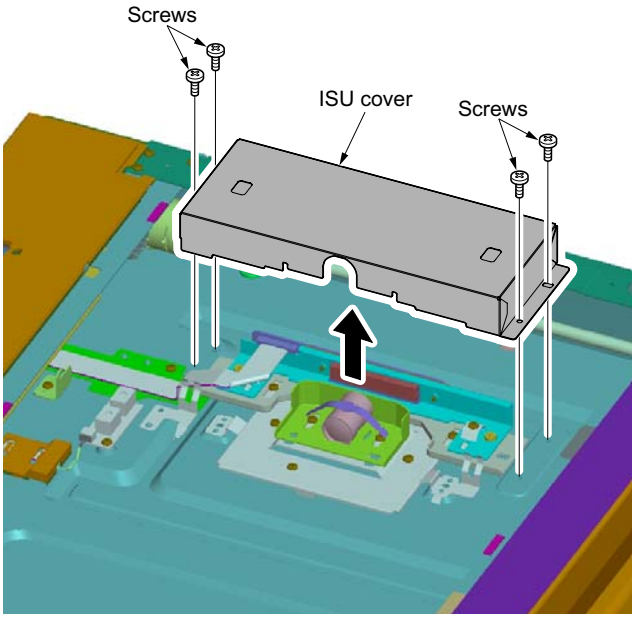


Figure 1-5-56

3. Remove the CCD wire from the CCD PWB.

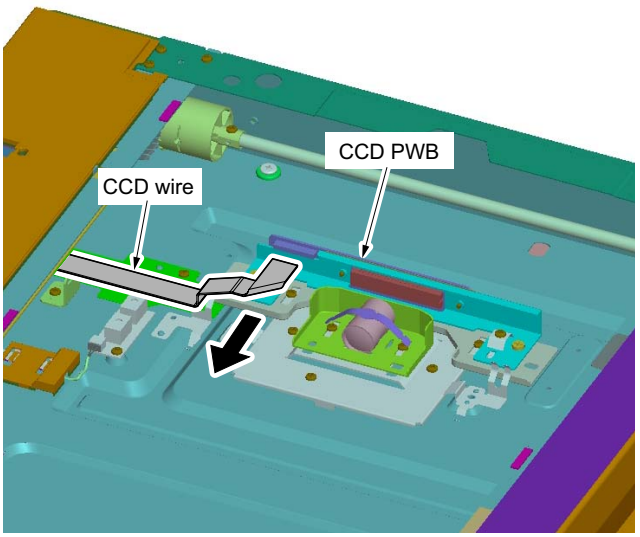


Figure 1-5-57

4. Remove each screw and remove two plates.
5. Remove three screws and remove the ISU
6. Replace the ISU.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

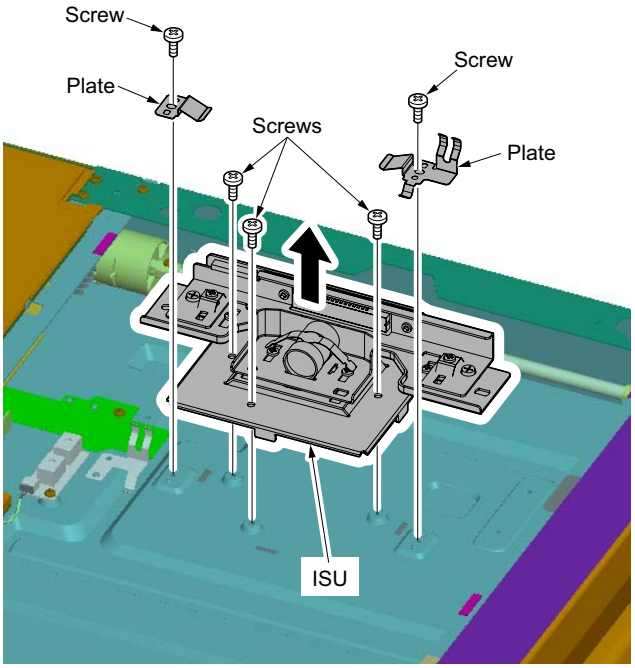


Figure 1-5-58

(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the document processor.
2. Remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-6).
   Remove the front left cover (see page 1-5-47).
   Remove the right upper cover, contact glass, rear upper cover and front scanner cover (see page 1-5-24).
   Remove the left middle cover, left upper cover and slit glass (see page 1-5-26).
   Remove the right middle cover (see page 1-5-29).
3. Remove the screw and release three hooks and then remove the front right cover.

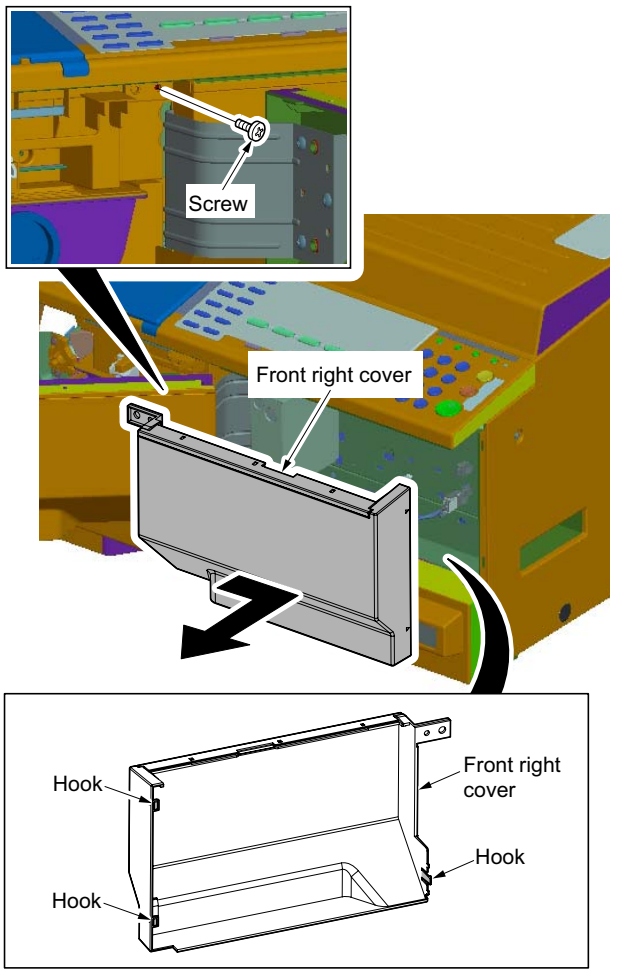


Figure 1-5-59

4. Remove two screws and release six hooks and two both, and then remove the right middle cover.

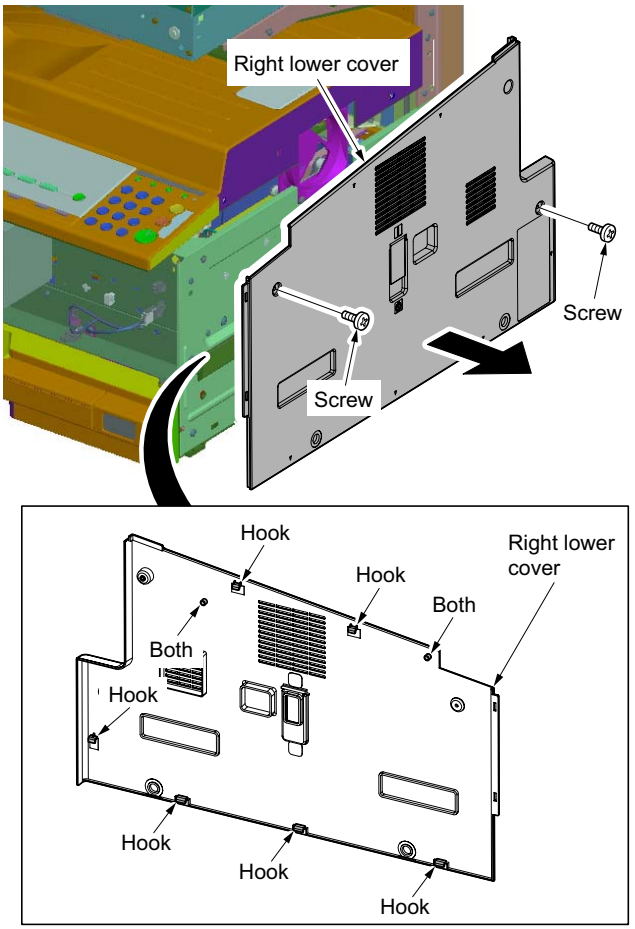


Figure 1-5-60

5. Remove two screws and remove the shield cover.

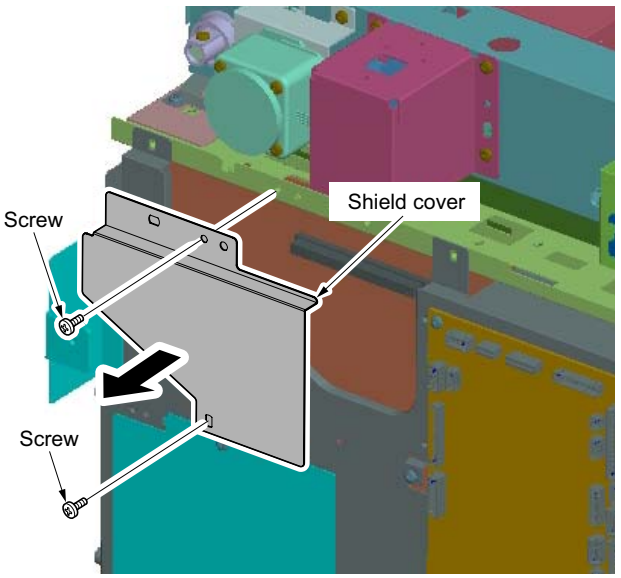


Figure 1-5-61

6. Remove YC5, YC15 and YC16 connectors of the engine PWB.
7. Remove YC5 connector of the main PWB.

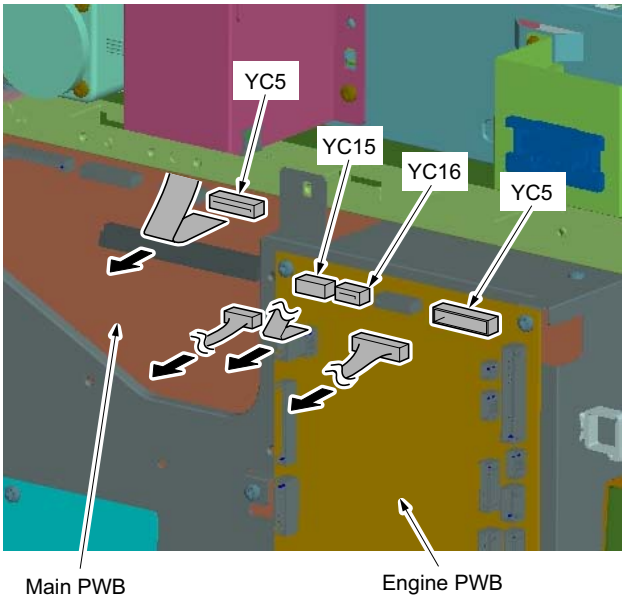


Figure 1-5-62

8. Remove four pins and remove the scanner unit.

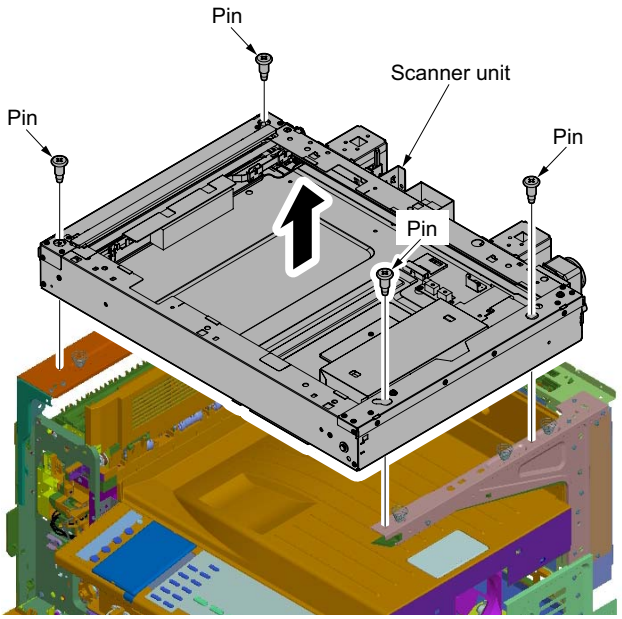


Figure 1-5-63

9. Remove the screw and remove the eject cover.

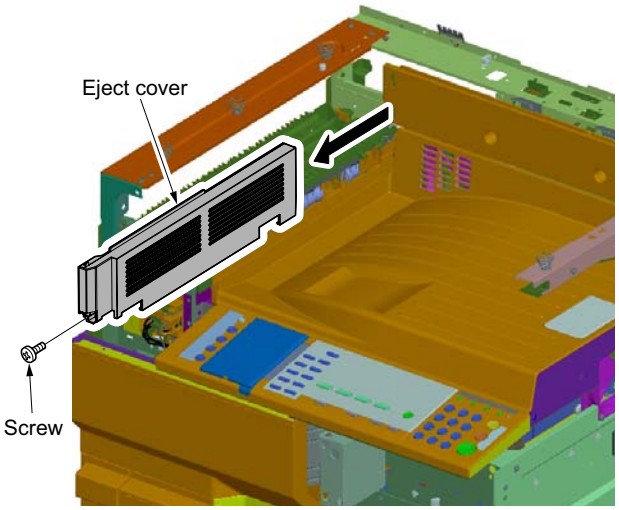


Figure 1-5-64

10. Remove the screw and remove the inner rear cover.

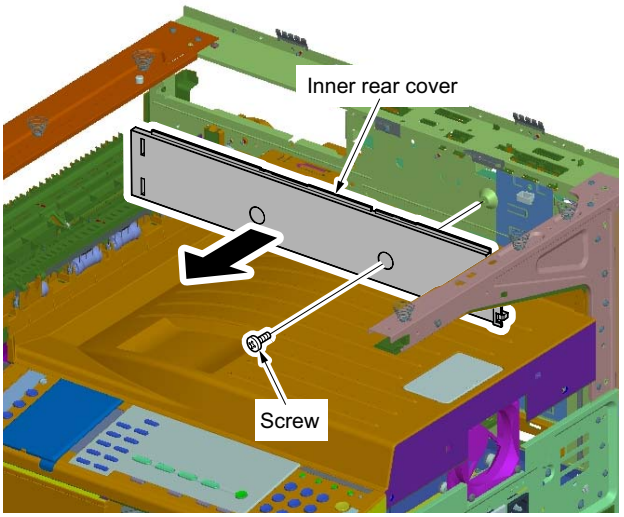


Figure 1-5-65

11. Release two hooks and both and then remove the eject tray.

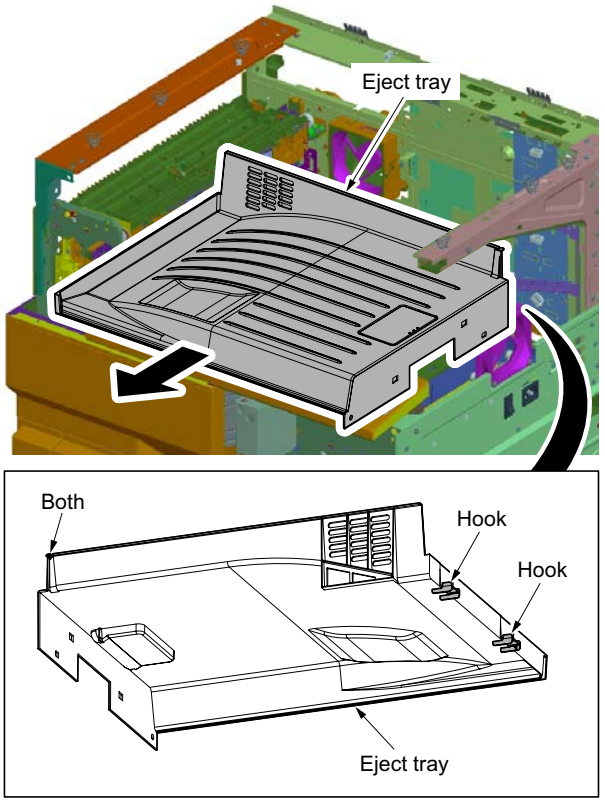


Figure 1-5-66

12. Remove four screws and two connectors and remove the laser scanner unit.
13. Replace the laser scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.

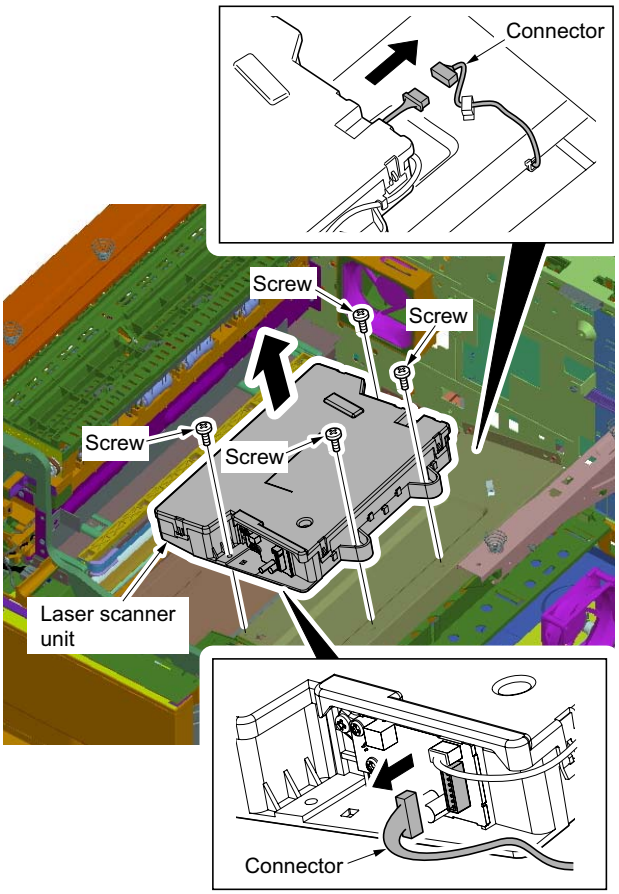


Figure 1-5-67

(5) Adjusting the longitudinal squareness (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Caution:
Adjust the deflection in the paper at the registration roller first (see page 1-3-15). Check for the longitudinal squareness of the copy image, and if it is not obtained, perform the longitudinal squareness adjustment.
Before making the following adjustment, output a VTC-PG2 pattern in maintenance item U993 to use as the original for the adjustment.

Procedure

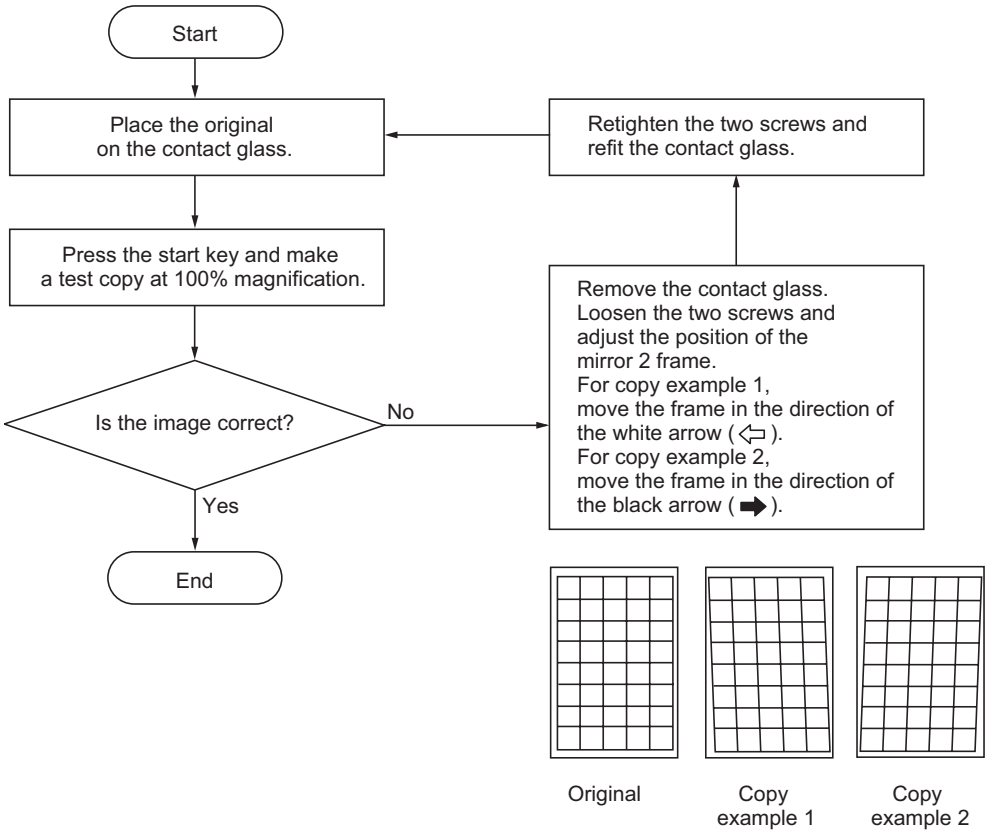


Figure 1-5-68

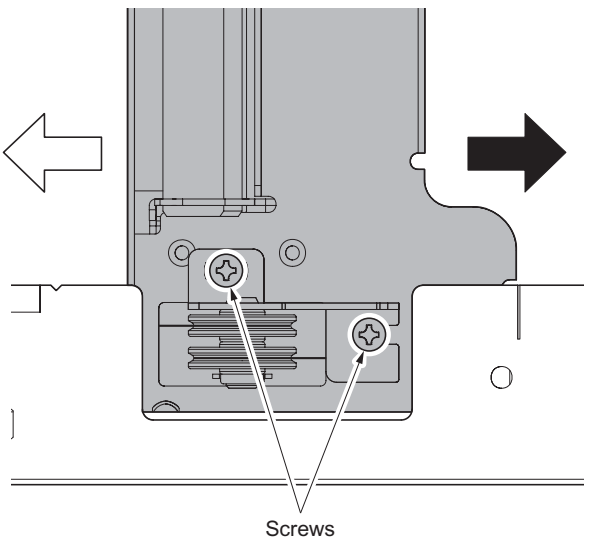


Figure 1-5-69

1-5-4 Drum section

(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

Cautions
Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and left cover. Remove the waste toner box and toner container.
2. Remove the screw holding the developing release lever.
3. Pull the developing release lever and release the developing unit.

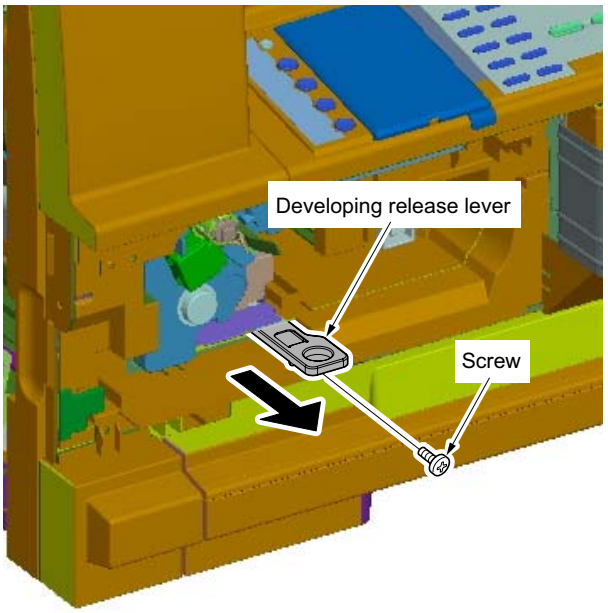


Figure 1-5-70

4. Remove the screw and the connector and then remove the drum unit.
5. Replace the drum unit and refit all the removed parts.
6. when the periodic maintenance, perform maintenance mode U251 (clearing the maintenance count) (see page 1-3-45).

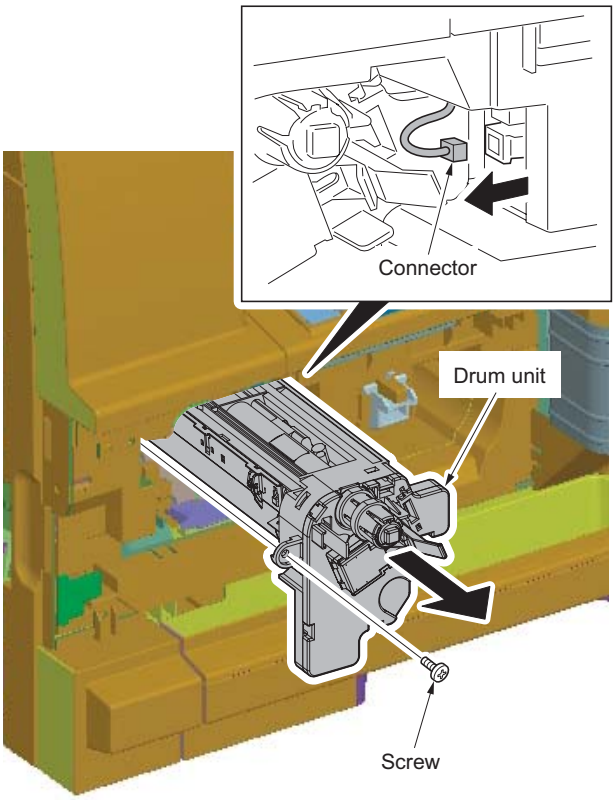


Figure 1-5-71

(2) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claws.

Cautions
Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

Procedure
1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Push the drum separation claws with the minus driver from the top of the hole and remove the claws.
3. Replace the drum separation claws and refit all the removed parts.

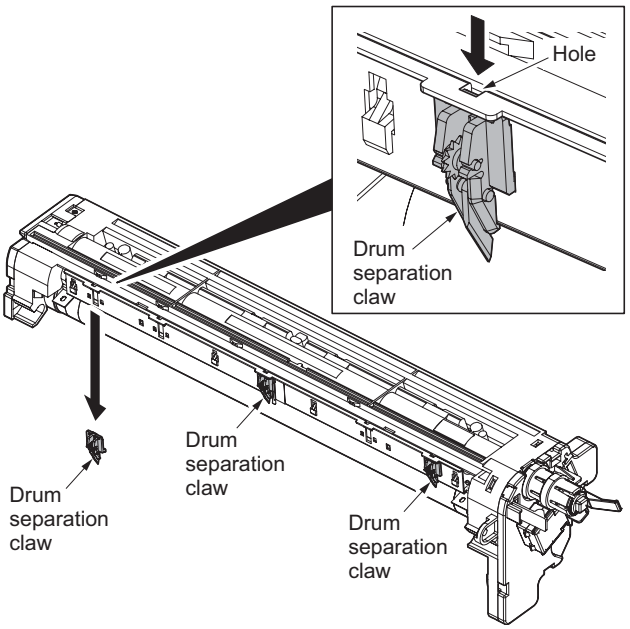


Figure 1-5-72

(3) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and remove the waste toner box.
2. While lifting the main charger unit toward the upper right, remove the unit.
3. While pressing the main charger release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow at the removal stopper position to release the removal stopper, remove the main charger unit from the machine.
4. Replace the main charger unit and refit all the removed parts.

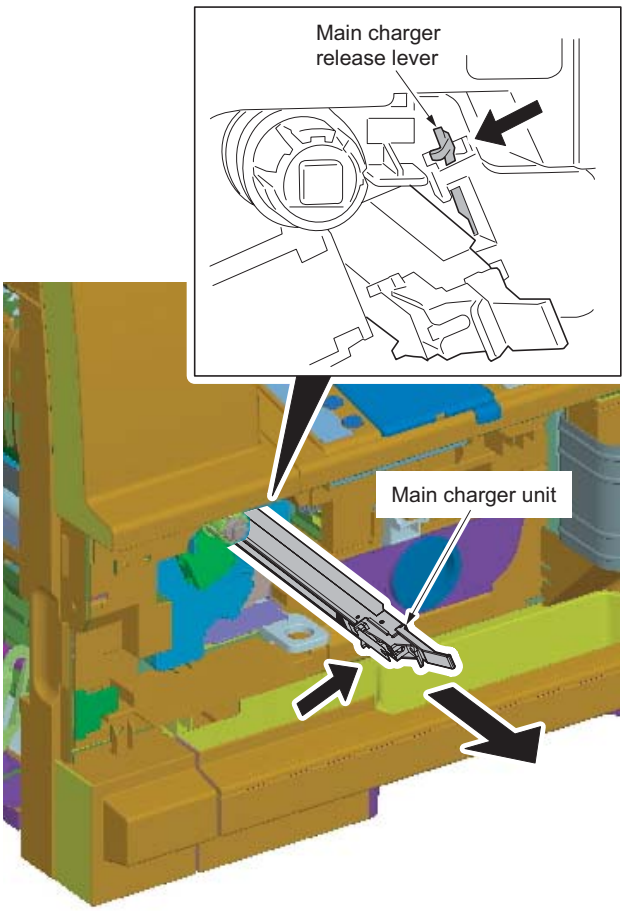


Figure 1-5-73

1-5-5 Developing section

(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. While lifting the developing unit a little, remove the unit from the machine.
3. Replace the developing unit and refit all the removed parts.
4. Perform maintenance mode U130 (initial setting for the developing unit) (see page 1-3-36).
5. Perform maintenance mode U157 (clearing the developing drive time) (see page 1-3-38).

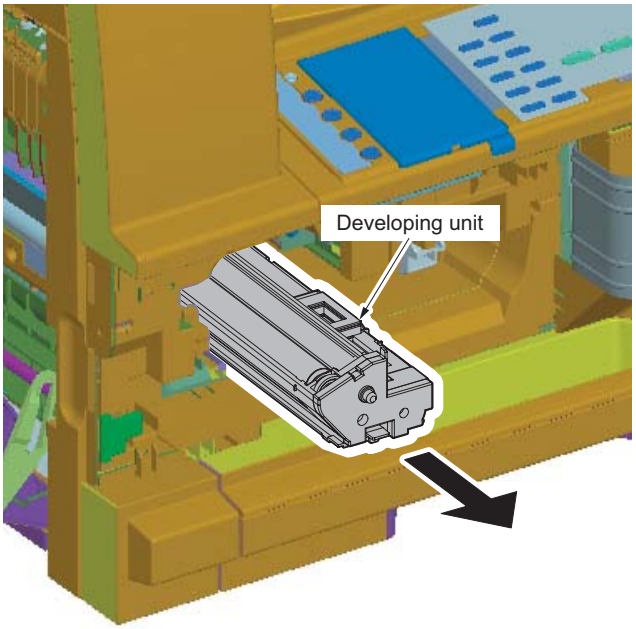


Figure 1-5-74

1-5-6 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the paper conveying unit (see page 1-5-16).
2. Remove front and rear inserted parts and remove the transfer roller unit from the paper conveying unit.

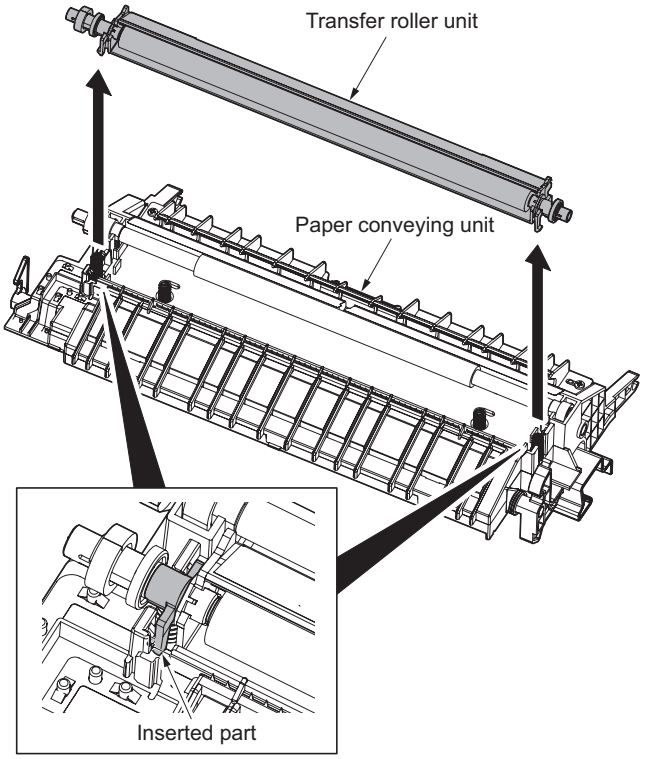


Figure 1-5-75

3. Remove two collars A, two collars B, gear, two stoppers and two bushes from transfer roller.

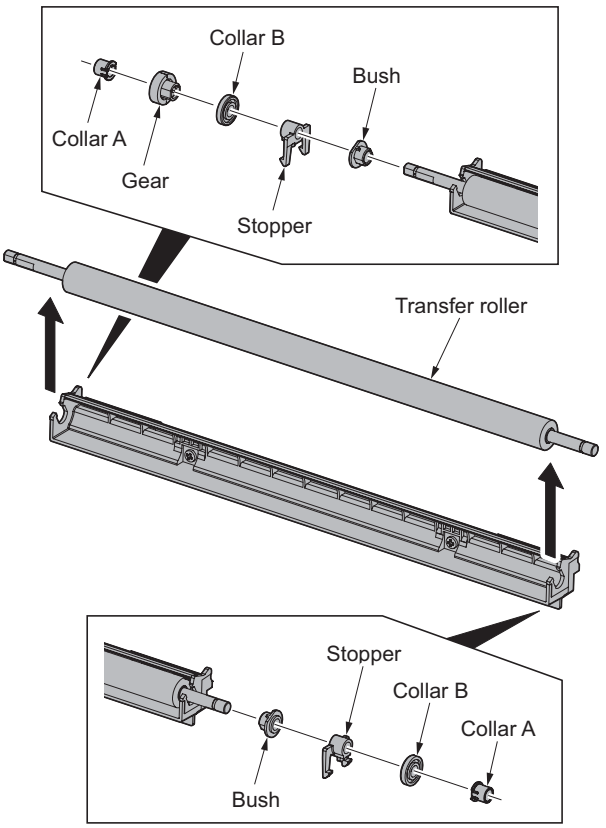


Figure 1-5-76

4. Replace the transfer roller and refit all the removed parts.
   When refitting the transfer roller unit, make sure that the transfer springs are securely fit into the protrusions.

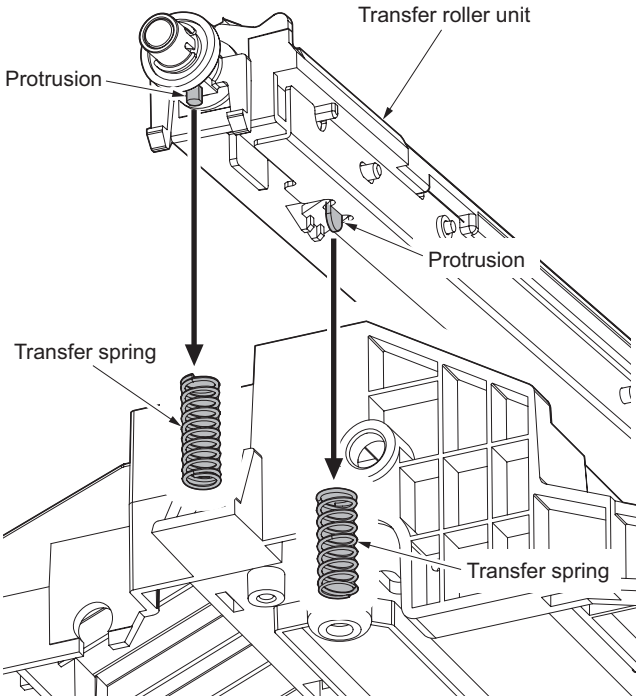


Figure 1-5-77

1-5-7 Fuser section

Caution

(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fuser unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and left cover.
2. Remove the screw and release three inserted parts and then remove the front left cover.

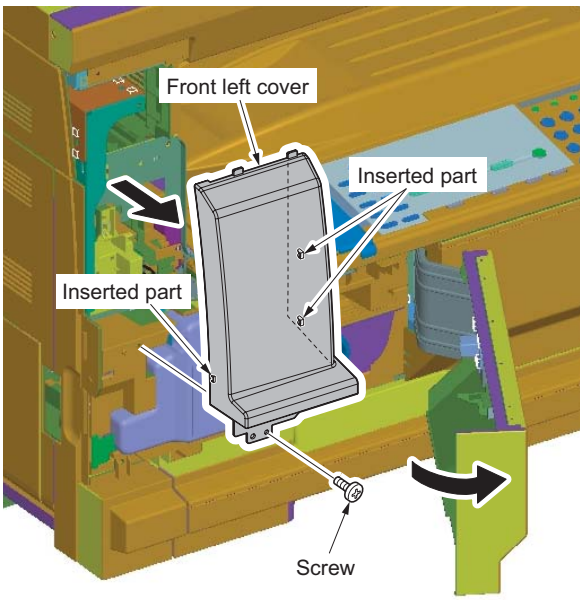


Figure 1-5-78

3. Remove the screw and two connectors and then remove the fuser unit.

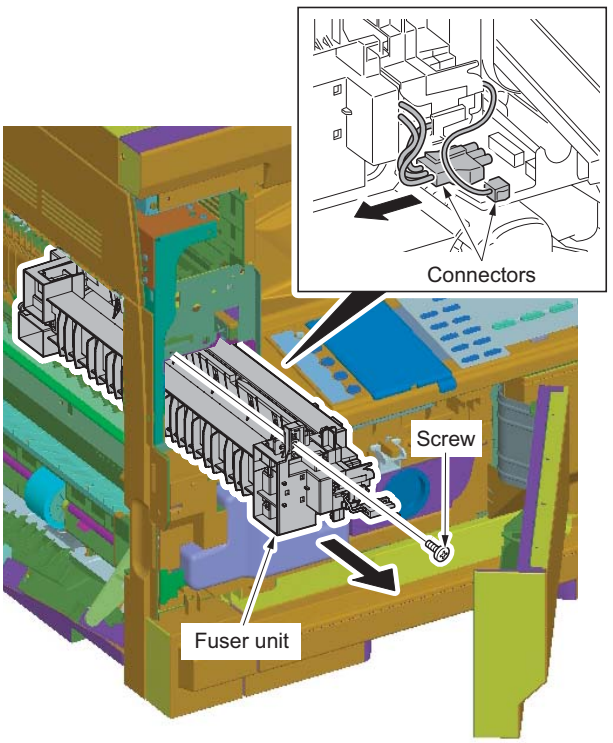


Figure 1-5-79

4. Replace the fuser unit and refit all the removed parts.
   After connecting the connector, be sure to hitch the fuser thermistor wire to both the notch position and the hook of the fuser unit.

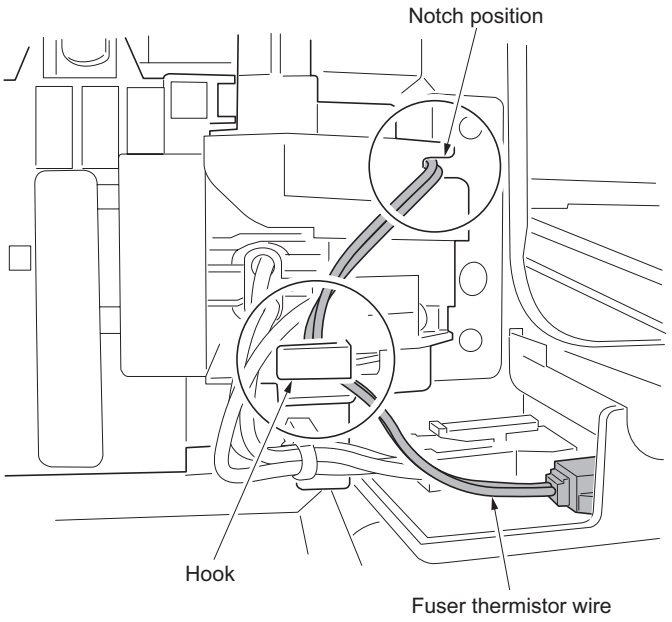


Figure 1-5-80

(2) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove two screws and open the fuser unit.
3. Separate the right and left fuser unit.

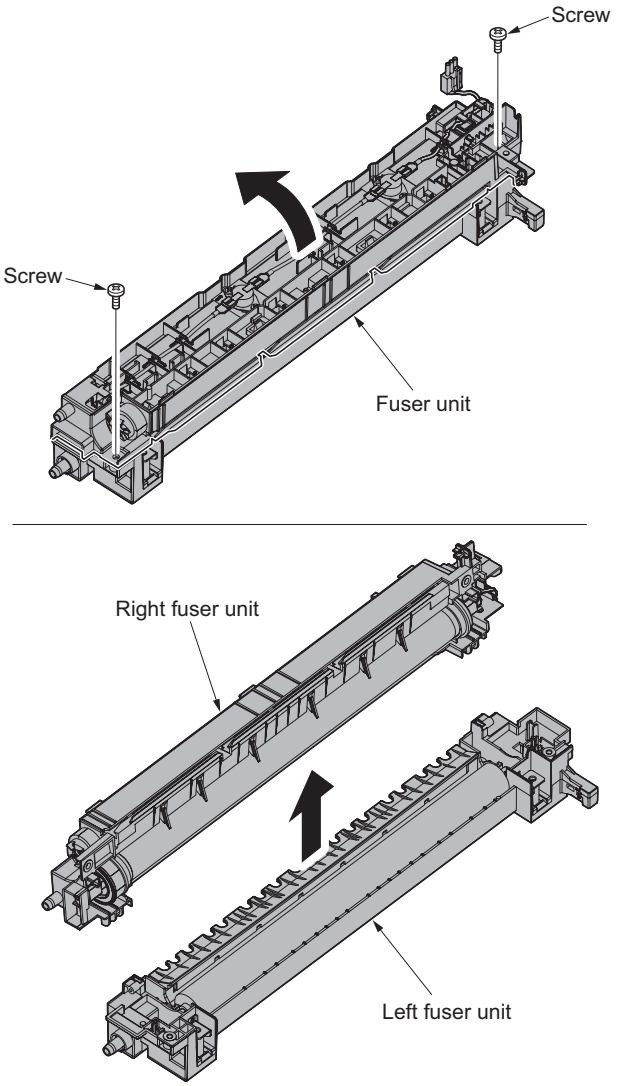


Figure 1-5-81

4. Remove the screw and release two hooks and then remove the press roller guide from the left fuser unit.

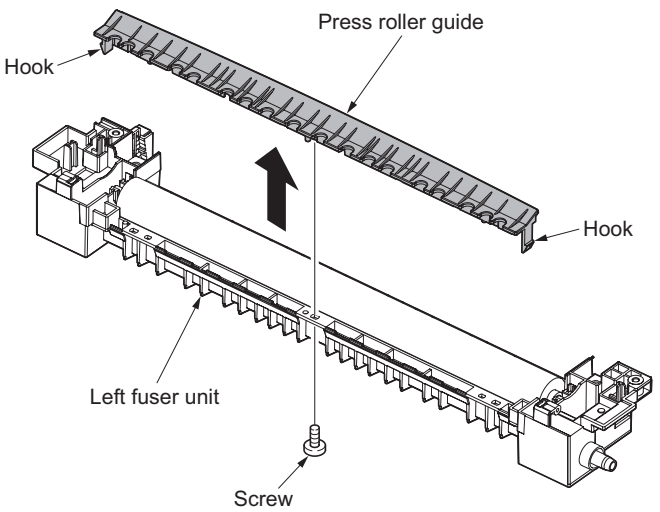


Figure 1-5-82

5. Remove the press roller from left fuser unit.
   Cautions
   Remove the press roller carefully not to scratch its surface.
   When removing it, be careful not to drop and lose the bush.
6. Replace the press roller and refit all the removed parts.

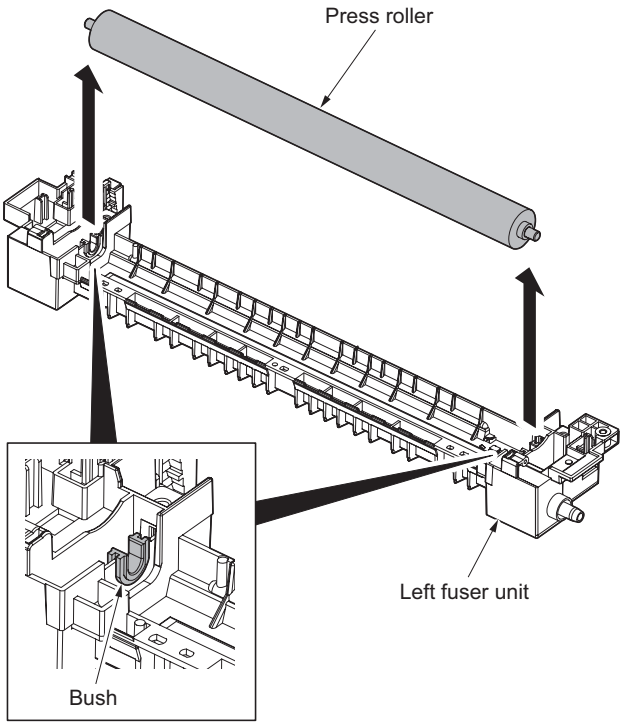


Figure 1-5-83

(3) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser heater.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove two positive terminals of fuser heater wires from the fuser unit.
   Caution
   Remove the positive terminals while pressing their protrusions.
3. Remove two fuser heater wires from ribs of the fuser unit.
   Caution
   Make sure that the fuser heater wires are not removed from the positive terminals.

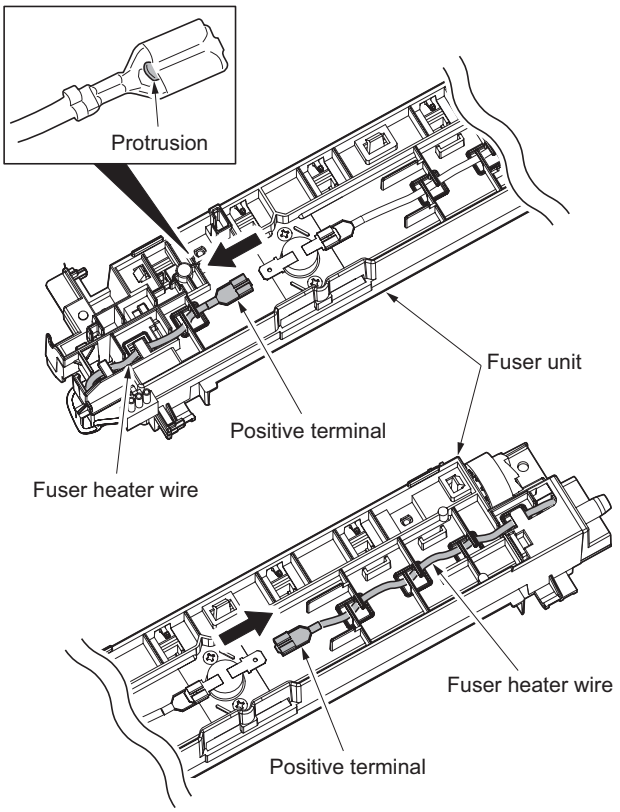


Figure 1-5-84

4. Separate the right and left fuser unit (see page 1-5-49).
5. Pull out the fuser heater wire from the rear side of the right fuser unit and stretch it straight.

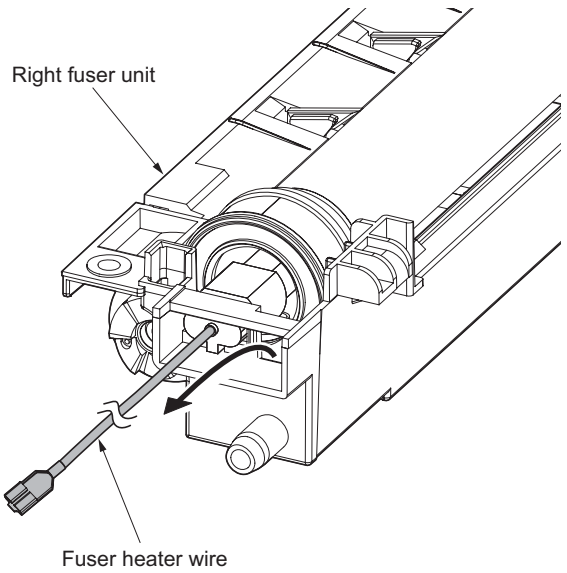


Figure 1-5-85

6. Release hooks at the front side of the right fuser unit and pull out the fuser heater.
   Caution
   Do not touch the glass section of the fuser heater.

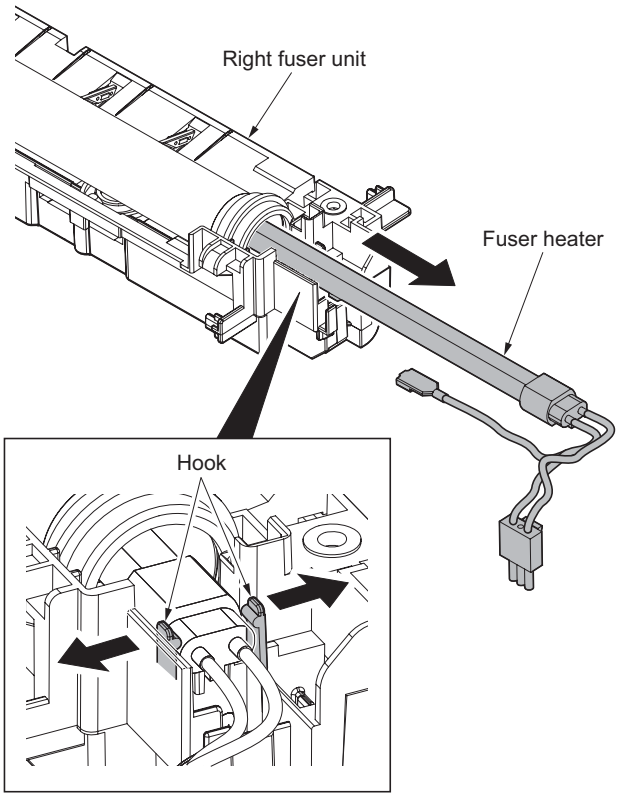


Figure 1-5-86

7. Replace the fuser heater.
8. Straighten the fuser heater wire in the rear side of the new fuser heater, and insert it from the front side of the right fuser unit.
9. Fit both the protrusions in the front and rear sides of the fuser heater into the notch positions of the right fuser unit.
   Insert the wire between the hooks in the front side of the right fuser unit until it clicks to secure it.

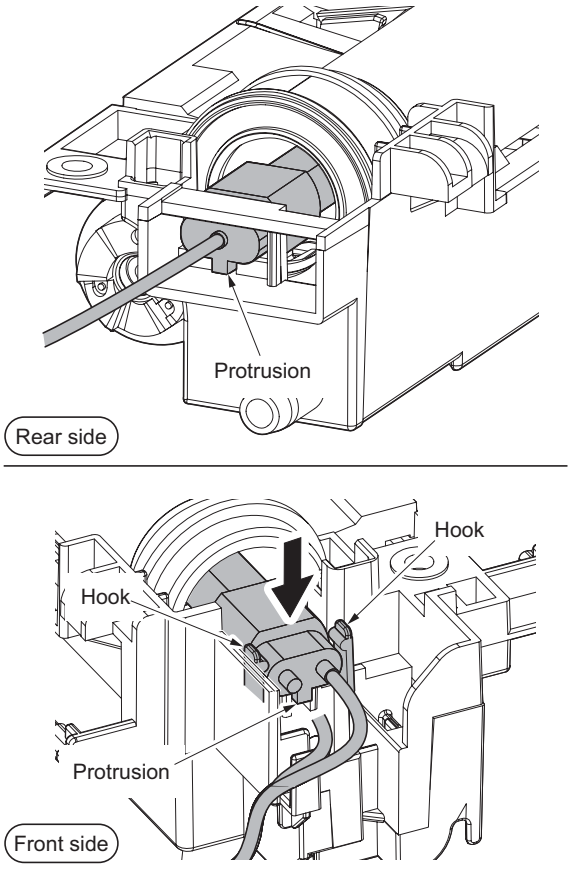


Figure 1-5-87

10. Lace the fuser heater wire in the rear side through the aperture of the right fuser unit and pull it out.
11. Refit the right and left fuser unit.

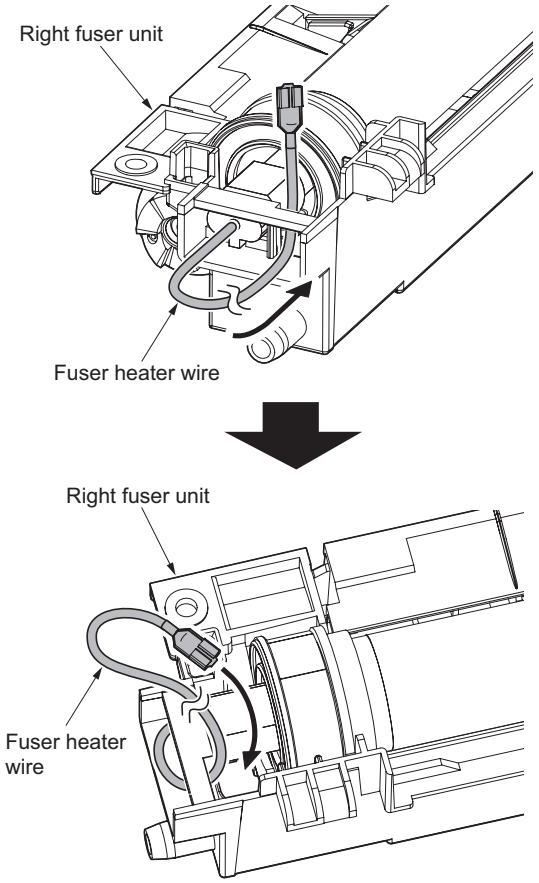


Figure 1-5-88

12. Connect front and rear positive terminal to thermostats.
    Cautions
    Insert the terminal all the way into the unit.
    Put the slack of electric wire toward the front side of the machine.
    Push each terminal and heater wire into the housing so as not to exceed the height of the rib of the fuser unit (because they may come in contact with the machine frame at the time of installation of the machine).

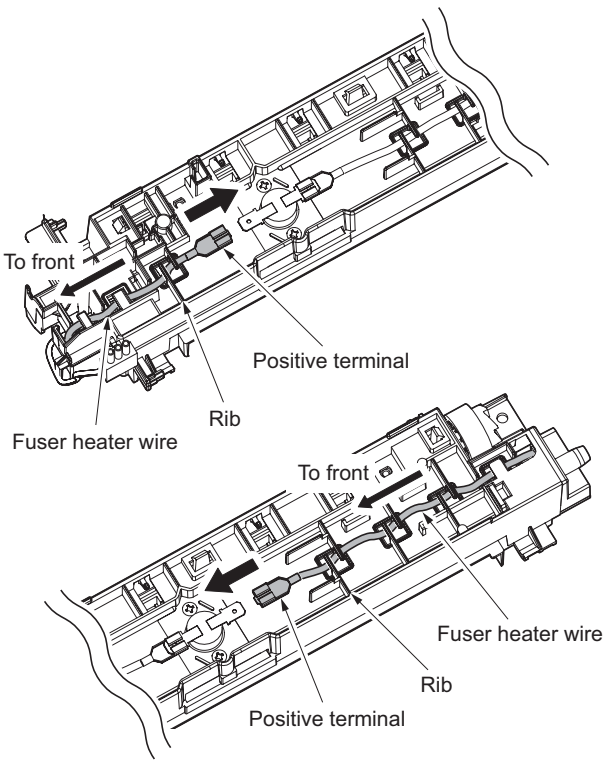


Figure 1-5-89

(4) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

Procedure

1. Separate the right and left fuser unit (see page 1-5-49).
2. Release four hooks and remove the fuser guide from the right fuser unit.

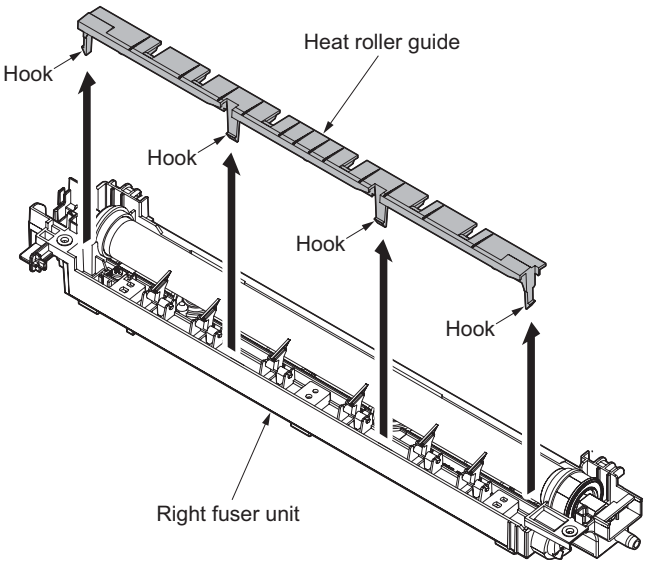


Figure 1-5-90

3. Remove the springs and remove the heat roller separation claws.
   Caution
   When removing them, be careful not to touch the tip of the claw.
4. Replace the heat roller separation claws and refit all the removed parts.
   Caution
   When fitting the separation claws, be careful not to scratch the surface of the heat roller.

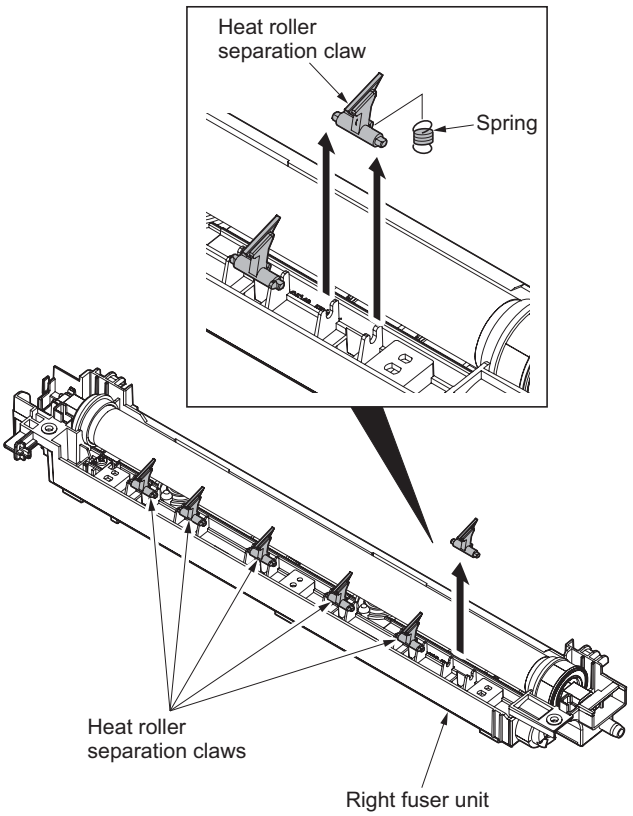


Figure 1-5-91

(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

Procedure

1. Separate the right and left fuser unit (see page 1-5-49).
2. Remove the fuser heater (see page 1-5-51).
3. Remove the heat roller separation claws (see page 1-5-54).
4. Press the heat roller bush in the rear side of the right fuser unit from outside to make the roller removable.

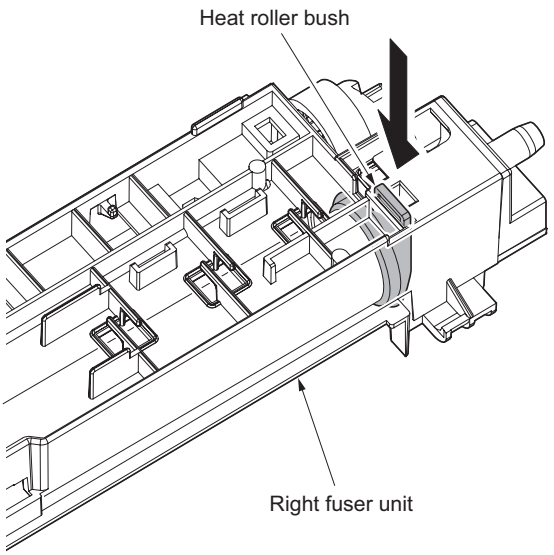


Figure 1-5-92

5. Remove the heat roller, heat roller bush and heat roller gear.
   Caution
   Remove the heat roller, with the heat roller bush in the front side being mounted.

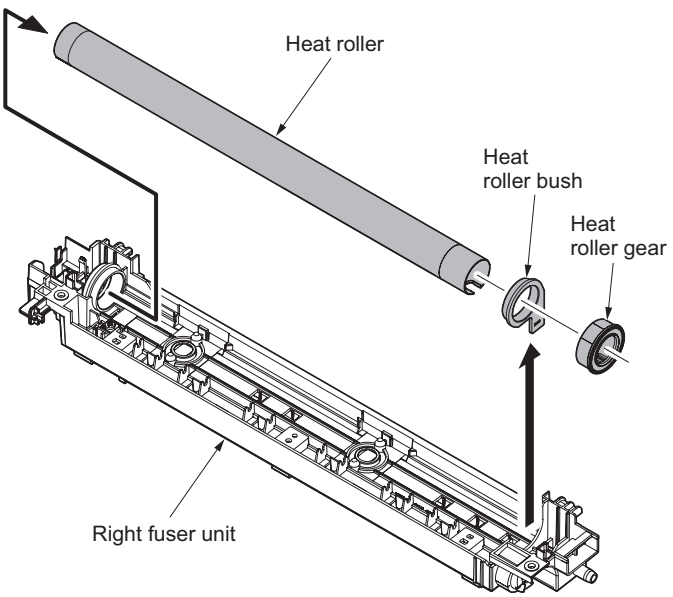
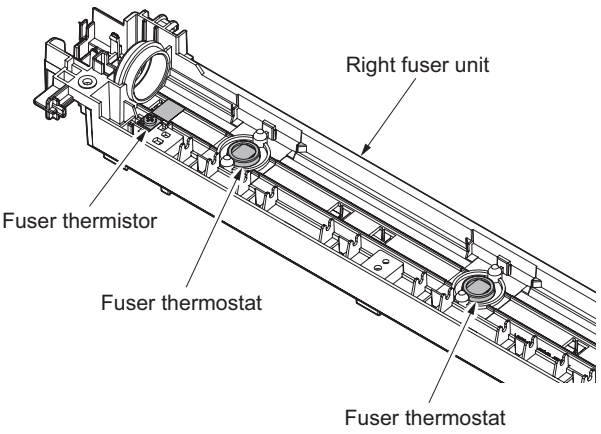


Figure 1-5-93

6. Replace the heat roller and refit all the removed parts.
   Caution
   When replacing the heat roller, make sure that the surface of the fuser thermistor is cleaned with alcohol and is not deformed. Also make sure that no foreign matter adheres to the fuser thermostats.
   Refit the heat roller gear while pushing the idle gear in the direction indicated with the arrow. Also make sure that the gears are properly engaged.
   After refitting the heat roller, push the roller lightly to check that the detection surface of the fuser thermistor comes in contact with the roller.



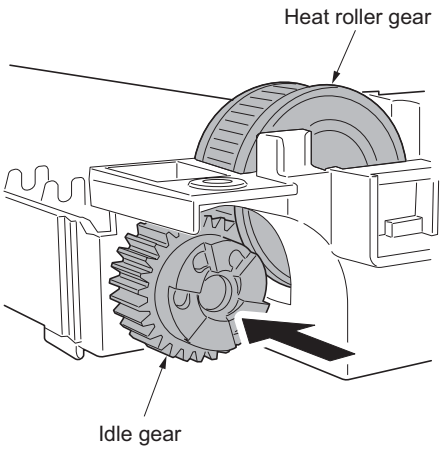


Figure 1-5-94

(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermistor.

Procedure

1. Separate the right and left fuser unit (see page 1-5-49).
2. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-5-55).
3. Remove the screw and remove the fuser thermistor.
4. Replace the fuser thermistor and refit all the removed parts.
   Caution
   Restore the fuser thermistor wire to its original correct position.
   After refitting the heat roller, push the roller lightly to check that the detection surface of the fuser thermistor comes in contact with the roller.

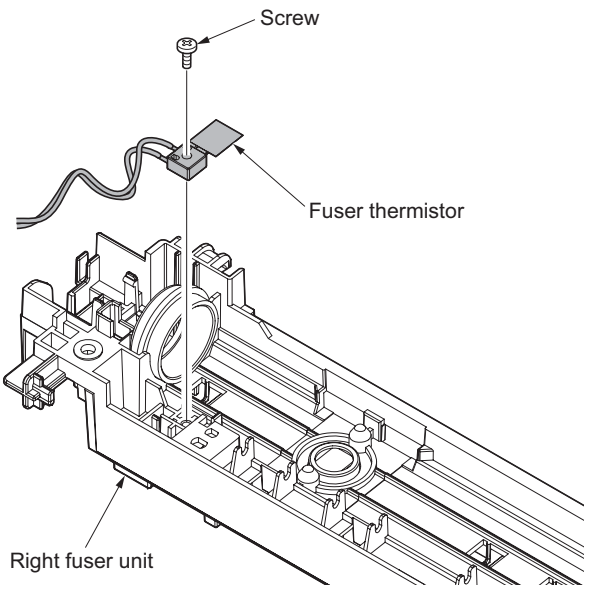


Figure 1-5-95

(7) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermostat

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermostat.

Cautions
Be sure to replace it after finding the cause of failure.
If the cause is not found, do not replace only the component in question but the entire unit.
If C6000 or C6020 occurs, replace the thermostat after resolving the problem.
Before replacement, conduct continuity check for the thermostat.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove two positive terminals from fuser thermostat.
3. Remove two screws and remove the fuser thermostat.
4. Replace the fuser thermostat and refit all the removed parts.
   Cautions
   Insert the terminal all the way into the unit.
   Put the slack of electric wire toward the front side of the machine.
   Push each terminal and heater wire into the housing so as not to exceed the height of the rib of the fuser unit (because they may come in contact with the machine frame at the time of installation of the machine).

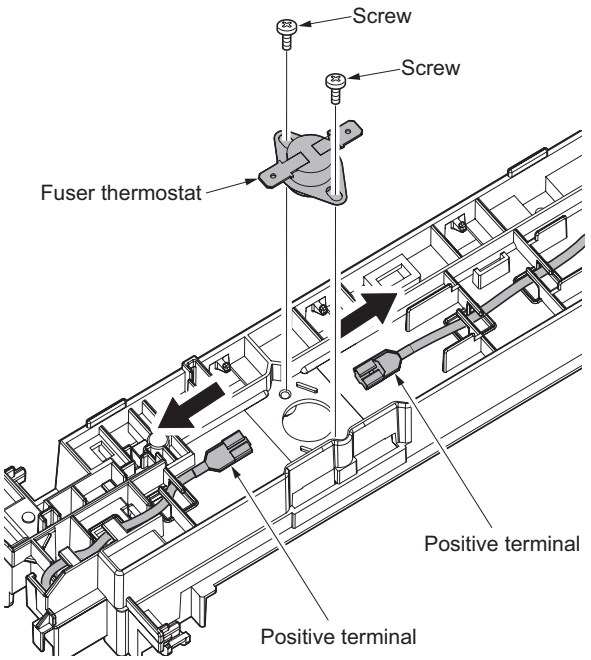


Figure 1-5-96

5. Use a thickness gauge to check that the clearance between the fuser thermostat and the heat roller is within the reference value.
   Reference value: 0.7 to 1.5 mm

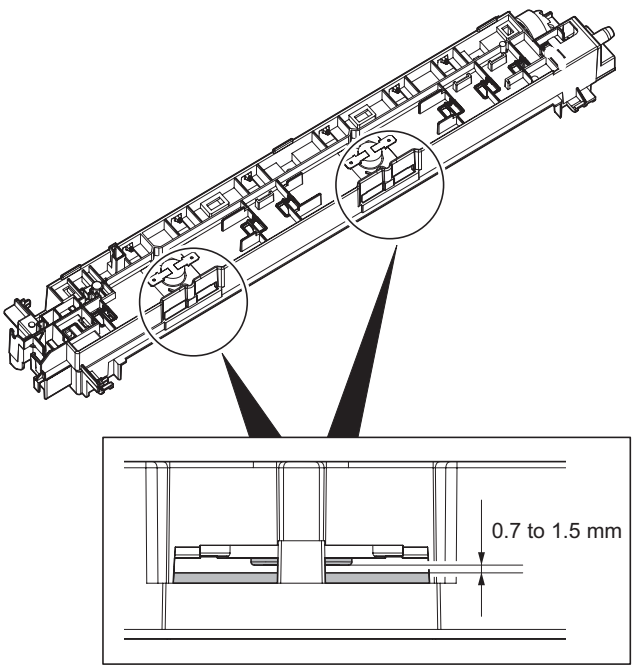


Figure 1-5-97

(8) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness)

Follow the procedure below if the drum is not parallel to the fuser unit and therefore paper is not fed straight to the fuser section and the trailing edge of image on either the front or rear side becomes longer.

Procedure

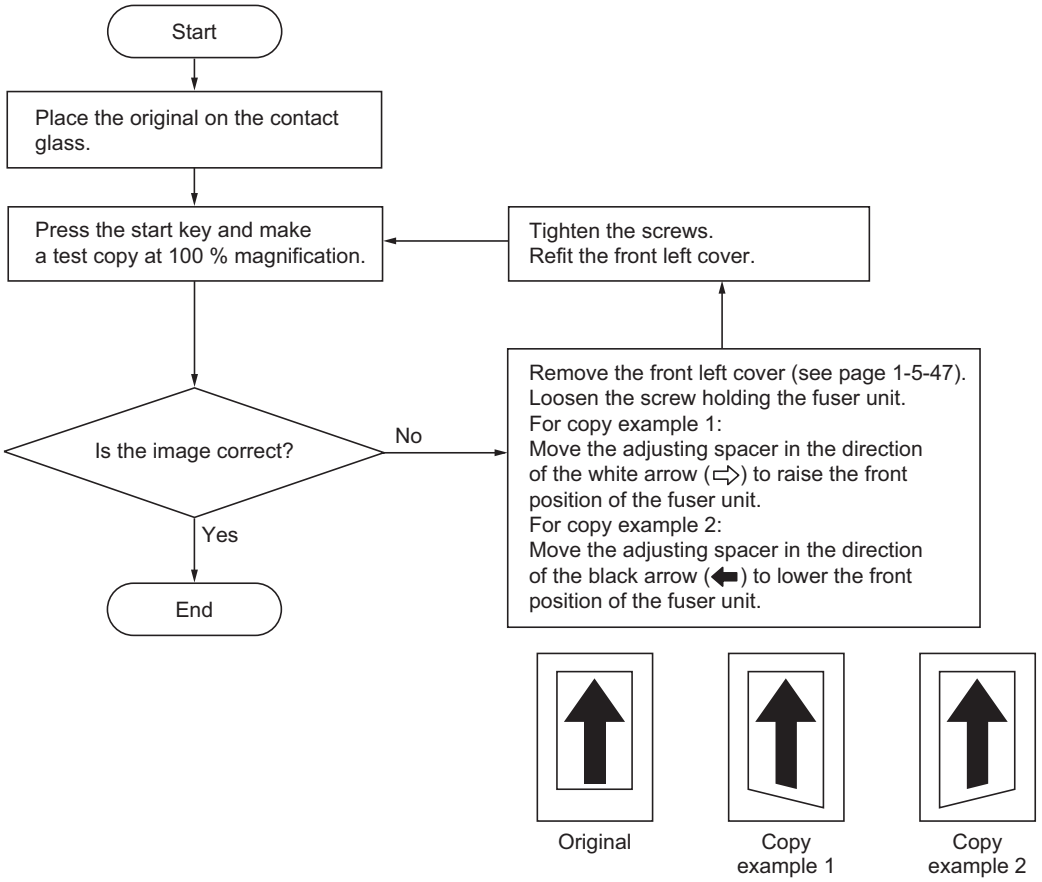


Figure 1-5-98

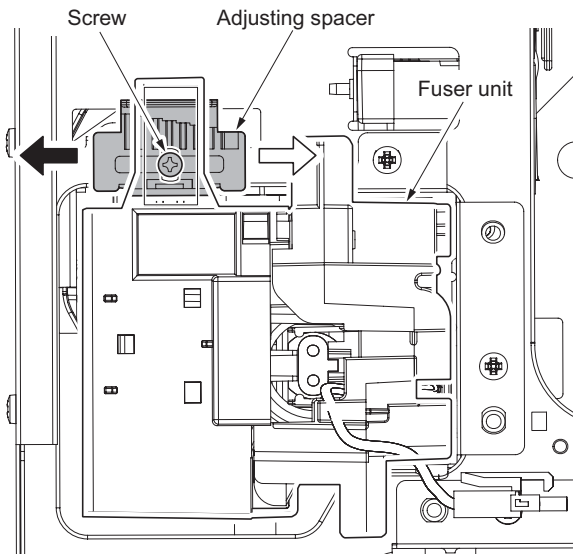


Figure 1-5-99

1-5-8 Others

(1) Detaching and refitting the eject unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the eject unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-6).
2. Remove YC14 connector of the engine PWB.
3. Remove the wire of the connector from clamp and ribs.

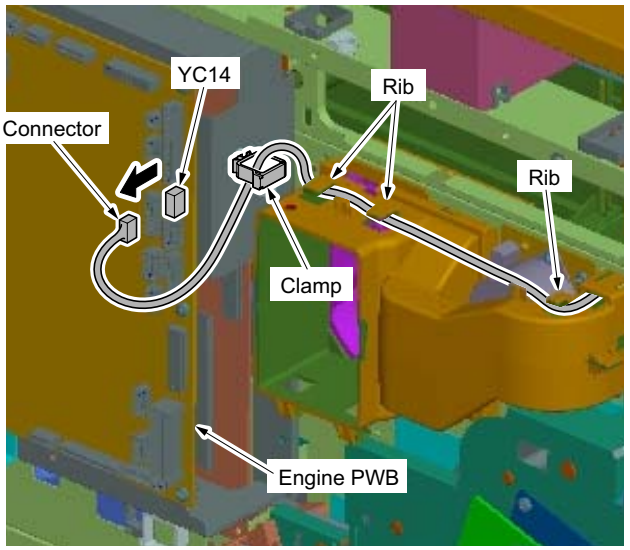


Figure 1-5-100

4. Remove the front left cover (see page 1-5-47).
5. Remove the left middle cover (see page 1-5-26).
6. Remove the eject cover (see page 1-5-38).
7. Remove the screw. Slide the eject unit toward the front side and pull out the inserted part section.

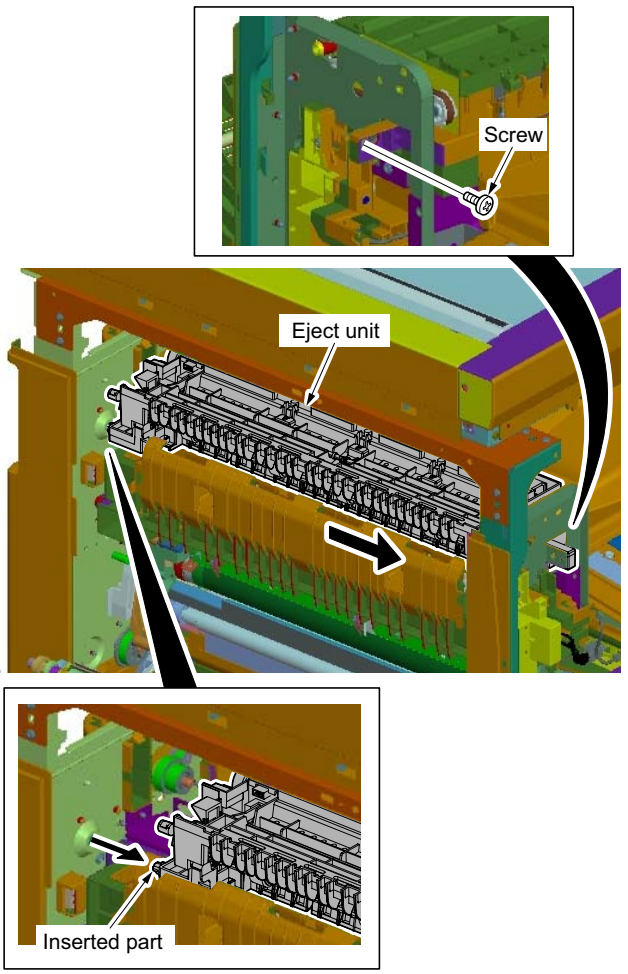


Figure 1-5-101

8. Lift the eject unit, pull at the rear side of the unit first, and remove the unit from the machine.
9. Replace the eject unit and refit all the removed parts.

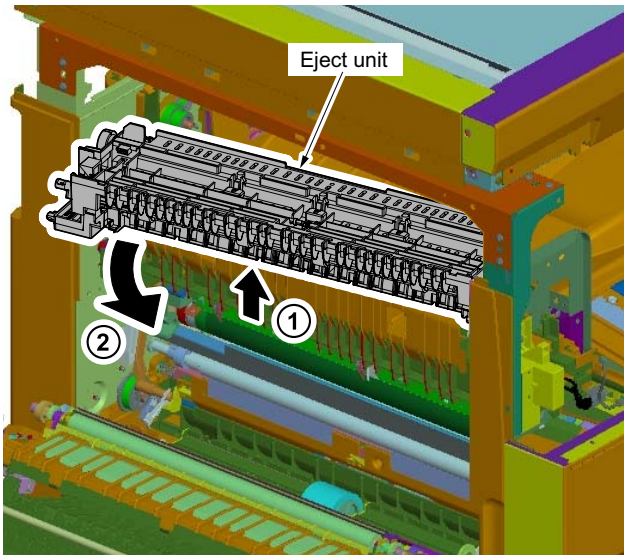


Figure 1-5-102

(2) Direction of installing the principal fan motors

When detaching or refitting the cooling fan motor 1 or 2, be careful of the airflow direction (intake or exhaust).

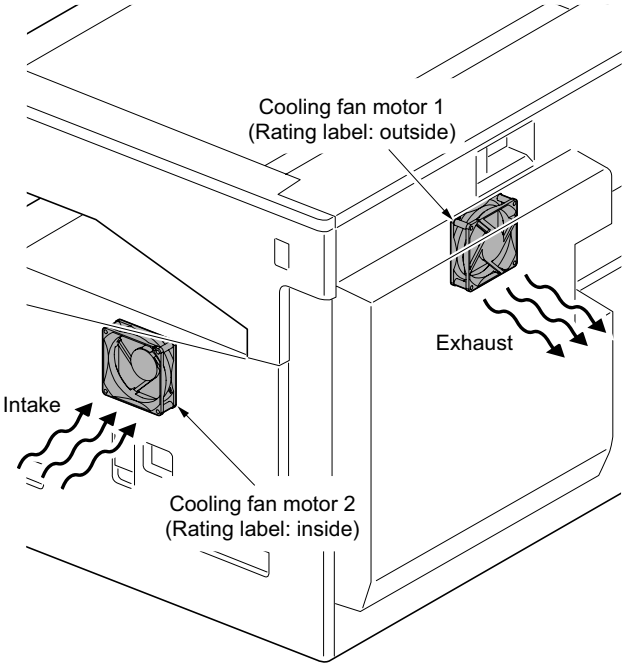


Figure 1-5-103

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main, engine and MMI.

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:
Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.)

NOTE
When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

Procedure

1. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check U019 ROM version.
2. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the screw and remove the slot cover.
4. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the machine.
   Insert the surface of Compact Flash toward the machine rear.
5. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts.
   Caution:
   Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

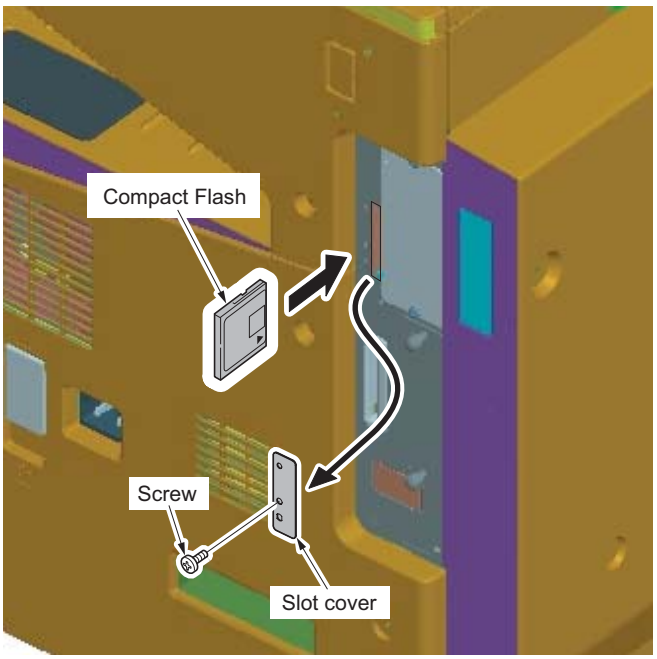


Figure 1-6-1

6. [Completed] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
7. Turn the main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
8. Remove Compact Flash from the machine.
9. Refit the slot cover.
10. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.
11. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check that U019 ROM version has been upgraded.

1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)

The variable resistors listed below are set at the factory prior to shipping and cannot be adjusted in the field.
High voltage PWB: VR401
APC PWB: VR1

1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB and engine PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB or engine PWB, remove the EEPROM (YS3) or EEPROM (U3) from the PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new PWB.

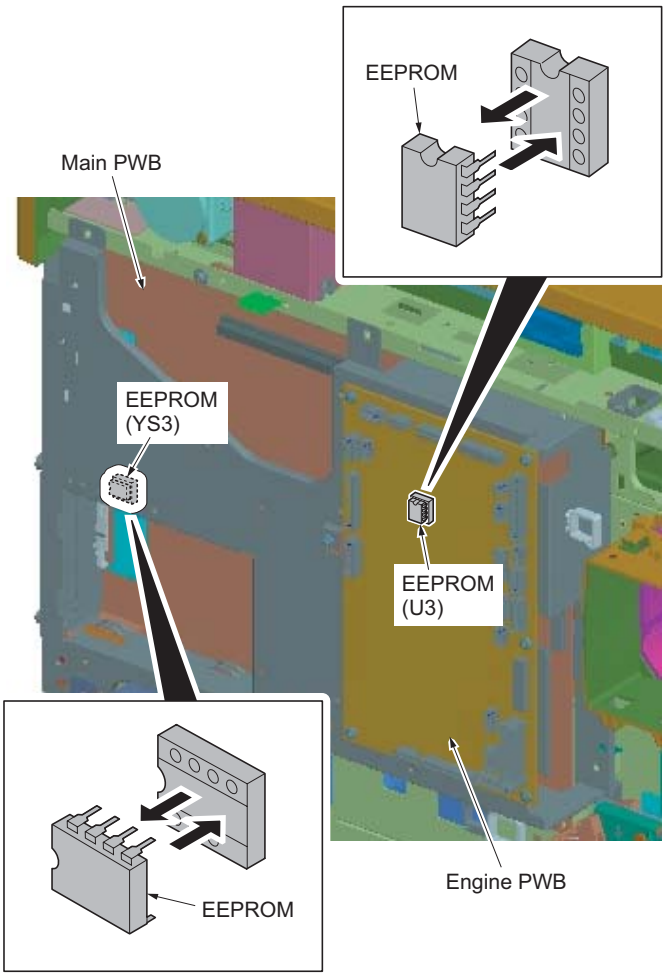


Figure 1-6-2

2-1-1 Paper feed section

The paper feed section conveys paper from the cassette (one cassette is standard for 18 ppm model/two cassettes are standard for 22 ppm model) or MP tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.
Cassette can hold up to 300 (80 g/m^2) sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.
The MP tray can hold up to 100 (80 g/m^2) sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the MP tray by the rotation of the MP paper feed pulley.



Figure 2-1-1 Paper feed section

(1) Forwarding pulley
(2) Paper feed pulley
(3) Separation pulley
(4) Cassette base
(5) MP paper feed pulley
(6) MP separation pad
(7) Left registration roller
(8) Right registration roller
(9) Registration switch (RSW)
(10) Paper switch (PSW)
(11) MP paper switch (MPPSW)
(12) MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW)
(13) Cassette forwarding pulley*
(14) Cassette paper feed pulley*
(15) Cassette separation pulley*
(16) Cassette base*
(17) Feed pulley*
(18) Feed roller*
(19) Cassette feed switch (CFSW)*
(20) Cassette paper switch (CPSW)*

*: 22 ppm model only.

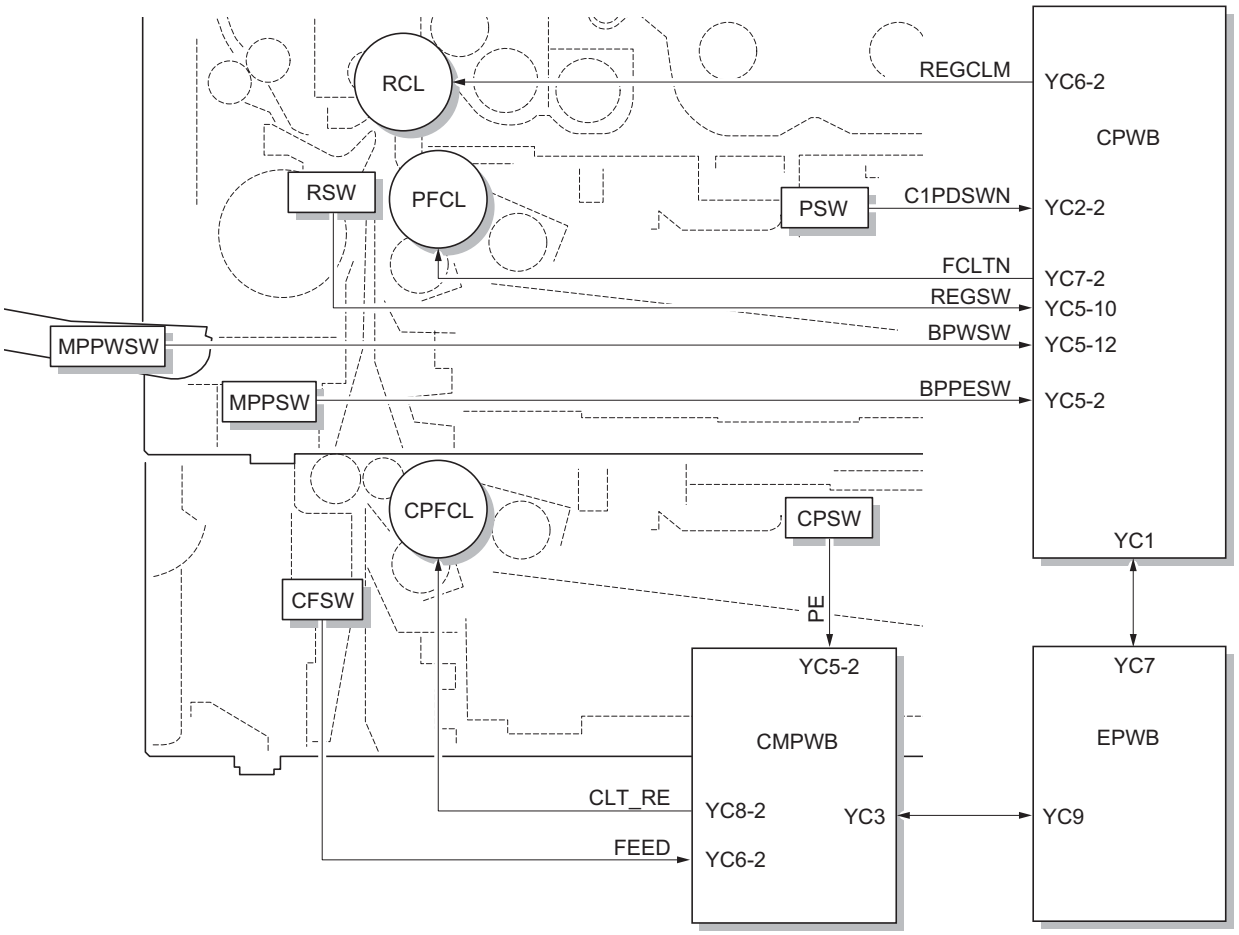


Figure 2-1-2 Paper feed section block diagram

2-1-2 Optical section

The optical section consists of the image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner section for printing.

(1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) in the image scanning unit via the three mirrors, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.
The scanner and mirror frames travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frames is half the speed of the scanner.
When the DP is used, the scanner and mirror frames stop at the DP original scanning position to start scanning.

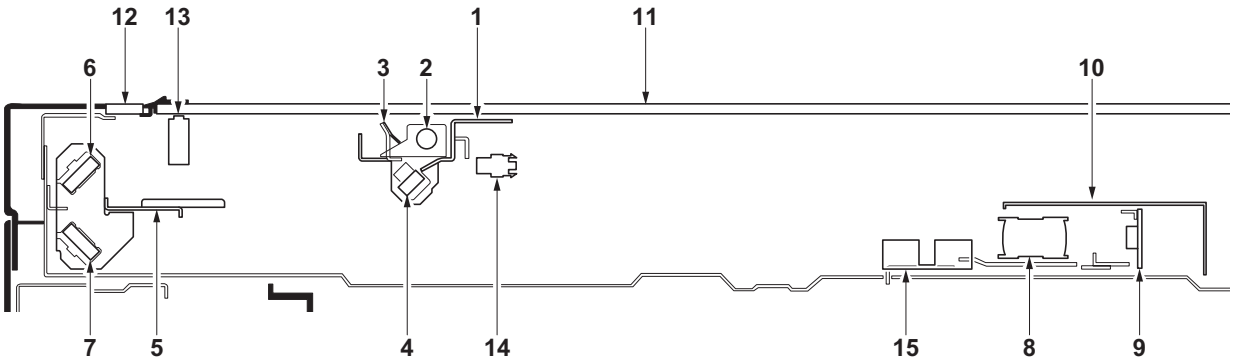


Figure 2-1-3 Image scanner section

(1) Mirror 1 frame
(2) Exposure lamp (EL)
(3) Mirror 1
(4) Scanner reflector
(5) Mirror 2 frame
(6) Mirror 2
(7) Mirror 3
(8) ISU
(9) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
(10) ISU cover
(11) Contact glass
(12) Slit glass
(13) Home position switch (HPSW)
(14) Original detection switch (ODSW)
(15) Original size detection sensor (OSDS)

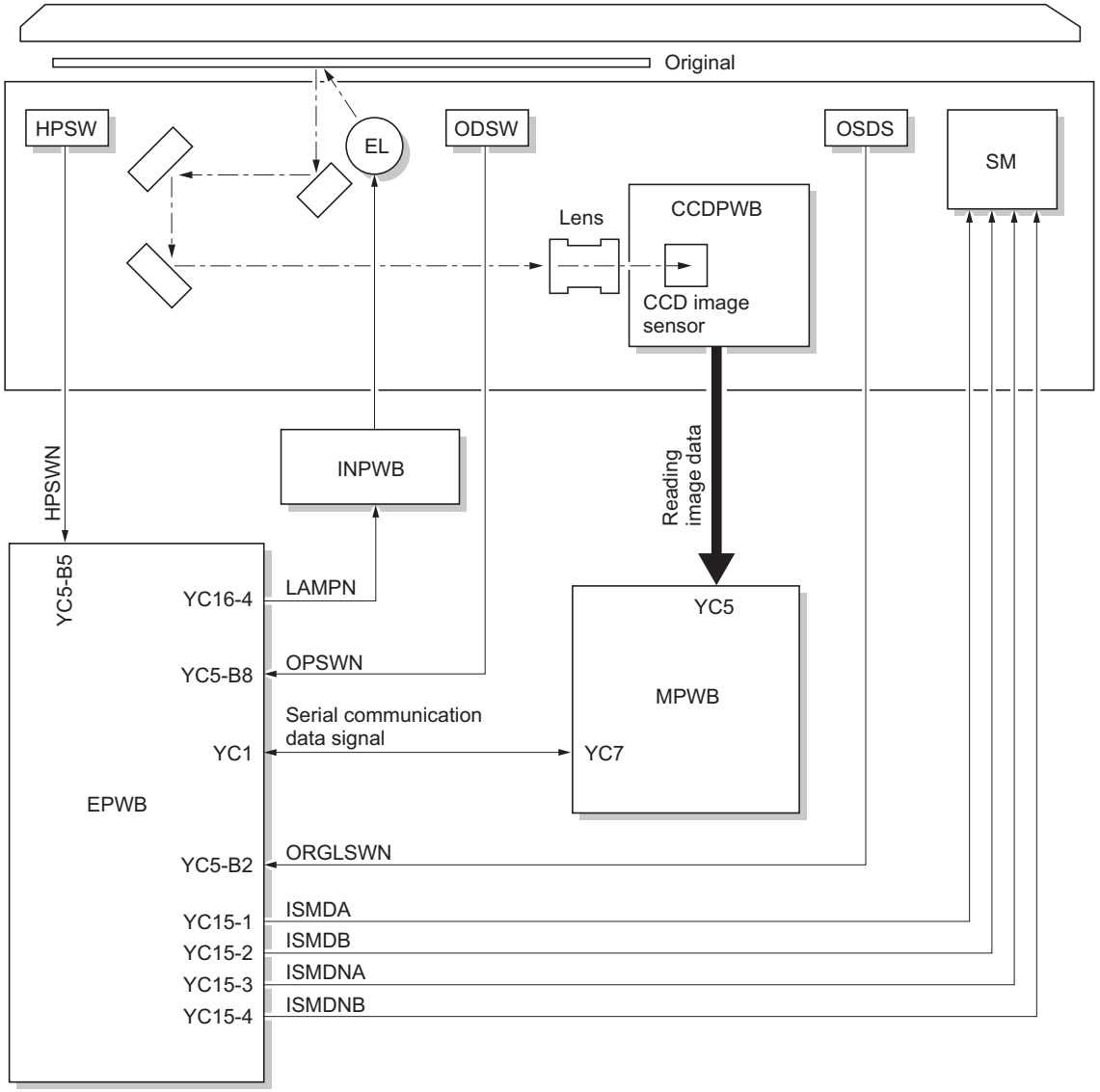


Figure 2-1-4 Image scanner section block diagram

(2) Laser scanner section

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.

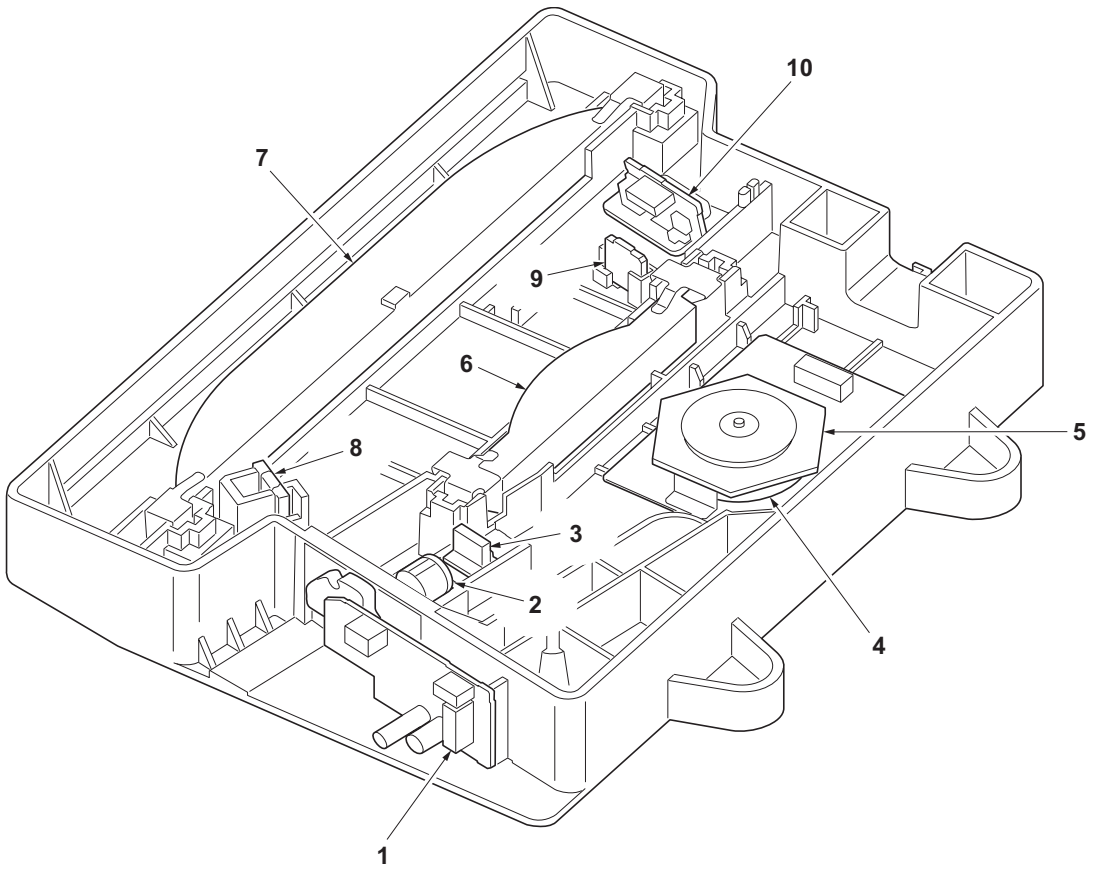


Figure 2-1-5 Laser scanner section

(1) APC PWB (APCPWB)
(2) Laser diode
(3) Cylindrical lens
(4) Polygon motor (PM)
(5) Polygon mirror
(6) fθ lens
(7) fθ lens
(8) PD sensor mirror
(9) Cylindrical correcting lens
(10) PD PWB (PDPWB)

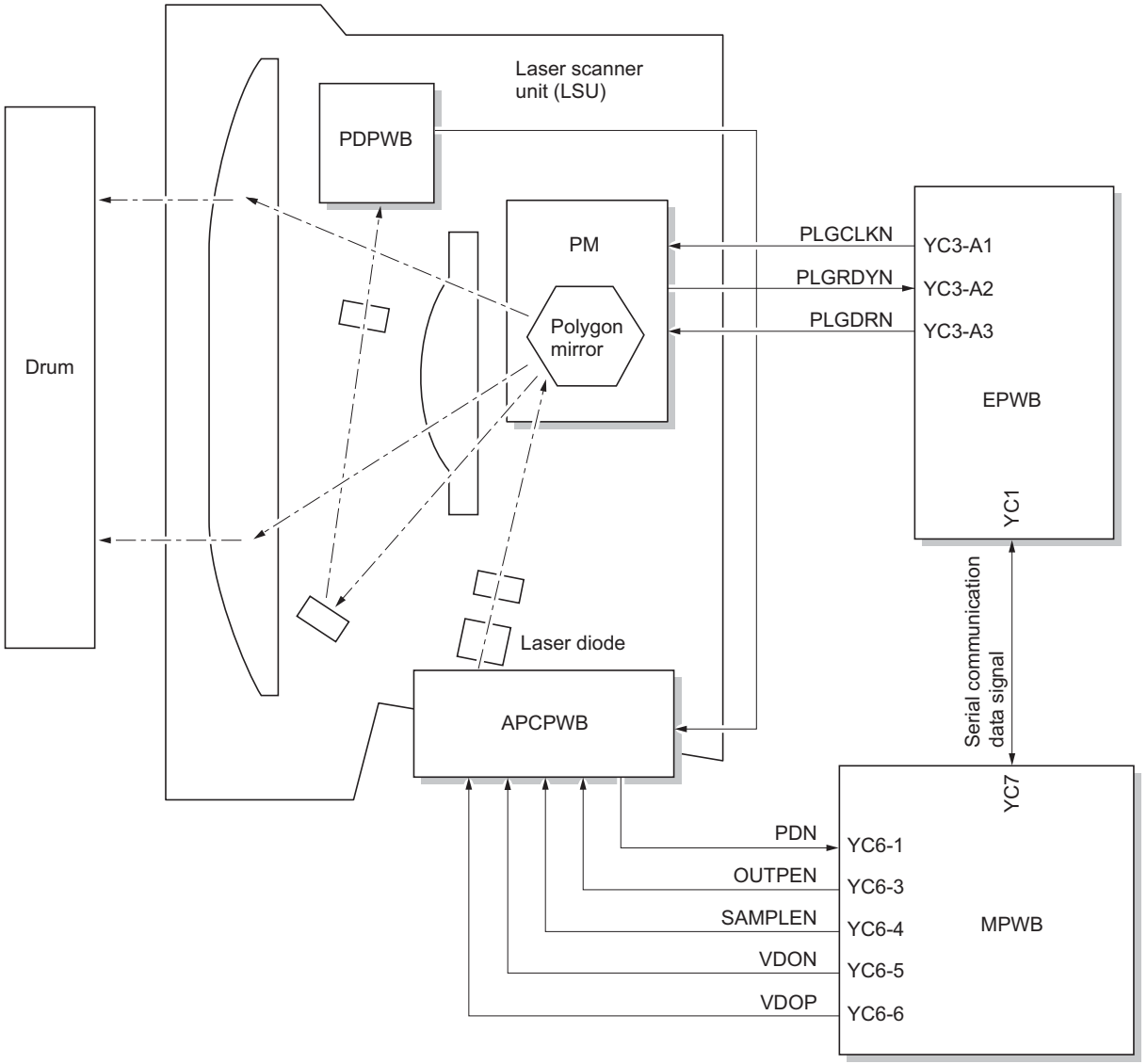


Figure 2-1-6 Laser scanner section block diagram

2-1-3 Drum section

The drum section consists of the drum, main charger section, cleaning section and cleaning lamp.
The main charger section consists of main charger wire and main charger grid, and the drum is charged by a high voltage applied to the main charger wire.
The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade and cleaning roller that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner box.
The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs which remove residual charge from the drum surface.

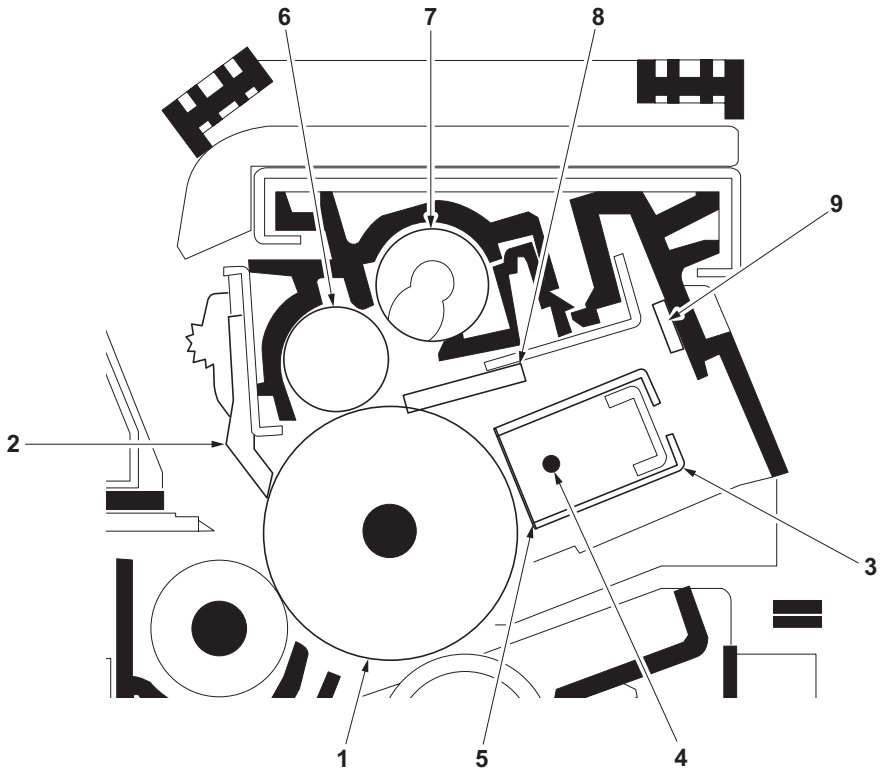


Figure 2-1-7 Drum section

(1) Drum
(2) Drum separation claws
(3) Main charger unit
(4) Main charger wire
(5) Main charger grid
(6) Cleaning roller
(7) Cleaning spiral
(8) Cleaning blade
(9) Cleaning lamp (CL)

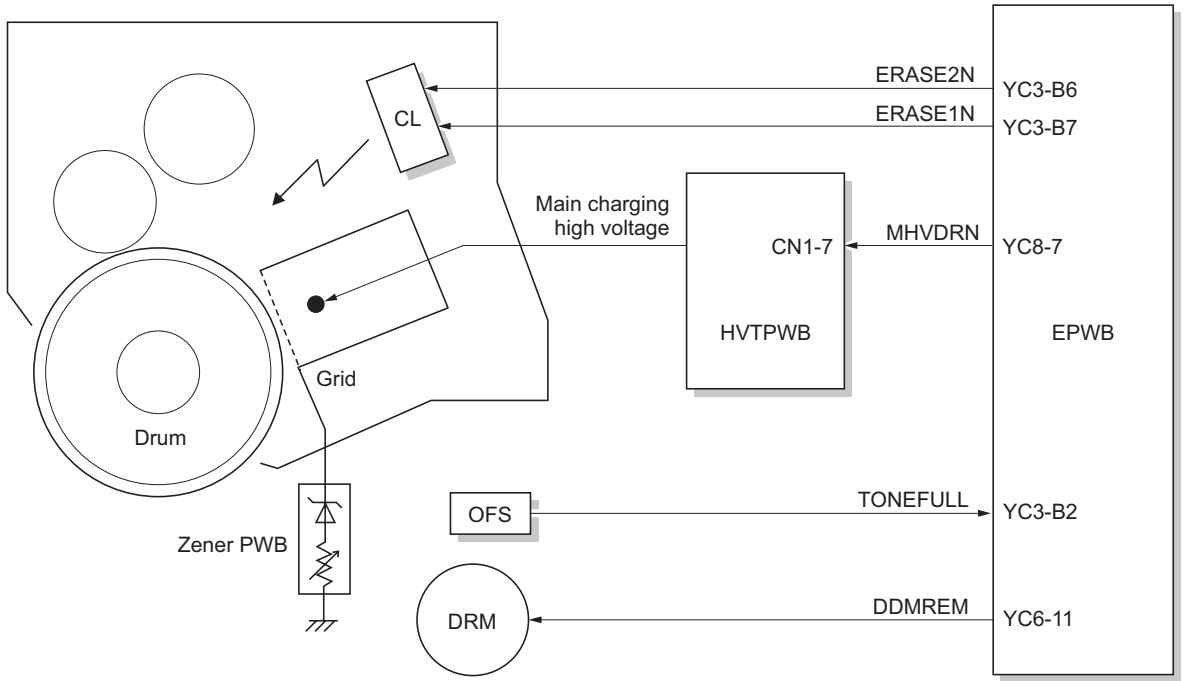


Figure 2-1-8 Drum section block diagram

2-1-4 Developing section

The developing section consists of the developing unit and the toner container.
The developing unit consists of the developing sleeve where a magnetic brush is formed, the magnetic toner blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner.
Also, the toner container sensor (TCS) checks whether or not toner remains in the toner container.

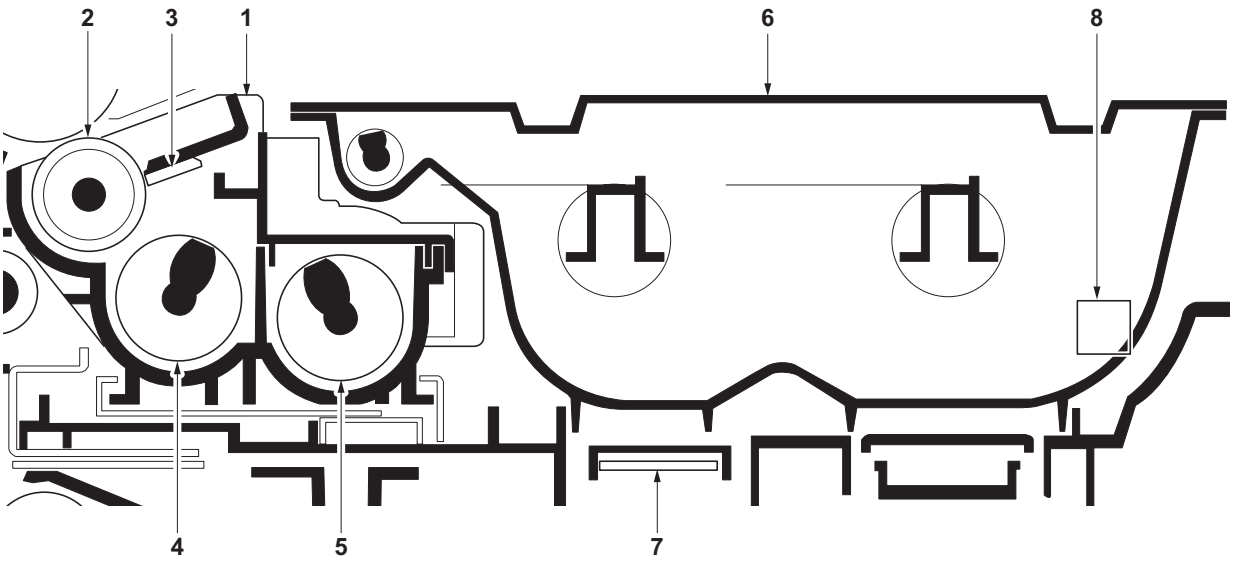


Figure 2-1-9 Developing section

(1) Developing unit
(2) Developing sleeve
(3) Magnetic toner blade
(4) Left developing spiral
(5) Right developing spiral
(6) Toner container
(7) Toner container sensor (TCS)
(8) Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)

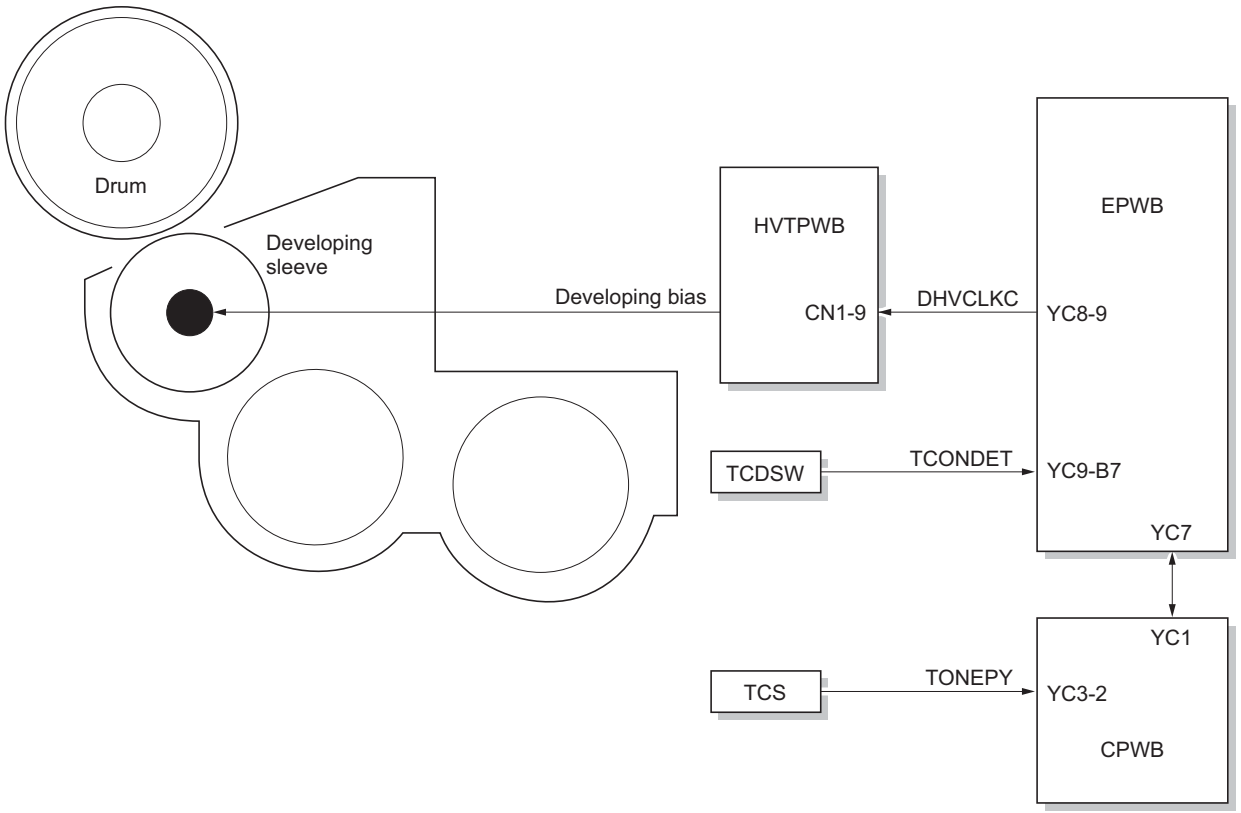


Figure 2-1-10 Developing section block diagram

(1) Single component developing system

This machine uses the single component developing system, and reversal processing is performed with a + charged drum and a + charged magnetic toner.
With the single component developing system, toner is electrically charged by friction with the developing sleeve and + charged when it passes through the magnetic toner blade. The toner that has passed through the magnetic toner blade forms a uniform layer on the developing sleeve. When the toner layer comes to the location where the developing sleeve is the nearest to the drum, toner moves between the drum and the developing sleeve by an electric field of the magnetic pole. Then, when the developing sleeve rotates and passes through the nearest location to the drum, on the portion of the drum that has been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the drum by potential difference between the developing bias and the drum surface and development is performed. On the other hand, on the portion of the drum that has not been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the sleeve and development is not performed. When toner comes to an area where the gap between the drum and the developing sleeve is large, an electric field disappears and toner does not leave the developing sleeve. Development is complete.

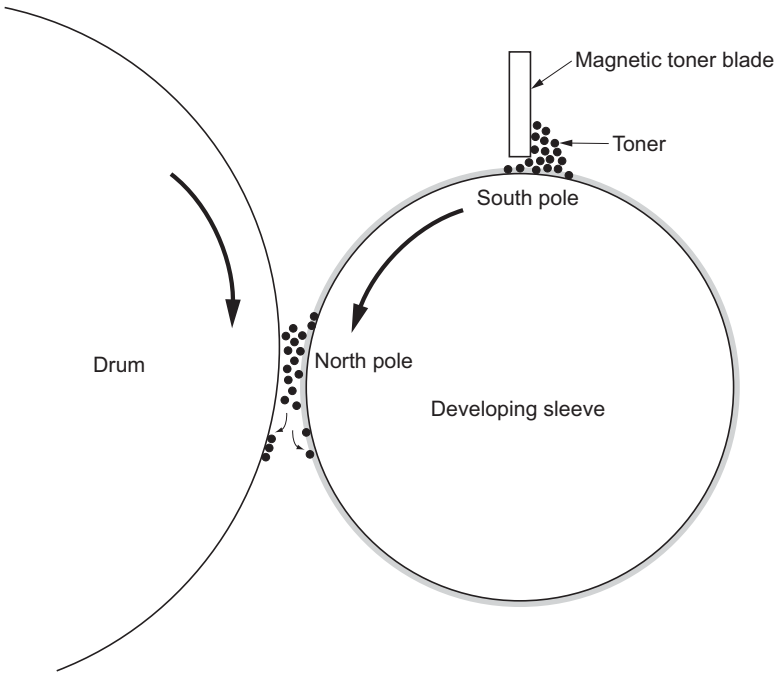


Figure 2-1-11 Single component developing system

2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation sections consists of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws.
A high voltage generated by the high voltage PWB (HVTPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging.
Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation bias that is output from the high voltage PWB (HVTPWB) to the separation electrode.

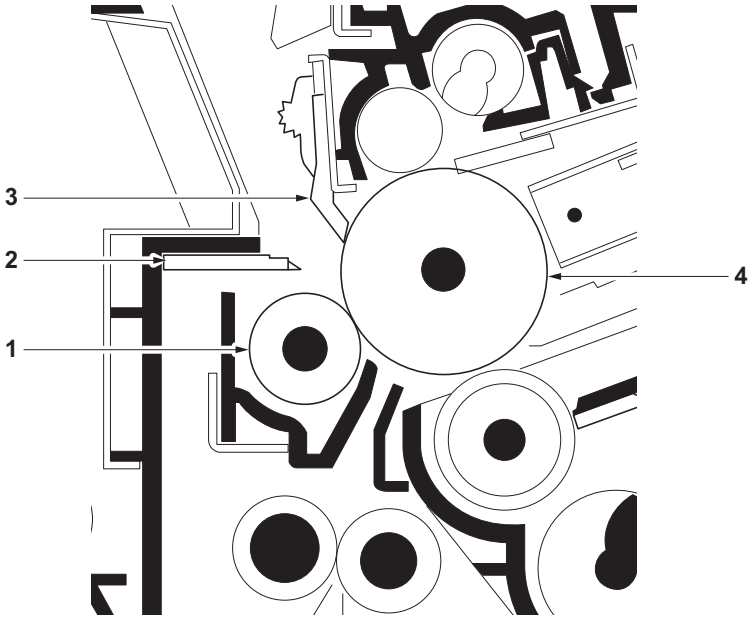


Figure 2-1-12 Transfer and separation sections

(1) Transfer roller
(2) Separation electrode
(3) Drum separation claw
(4) Drum

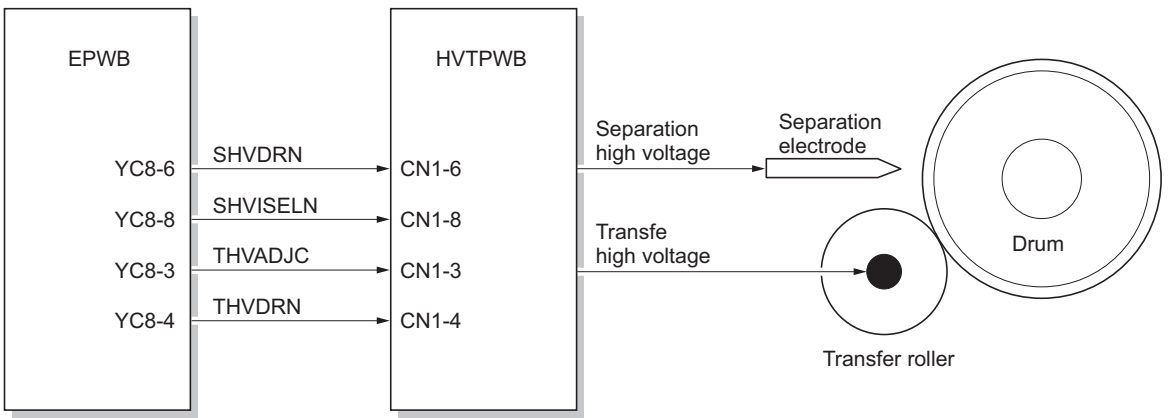


Figure 2-1-13 Transfer and separation sections block diagram

2-1-6 Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in figure. When paper reaches the fuser section after the transfer process it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fuser heaters M and S (FH-M/S). Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper.
The heat roller is heated by fuser heaters M and S (FH-M/S) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fuser thermistor (FTH) and is regulated by the fuser heaters turning on and off. If the fuser section becomes abnormally hot, fuser thermostat (FTS) operates shutting the power to the fuser heaters off.
When the fuser process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed to eject and switchback section.

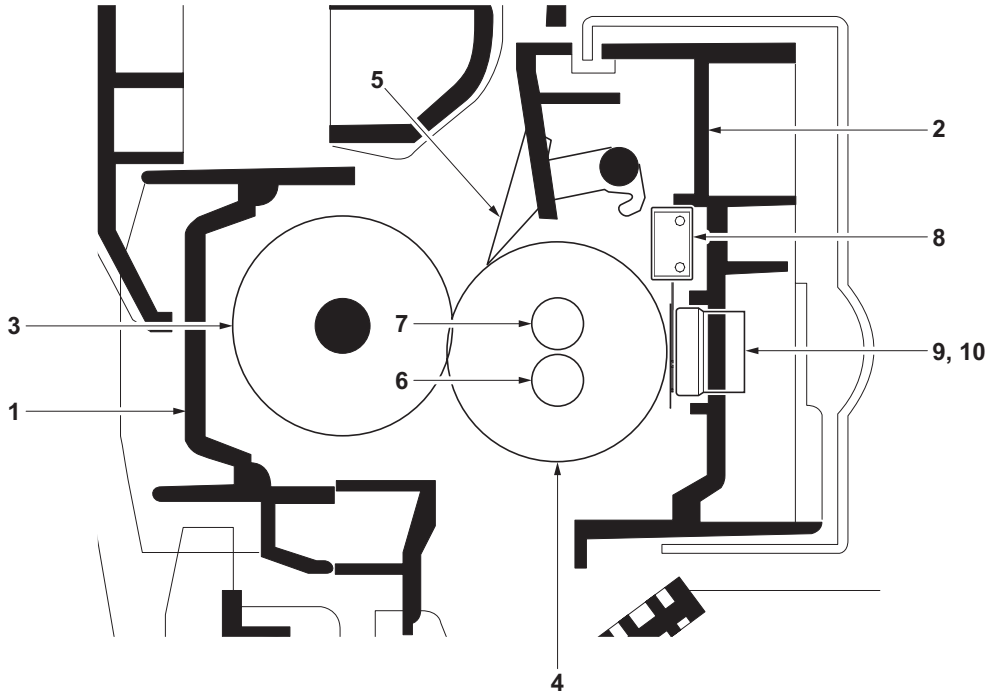


Figure 2-1-14 Fuser section

(1) Left fuser unit
(2) Right fuser unit
(3) Press roller
(4) Heat roller
(5) Heat roller separation claws
(6) Fuser heater M (FH-M)
(7) Fuser heater S (FH-S)
(8) Fuser thermistor (FTH)
(9) Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)
(10) Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)

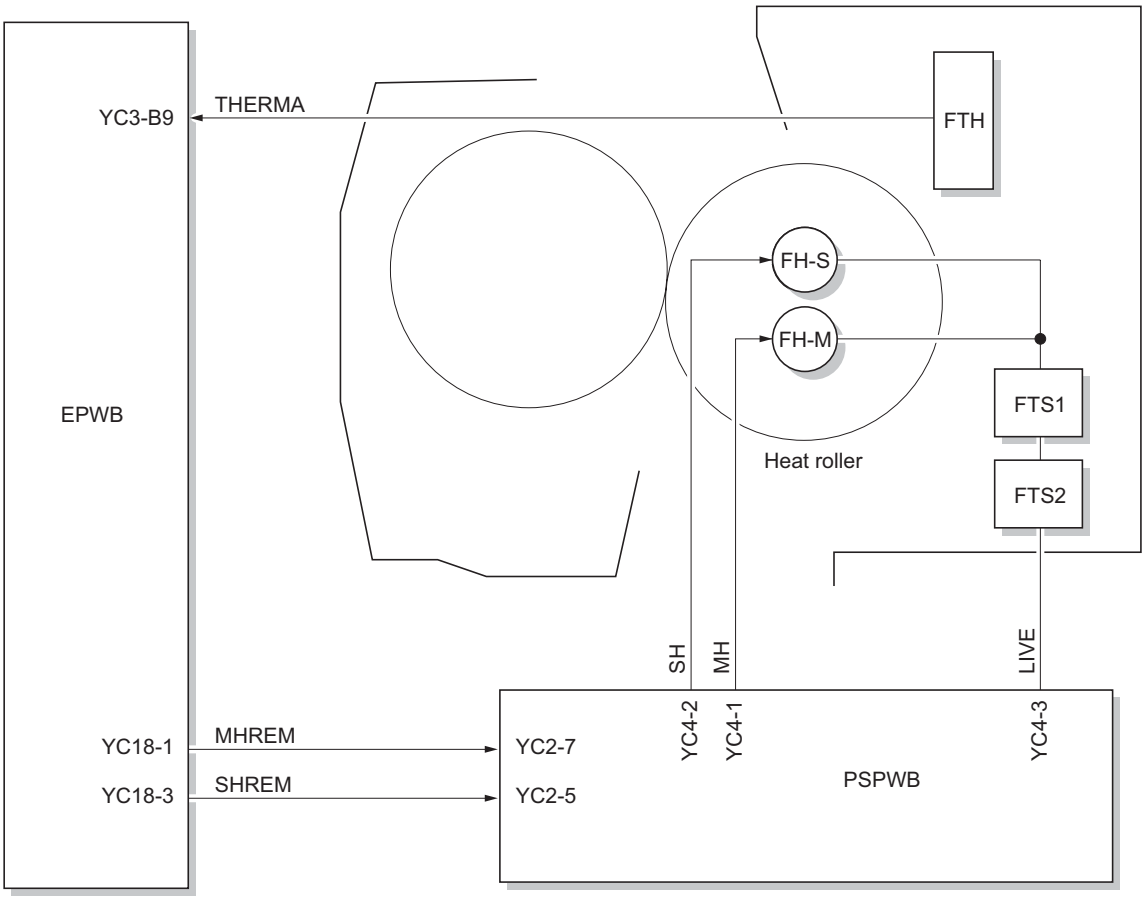


Figure 2-1-15 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-7 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fuser has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.
In duplex copying, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor.
.

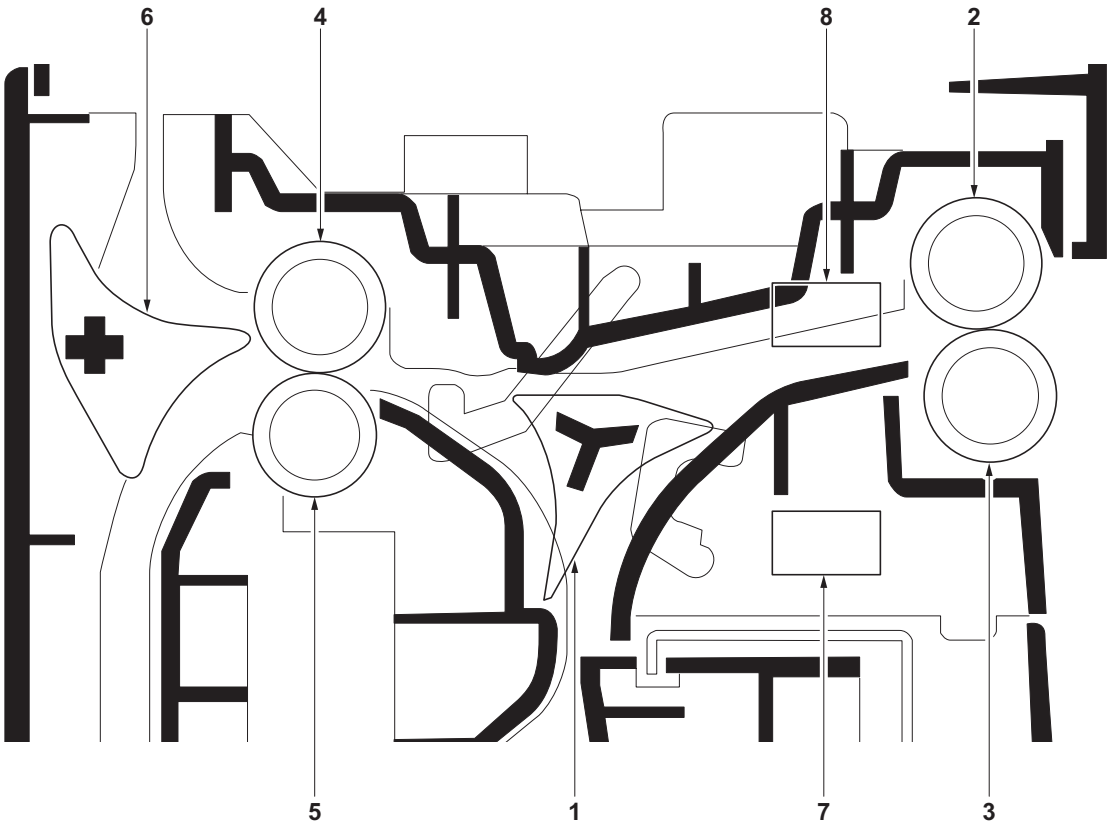


Figure 2-1-16 Eject and switchback sections

(1) Feedshift guide
(2) Eject roller
(3) Eject pulley
(4) Switchback roller
(5) Switchback pulley
(6) Feedshift guide
(7) Eject switch (ESW)
(8) Feedshift switch (FSSW)

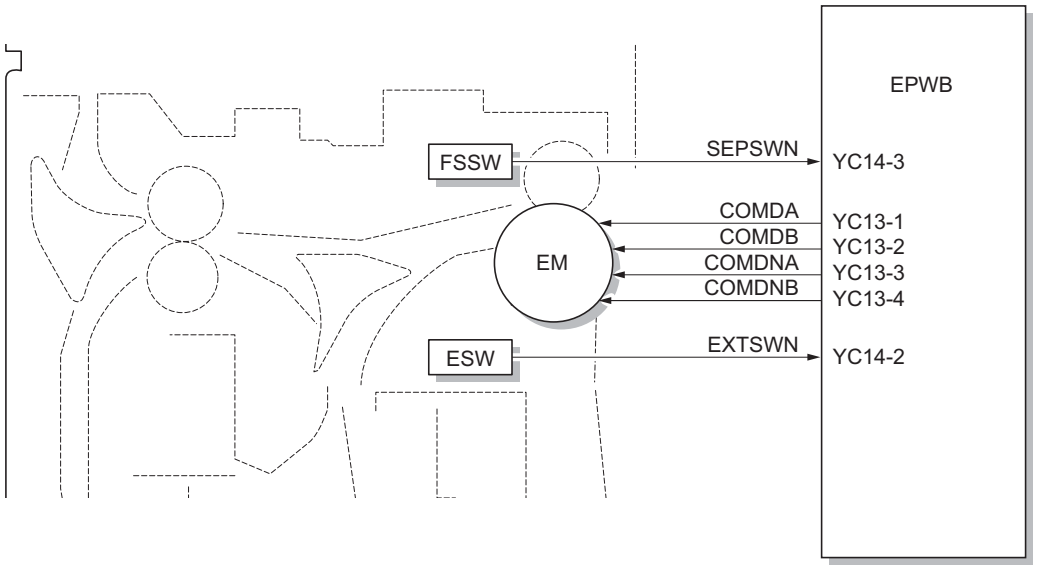


Figure 2-1-17 Eject and switchback sections block diagram

2-1-8 Duplex section

In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex unit. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.

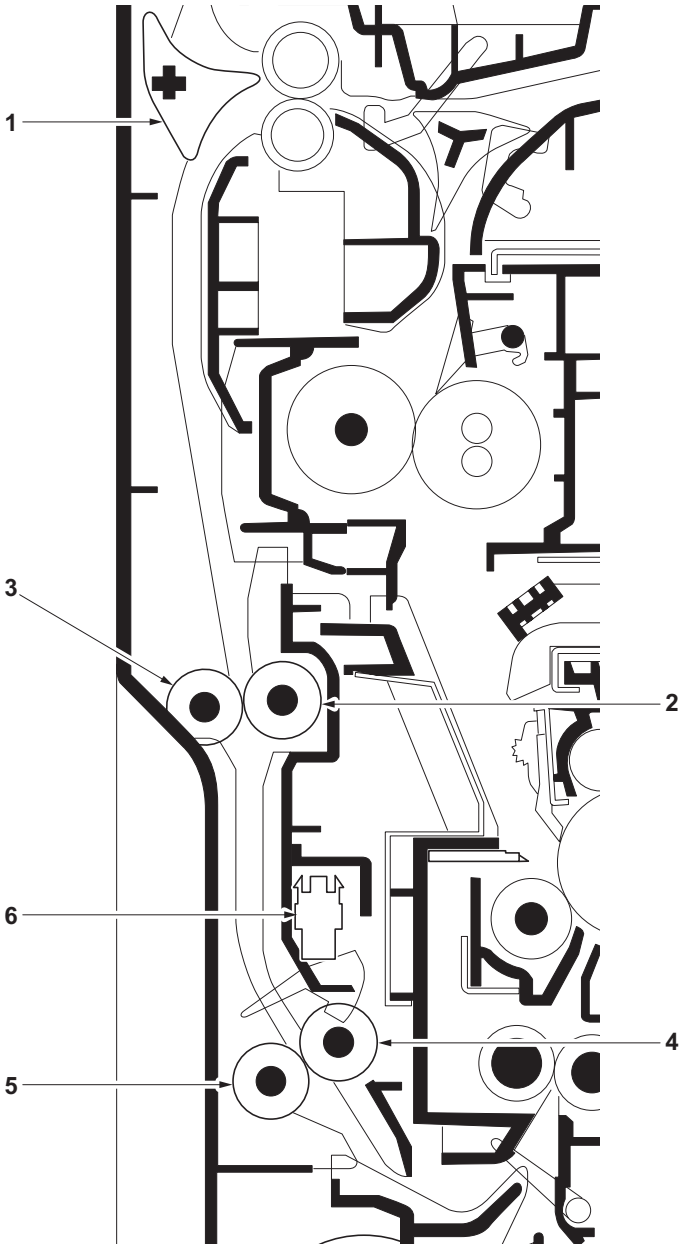


Figure 2-1-18 Duplex section

(1) Feedshift guide
(2) Duplex feed pulley
(3) Upper duplex feed roller
(4) Duplex feed pulley
(5) Lower duplex feed roller
(6) Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)

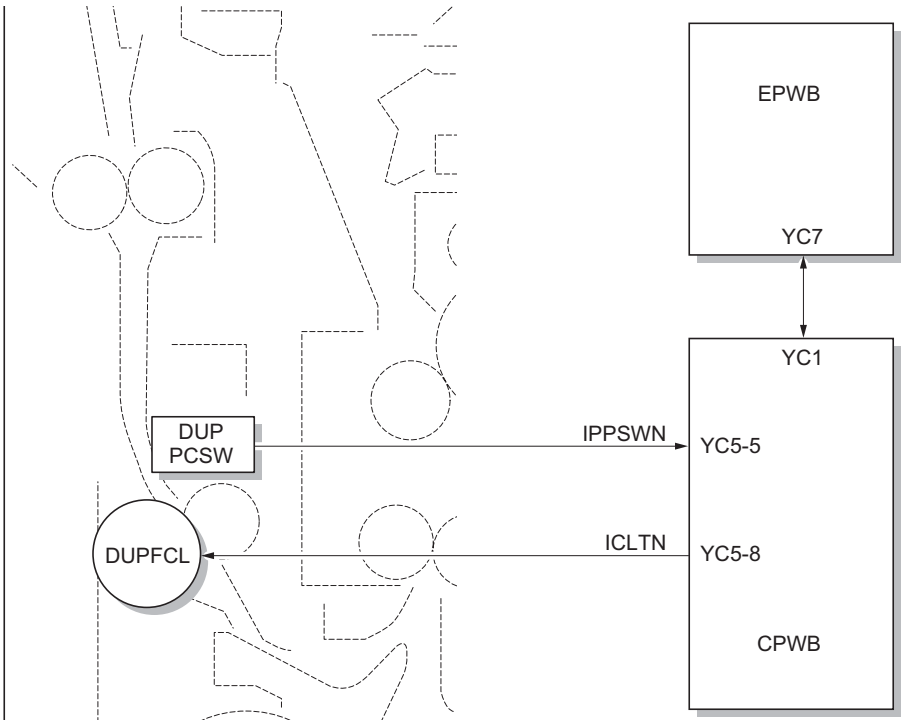


Figure 2-1-19 Duplex section block diagram

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

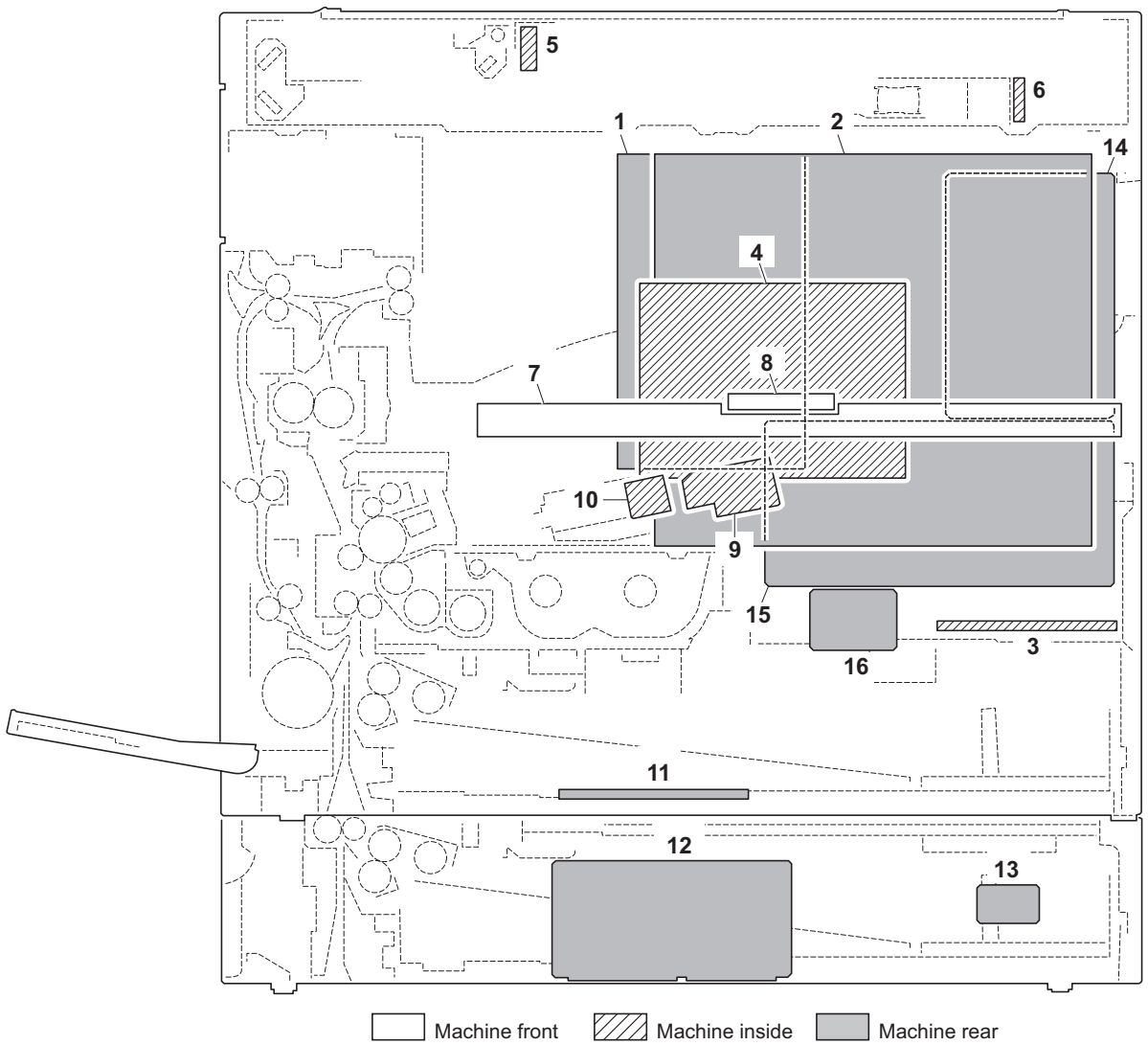


Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

1. Engine PWB (EPWB)..... Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices.
2. Main PWB (MPWB) ..... Controls the operation panel and laser scanner unit.
3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) ..... Generates +24 V DC; controls the fuser heaters.
4. High voltage PWB (HVTPWB) ..... Main charging. Generates high voltages for transfer and high voltages for separation.
5. Inverter PWB (INPWB) ..... Controls the exposure lamp.
6. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)..... Reads the image of originals.
7. Operation unit PWB (OPWB)..... Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.
8. LCD PWB (LCDPWB)..... Controls LCD indication.
9. APC PWB (APCPWB) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam.
10. PD PWB (PDPWB) ..... Controls horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.
11. Cassette PWB (CPWB) ..... Relays wirings from electrical components.
12. Cassette main PWB (CMPWB)*1..... Controls electrical components of the paper feeder.
13. Cassette heater PWB (CHPWB)*1..... Relays the cassette heater power.
14. Fax control PWB (FCPWB)*2..... Modulates, demodulates, compresses, decompresses and smoothes out image data, and converts resolution of image data.

15. NCU PWB (NCUPWB)*2..... Controls connection to the telephone line.
16. Fax relay PWB (FRPWB)*2..... Consists of wiring relay circuits between fax control PWB and main PWB.

*1: Option for 18 ppm model/standard for 22 ppm model
*2: Option

List of correspondences of PWB names

No.	Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list
1	Engine PWB (EPWB)	PARTS PWB ENGINE ASSY SP
2	Main PWB (MPWB)	PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY SP
3	Power source PWB (PSPWB)	PARTS LVU100(M) SP / PARTS LVU200(M) SP
4	High voltage PWB (HVPWB)	PARTS HVU SP
5	Inverter PWB (INPWB)	PARTS LAMP INVERTER SP
6	CCD PWB (CCDPWB)	-
7	Operation PWB (OPWB)	PARTS PWB PANEL ASSY SP
8	LCD PWB (LCDPWB)	PARTS LCD OPERATION SP
9	APC PWB (APCPWB)	-
10	PD PWB (PDPWB)	-
11	Cassette PWB (CPWB)	PARTS PWB INTERFACE ASSY SP
12	Cassette main PWB (CMPWB)	PARTS PWB PF MAIN ASSY SP
13	Cassette heater PWB (CHPWB)	HEATER BRANCH PCB ASS'Y
14	Fax control PWB (FCPWB)	PARTS MAIN FAX ASSY SP
15	NCU PWB (NCUPWB)	NCU ASS'Y(N.A) / NCU ASS'Y(CTR)
16	Fax relay PWB (FRPWB)	PARTS PWB MAIN-FAX-IF ASSY SP

(2) Switches and sensors

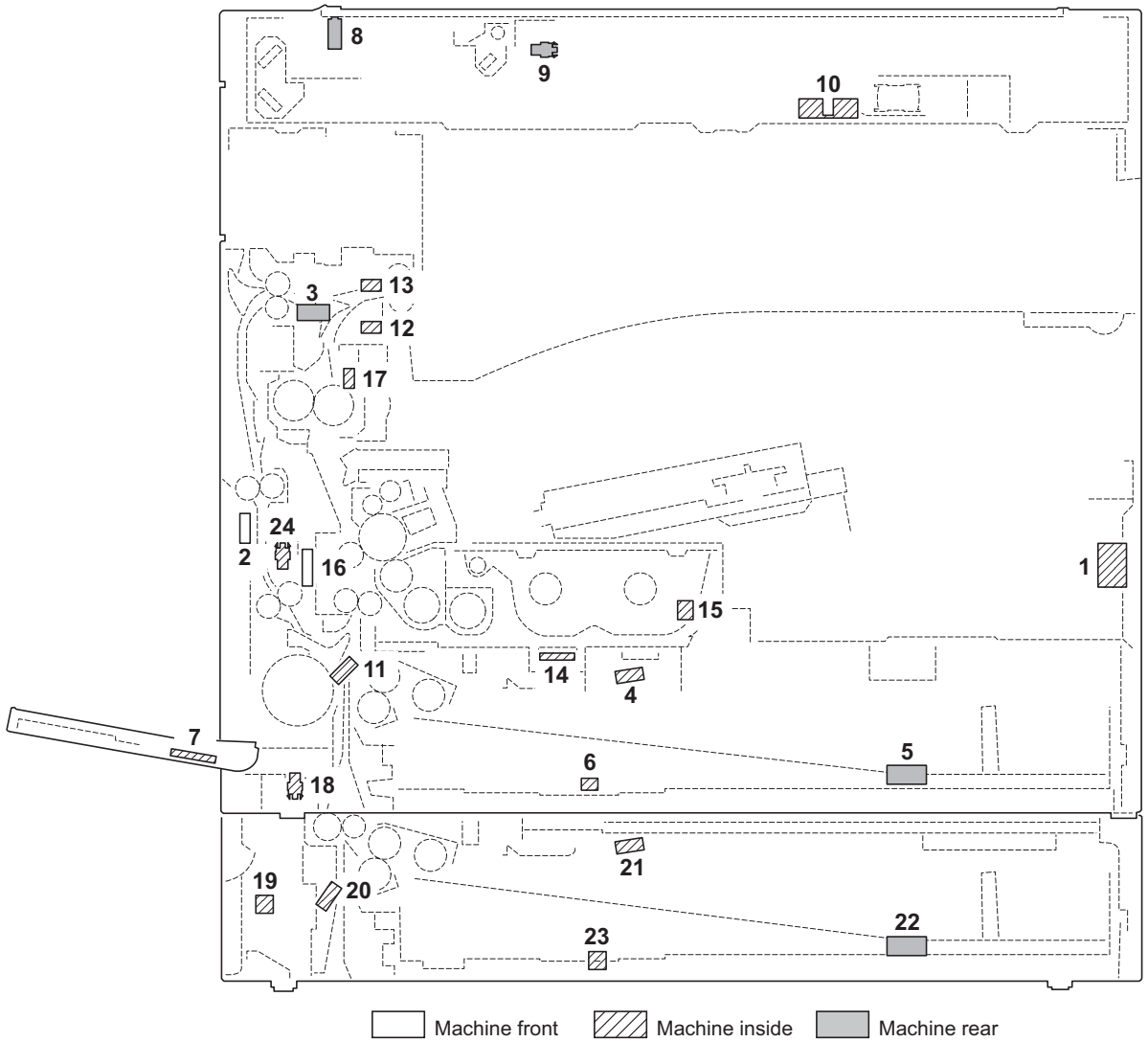


Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

1. Main power switch (MSW) ..... Turns the AC power on and off.
2. Front cover safety switch (FCSSW)..... Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened.
3. Left cover safety switch (LCSSW) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover is opened.
4. Paper switch (PSW)..... Detects the presence of paper in the cassette.
5. Paper size length switch (PLSW) ..... Detects the length of paper in the cassette.
6. Paper size width switch (PWSW)..... Detects the width of paper in the cassette.
7. MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW) ..... Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.
8. Home position switch (HPSW)..... Detects the optical system in the home position.
9. Original detection switch (ODSW) ..... Operates the original size detection sensor.
10. Original size detection sensor (OSDS) ..... Detects the size of the original.
11. Registration switch (RSW)..... Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
12. Eject switch (ESW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.
13. Feedshift switch (FSSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex copy.
14. Toner container sensor (TCS)..... Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
15. Toner container detection switch (TCDSW) ..... Detects the presence of the toner container.
16. Overflow sensor (OFS) ..... Detects when the waste toner box is full.
17. Fuser thermistor (FTH) ..... Detects the heat roller temperature.

18. MP paper switch (MPPSW) ..... Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.
19. Cassette left cover safety switch (CLCSSW)*1 ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the cassette left cover is opened.
20. Cassette feed switch (CFSW)*1 ..... Detects a paper misfeed.
21. Cassette paper switch (CPSW)*1 ..... Detects the presence of paper in the cassette.
22. Cassette paper size length switch (CPLSW)*1 ..... Detects the length of paper in the cassette.
23. Cassette paper size width switch (CPWSW)*1 ..... Detects the width of paper in the cassette.
24. Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)*2 ..... Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.

*1: Option for 18 ppm model/standard for 22 ppm model
*2: Option

(3) Motors

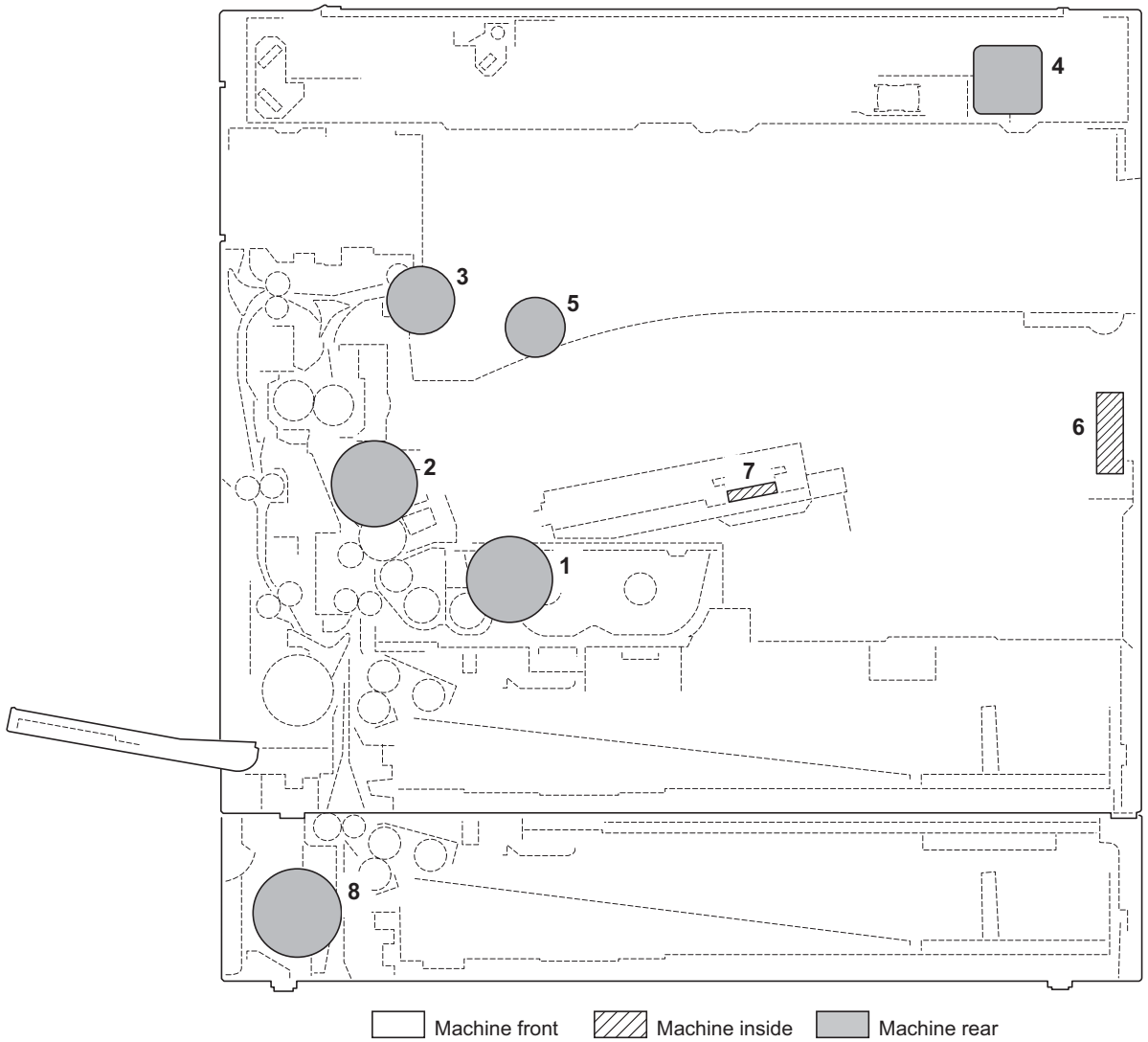


Figure 2-2-3 Motors

1. Drive motor (DM) ..... Drives the machine.
2. Drum motor (DRM) ..... Drives the drum.
3. Eject motor (EM) ..... Drives the eject section.
4. Scanner motor (SM) ..... Drives the optical system.
5. Cooling fan motor 1 (CFM1) ..... Cools the machine interior.
6. Cooling fan motor 2 (CFM2) ..... Cools the machine interior.
7. Polygon motor (PM) ..... Drives the polygon mirror.
8. Cassette drive motor (CDM)*1 ..... Drives the paper feeder.

*1: Option for 18 ppm model/standard for 22 ppm model

(4) Others

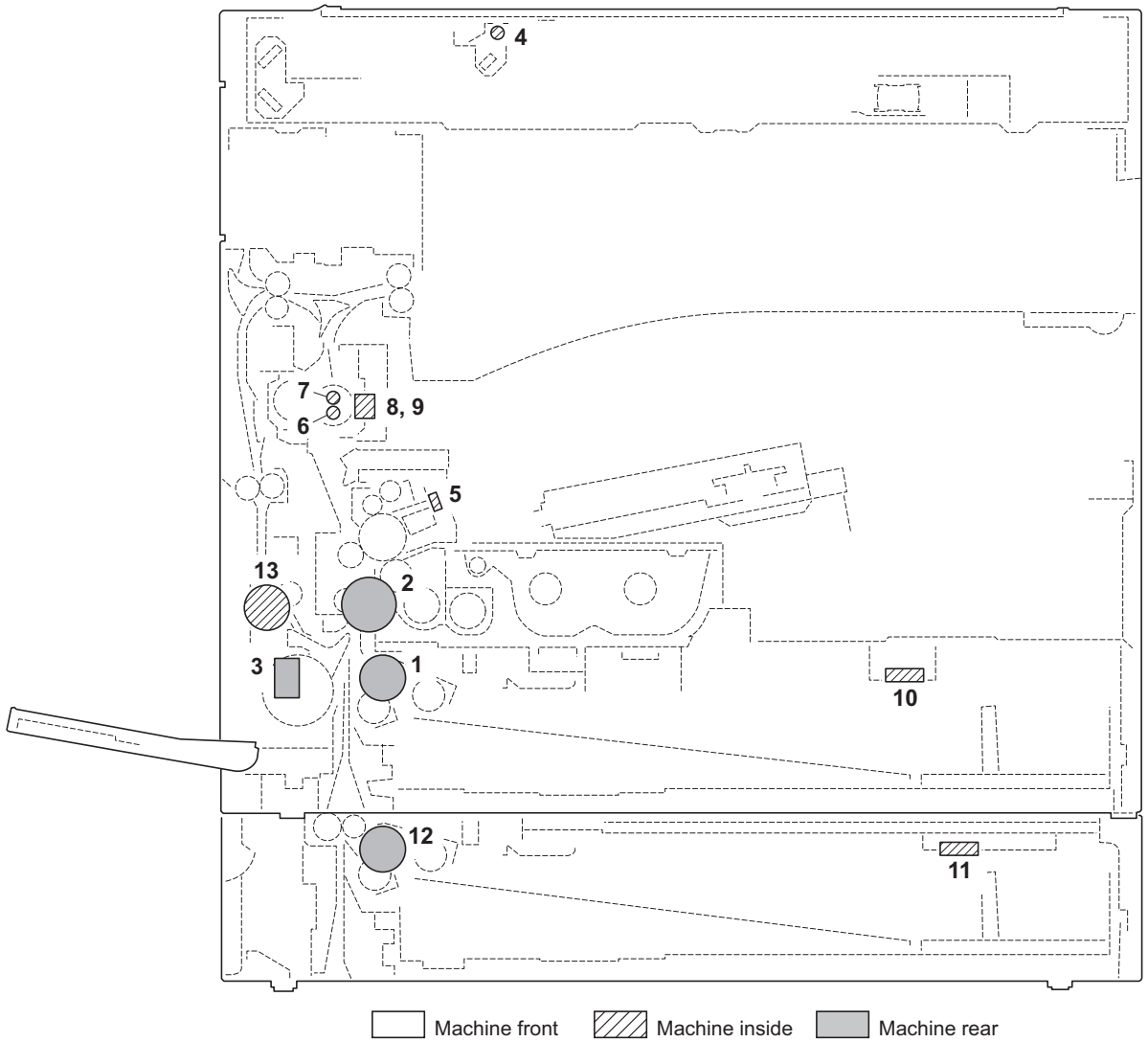


Figure 2-2-4 Other electrical components

1. Paper feed clutch (PFCL) ..... Primary paper feed from the cassette.
2. Registration clutch (RCL)..... Secondary paper feed.
3. MP solenoid (MPSOL) ..... Primary paper feed from the MP tray.
4. Exposure lamp (EL) ..... Exposes originals.
5. Cleaning lamp (CL)..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface.
6. Fuser heater M (FH-M) ..... Heats the heat roller.
7. Fuser heater S (FH-S) ..... Heats the heat roller.
8. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)..... Prevents overheating in the fuser section.
9. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)..... Prevents overheating in the fuser section.
10. Cassette heater (CH) ..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.
11. Cassette heater (CH)*1 ..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.
12. Cassette paper feed clutch (CPFCL)*1 ..... Primary paper feed from the cassette.
13. Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)*2..... Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.

*1: Option for 18 ppm model/standard for 22 ppm model
*2: Option

2-3-1 Power source PWB

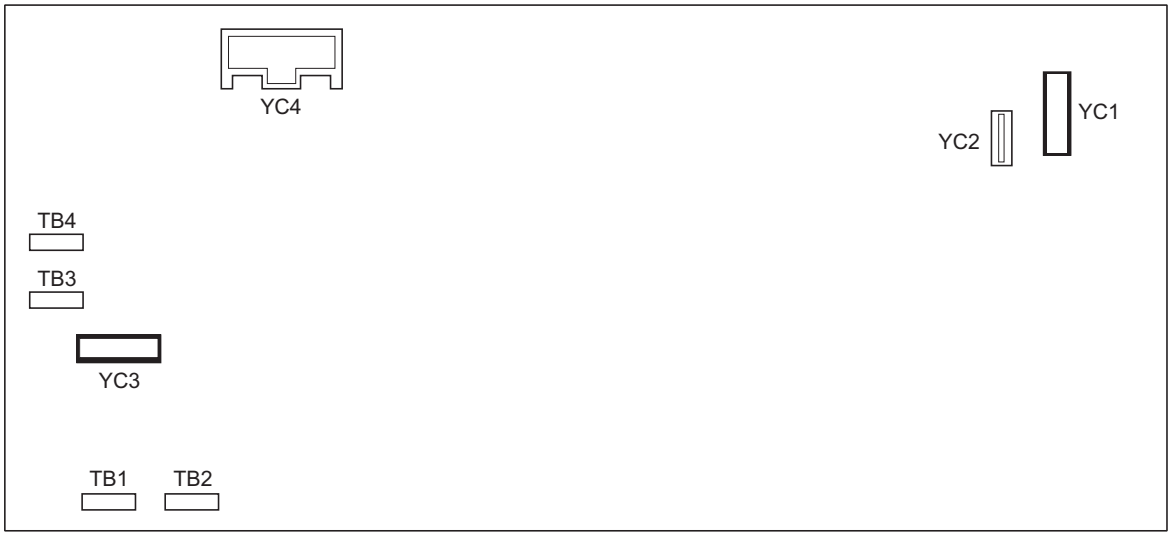


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB	1	AC_LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
Connected to the AC inlet and main power switch	2	AC_COM	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to MSW
	4	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input from MSW
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the engine PWB	2	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
	3	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
	4	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	ZCROSS	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	3	RELAYREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Relay signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SHREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	6	SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	7	MHREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
YC3	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
Connected to the cassette heater and paper feeder	2	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH (paper feeder)
	5	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH (paper feeder)
YC4	1	MH	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	FH-M: On/Off
Connected to the fuser heater M/S	2	SH	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to FM-M/S

2-3-2 Main PWB

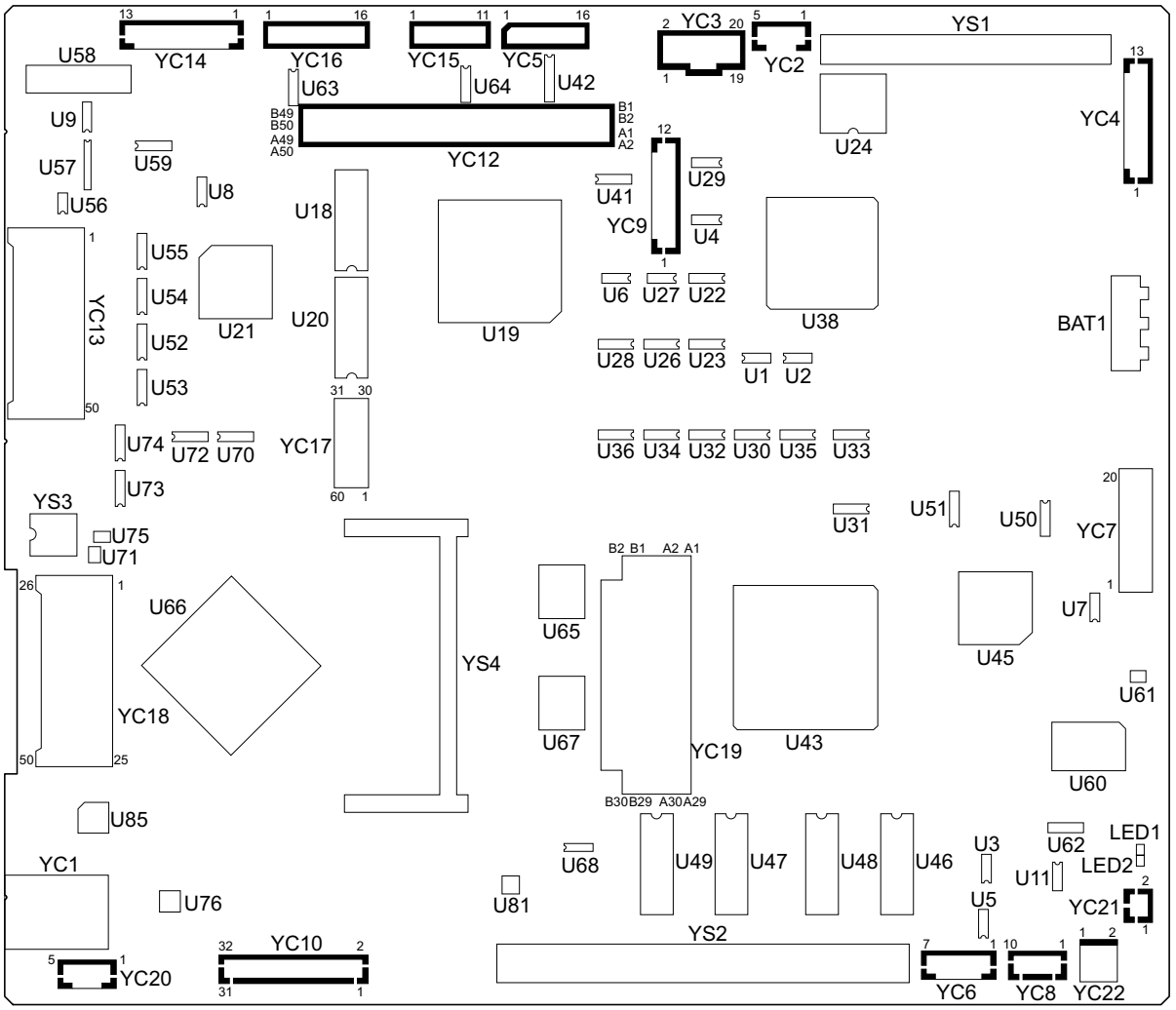


Figure 2-3-2 Main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CCDPWB
Connected to the CCD PWB	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	TG	O	0/3.3 V DC	CCD control signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RS	I	0/3.3 V DC	CCD control signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	CP	O	0/3.3 V DC	CCD control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	PHY2	-	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CCD clock signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	Vout1		Analog	CCD output signal
	13	Vout2		Analog	CCD output signal
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	NC	-	-	Not used
	16	CCDPWR	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to CCDPWB
YC6	1	PDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Laser sync signal
Connected to the APC PWB	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	OUTREN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	4	SAMPLEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sample hold signal
	5	VDON	O	-	Image data signal
	6	VDOP	O	-	Image data signal
	7	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to APCPWB
YC7	1	_RST_ENG	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB reset signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	SCANHLD	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB hold signal
	3	ENGHLD	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB hold signal
	4	AFEOVSYNC	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	_24V_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB 24 V down signal
	7	PVSYNC	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	EGOUTPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	10	PLGCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
	11	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB sleep signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	EGSIRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB interrupt signal
	14	EGSDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB communication direction signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	EGSBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB busy signal
	17	EGSDO_BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	EGSCLK_BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB clock signal
	20	EGSDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	3	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from EPWB
	6	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from EPWB
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
YC10	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the fax control PWB (fax relay PWB)	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FCPWB
	3	CLKOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FCPWB clock signal
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FCPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	MREOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	7	_HSYNCOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	_VSYNCOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	10	_IDOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	TXD	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FCPWB transmission data signal
	14	_STS	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	15	_MAIN_STS	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	16	FAXDOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	17	MREIN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	_VSYNCIN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	20	CLKIN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FCPWB clock signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	_IDIN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	24	_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	25	_SREQ	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	26	_READY	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB ready signal
	27	RXD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FCPWB received data signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	_RST	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB reset signal
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	_W_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCPWB control signal
	32	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCDPWB
Connected to the LCD PWB	2	-12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to LCDPWB
	3	LCDUD3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD indicator data signal 3
	4	LCDUD2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD indicator data signal 2
	5	LCDUD1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD indicator data signal 1
	6	LCDUD0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD indicator data signal 0
	7	LCDCP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD indicator control signal
	8	LCDFLM	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD indicator control signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	LCDENB	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD indicator control signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	LCDLP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD indicator control signal
	13	LCDV0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD indicator control signal
YC15	1	SCAN7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 7
Connected to the operation PWB	2	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	3	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	4	SCAN4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	5	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	6	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	7	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	9	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB
	10	BUZERDRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB buzzer signal
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC16	1	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
Connected to the operation PWB	2	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	3	KEY2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	4	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	5	KEY4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	6	KEY5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	7	KEY6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	8	KEY7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 7
	9	KEY8	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 8
	10	KEY9	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 9
	11	LED4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 4
	12	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 3
	13	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 2
	14	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 1
	15	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 0
	16	POWERKEY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power key input
YC22	1	+24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
Connected to the power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-3 Engine PWB

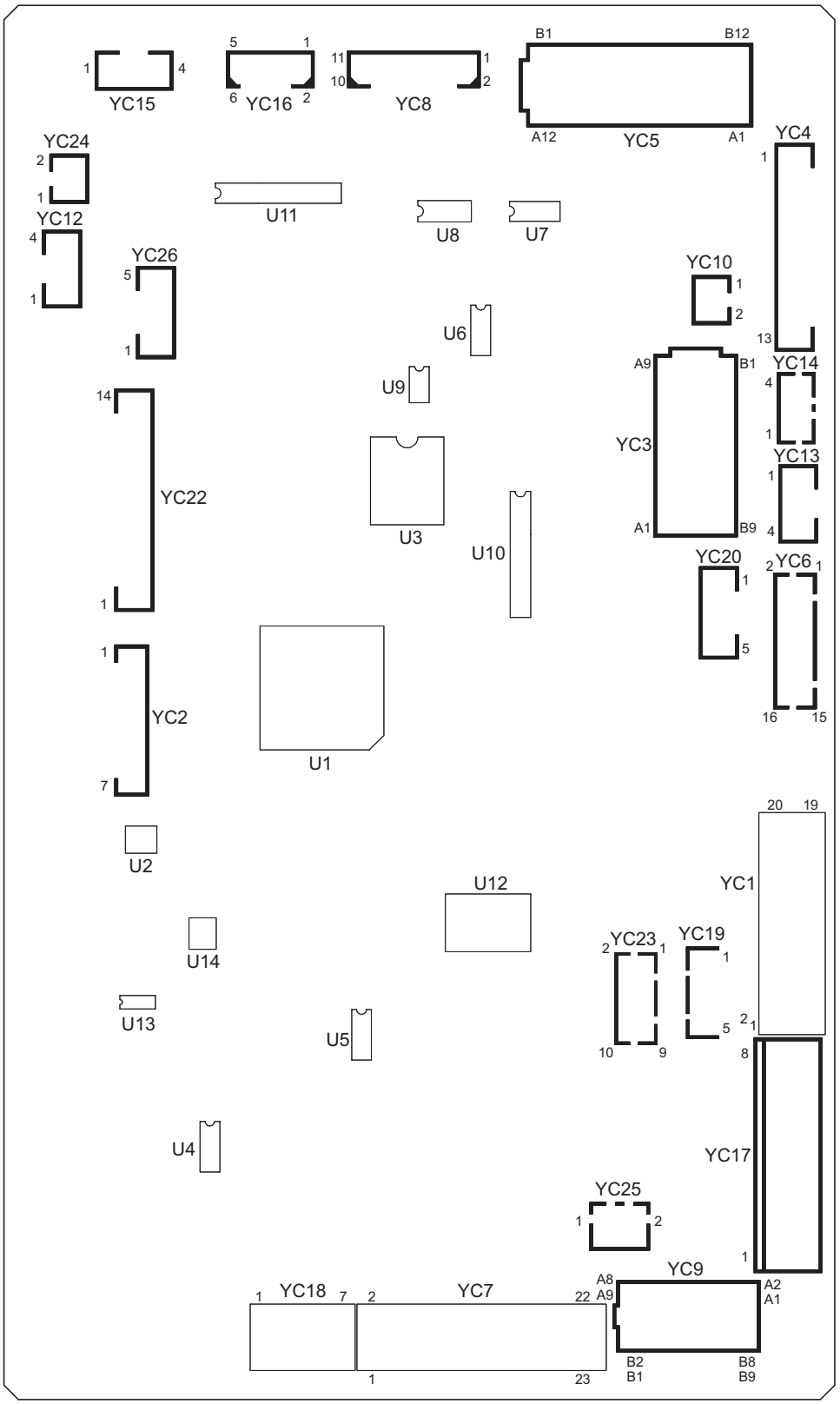


Figure 2-3-3 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	_RST_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB reset signal
Connected to the main PWB	2	SCANHLD	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB hold signal
	3	ENGHLD	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB hold signal
	4	AFEOVSYNC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	_24V_DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB 24V down signal
	7	PVSYNC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	EGOUTPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	10	PLGCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
	11	SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB sleep signal
	12	GND	-	Analog	Ground
	13	EGSIRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB interrupt signal
	14	EGSDIR	o	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB communication direction signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	EGSBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB busy signal
	17	EGSDO_BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	EGSCLK_BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB clock signal
	20	EGSDI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
YC3	A1	PLGCLKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
Connected to the polygon motor, cooling fan motor 1, overflow sensor, cleaning lamp and fuser thermistor	A2	PLGRDYN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PM ready signal
	A3	PLGDRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	PM: On/Off
	A4	PLGGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	PLG+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PM
	A6	FAN1DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1: On/Off
	A7	FAN1+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM1
	A8	NC	-	-	Not used
	A9	NC	-	-	Not used
	B1	TONEGND	-	-	Ground
	B2	TONEFULL	I	0/5 V DC	OFS: On/Off
	B3	TONE+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OFS
	B4	ERASE+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CL
	B5	NC	-	-	Not used
	B6	ERASE2N	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	B7	ERASE1N	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	B8	THERMAGND	I	-	Ground
	B9	THERMA	-	Analog	FTH detection signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	1	RLSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (return)
Connected to the built-in finisher or job separator	2	SLSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	3	UOPSCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher/Job separator clock signal
	4	UOPSDI	I	DC0V/5(þ?Ÿ¾)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal / Job separator JBESW: On/Off
	5	UOPSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher/Job separator serial communication data signal
	6	UOPSRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher ready signal / Job separator EPDSW: On/Off
	7	UOPSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher/Job separator select signal
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	9	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
	10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PGND	-	-	Ground
	12	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
	13	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
YC5	A1	ORGTIMN	I	0/5 V DC	Original scanning interval signal
Connected to the document processor, original size detection sensor, home position sensor and original detection switch	A2	DOPRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Document processor ready signal
	A3	DOPSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document processor select signal
	A4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	DOPCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document processor clock signal
	A6	DOPSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document processor serial communication data signal
	A7	DOPSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document processor serial communication data signal
	A8	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to document processor
	A9	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A11	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to document processor
	A12	NC	-	-	Not used
	B1	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OSDS
	B2	ORGLSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	OSDS: On/Off
	B3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B4	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HPSW
	B5	HPSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	HPSW: On/Off
	B6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B7	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to ODSW
	B8	OPSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	B9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B10	NC	-	-	Not used
	B11	NC	-	-	Not used
	B12	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	+24V2	O	-	24 V DC power output to DM
Connected to the drive motor and drum motor	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	MDMREM	O	0/24 V DC	DM: On/Off
	4	MDMCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DM clock signal
	5	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DM
	6	MDMRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DM ready signal
	7	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DM
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
	9	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DRM
	10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	11	DDMREM	O	0/24 V DC	DRM: On/Off
	12	DDMCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRM clock signal
	13	PGND	-	-	Ground
	14	DDMRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DRM ready signal
	15	PGND	-	-	Ground
	16	NC	-	-	Not used
YC7	1	TEMP	I	Analog	HUMS detection signal
Connected to the cassette PWB	2	HMCLK1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HUMS clock signal
	3	HMCLK2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HUMS clock signal
	4	HUMID	I	Analog	HUMS detection signal
	5	C1PWSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW: On/Off
	6	C1PDSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW: On/Off
	7	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CPWB
	8	TONEPY	I	Analog	TCS detection signal
	9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	10	BPWSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	11	REGSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	12	ICLTN	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	13	IPPSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	14	BPPESW	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	15	SGND	-	-	Ground
	16	BSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off
	17	FCLTN	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL: On/Off
	18	REGCLN	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	19	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CPWB
	20	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CPWB
	23	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to CPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVTPWB
Connected to the high voltage PWB	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVTPWB
	3	THVADJC	O	Analog	Transfer high voltage control signal
	4	THVDRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Transfer high voltage: On/Off
	5	MHVADJC	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage control signal
	6	SHVDRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation high voltage: On/Off
	7	MHVDRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger high voltage: On/Off
	8	SHVISELN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation high voltage switching signal
	9	DHVCLKC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal
	10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PGND	-	-	Ground
YC9	A1	LOPSRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
Connected to the paper feeder, paper size length switch and toner container detection switch	A2	LOPSEL2	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 2
	A3	LOPSEL1	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 1
	A4	LOPSEL0	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 0
	A5	LOPSCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	A6	LOPSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	A7	LOPSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	A8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A9	+5V2PF	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	B1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B2	+5V2PF	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	B3	C1PLSW3N	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW: On/Off
	B4	C1PLSW2N	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW: On/Off
	B5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B6	C1PLSW1N	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW: On/Off
	B7	TCONDET	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCDSW: On/Off
	B8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B9	NC	-	-	Not used
YC10	1	FAN2+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM2
Connected to the cooling fan motor 2	2	FAN2DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM2: On/Off
YC12	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to key counter
Connected to the key counter	2	KEYCN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter signal
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	KEYENBN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter detection signal
YC13	1	COMDA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
Connected to the eject motor	2	COMDB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	3	COMDNA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	4	COMDNB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	PGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the eject switch and feedshift switch	2	EXTSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	3	SEPSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	4	+5V4	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to ESW/FSSW
YC15	1	ISMDA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
Connected to the scanner motor	2	ISMDB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	3	ISMDNA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	4	ISMDNB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
YC16	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to INPWB
Connected to the inverter PWB	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to INPWB
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	LAMPN	O	0/24 V DC	EL: On/Off
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
YC17	1	+24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
Connected to the power source PWB, left cover safety switch and front cover safety switch	2	+24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to LCSSW
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	+24VIL1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from LCSSW
	6	+24VIL1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCSSW
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	+24VIL2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from FCSSW
YC18	1	MHREM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
Connected to the power source PWB	2	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	3	SHREM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	RELAYREM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Relay signal
	6	ZCROSS	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	7	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
YC23	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPWB
	6	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPWB
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
YC25	1	PGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the paper feeder	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to paper feeder

2-3-4 Cassette PWB

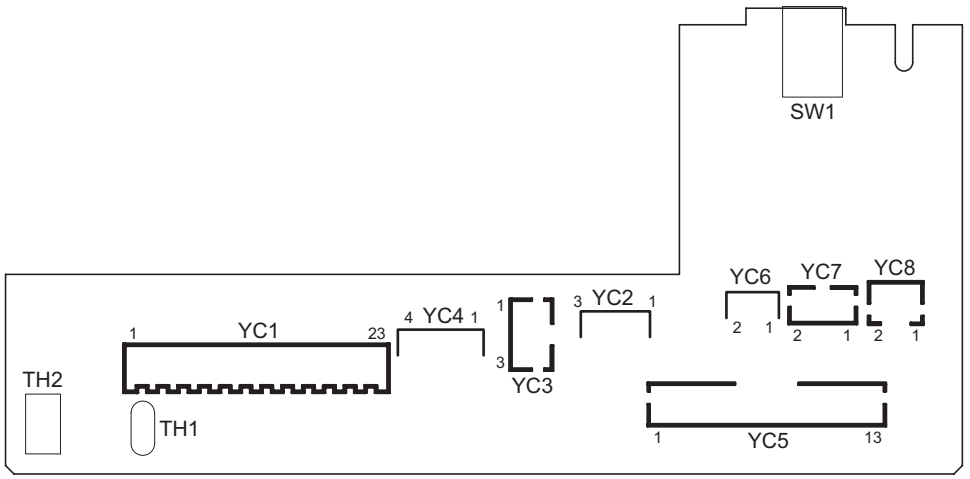


Figure 2-3-4 Cassette PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	TEMP	O	Analog	HUMS detection signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	HMCLK1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Not used
	3	HMCLK2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HUMS clock signal
	4	HUMID	O	Analog	HUMS detection signal
	5	C1PWSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW: On/Off
	6	C1PDSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	PSW: On/Off
	7	+5V2	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	8	TONEPY	O	Analog	TCS detection signal
	9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	10	BPWSW	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	11	REGSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	12	ICLTN	I	Analog	DUPFCL: On/Off
	13	IPPSWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	14	BPPESW	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	15	SGND	-	-	Ground
	16	BSOLN	I	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off
	17	FCLTN	I	0/24 V DC	PFCL: On/Off
	18	REGCLN	I	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	19	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from EPWB
	20	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from EPWB
	23	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from EPWB
YC2	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the paper switch	2	C1PDSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW: On/Off
	3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to PSW
YC3	1	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to TCS
Connected to the toner container sensor	2	TONEPY	I	Analog	TCS detection signal
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPPSW
Connected to the MP paper switch, duplex paper conveying switch, duplex feed clutch, registration switch and MP paper size width switch	2	BPPESW	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPPCSW
	5	IPPSWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DUPFCL
	8	ICLTN	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	9	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to RSW
	10	REGSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground
	12	BPWSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	13	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPPWSW

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to RCL
Connected to the registration clutch	2	REGCLN	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
YC7	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL
Connected to the paper feed clutch	2	FCLTN	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL: On/Off
YC8	1	BSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off
Connected to the MP solenoid	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MPSOL

2-3-5 Operation PWB

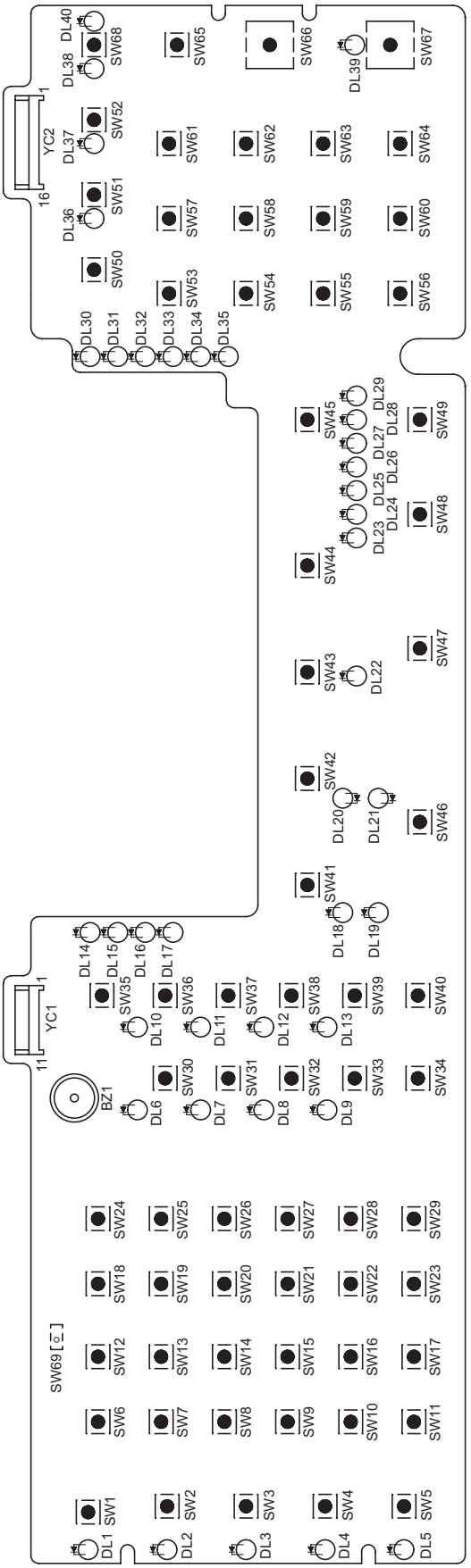


Figure 2-3-5 Operation PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	SCAN7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 7
Connected to the main PWB	2	SCAN6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	3	SCAN5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	4	SCAN4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	5	SCAN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	6	SCAN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	7	SCAN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	9	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from MPWB
	10	BUZERDRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB buzzer signal
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	POWERKEY	O	Analog	Power key output
Connected to the main PWB	2	LED0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 0
	3	LED1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 1
	4	LED2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 2
	5	LED3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 3
	6	LED4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel indicator LED drive signal 4
	7	KEY9	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 9
	8	KEY8	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 8
	9	KEY7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 7
	10	KEY6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	11	KEY5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	12	KEY4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	13	KEY3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	14	KEY2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	15	KEY1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	16	KEY0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0

2-3-6 Cassette main PWB (22 ppm model only)

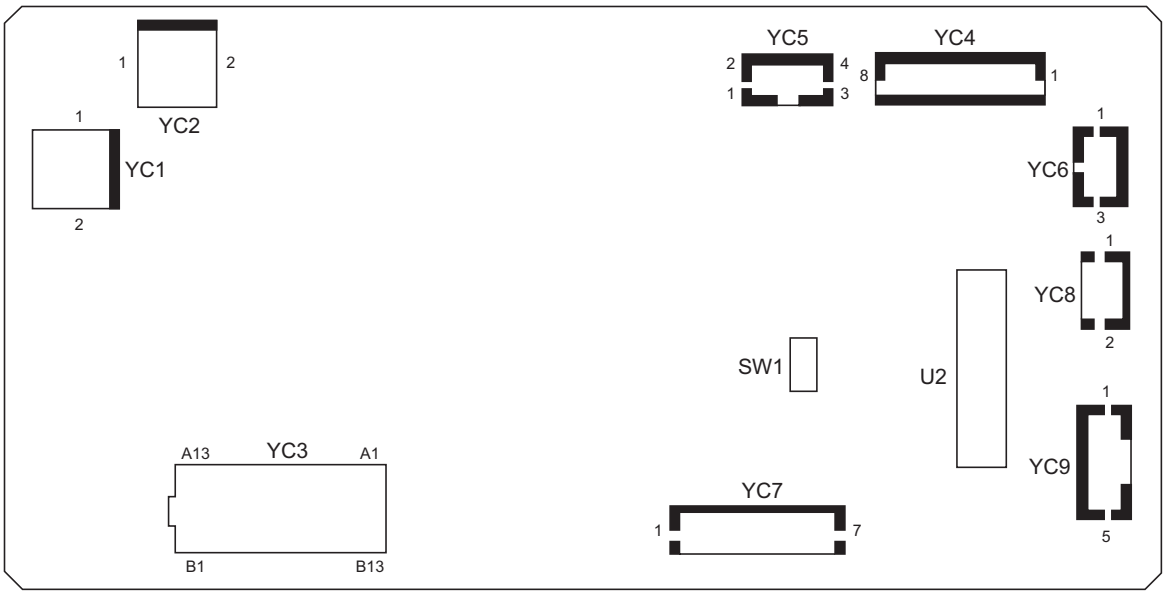


Figure 2-3-6 Cassette main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to paper feeder
Connected to the paper feeder	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from EPWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
YC3	A1	5V	-	-	Not used
Connected to the engine PWB and paper feeder	A2	SGND	-	-	Not used
	A3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	A4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	A6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	A8	SDO	O	Analog	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	A9	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	A10	SEL0	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 0
	A11	SEL1	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 1
	A12	SEL2	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 2
	A13	RDY	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
	B1	RDY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
	B2	SEL2	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 2
	B3	SEL1	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 1
	B4	SEL0	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal 0
	B5	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	B6	SDO	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	B7	SDI	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	B8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	B10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B11	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	B12	SGND	-	-	Not used
	B13	5V	-	-	Not used
YC4	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the cassette left cover safety switch, cassette paper size width switch and cassette paper size length switch	2	COVOPN	O	0/24 V DC	CLCSSW: On/Off
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SIZEA	I	0/5 V DC	CPWSW: On/Off
	5	SIZEB	I	0/5 V DC	CPLSW: On/Off
	6	SIZEC	I	0/5 V DC	CPLSW: On/Off
	7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	8	SIZED	I	0/5 V DC	CPLSW: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the cassette paper switch	2	PE	I	0/5 V DC	CPSW: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CPSW
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
YC6	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the cassette feed switch	2	FEED	I	0/5 V DC	CFSW: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CFSW
YC8	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CPFCL
Connected to the cassette paper feed clutch	2	CLT_RE	O	0/24 V DC	CPFCL: On/Off
YC9	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CDM
Connected to the cassette drive motor	2	MOTA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CDM drive control signal
	3	MOTB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CDM drive control signal
	4	MOTA-	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CDM drive control signal
	5	MOTB-	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	CDM drive control signal

Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alterna-tive part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY, PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	3	4
Separation pulley	PULLEY, SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	3	5
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY, LEADING FEED	2AR07240	-	3	6
Cassette paper feed pulley	PULLEY, PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	7	2
Cassette separation pulley	PULLEY, SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	8	4
Cassette forwarding pulley	PULLEY, LEADING FEED	2AR07240	-	7	3
MP paper feed pulley	PULLEY BYPASS	302KK08210	2KK08210	5	38
MP separation pad	PARTS BYPASS PAD ASSY SP	302KK94450	2KK94450	4	A01
Left registration roller	PARTS ROLLER REGIST LEFT SP	302KK94230	2KK94230	5	40
Right registration roller	RIGHT ROLL REGIST	302KK24140	2KK24140	5	43
Feed roller	ROLLER FEED	303HW06021	3HW06021	7	22
Feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	2BL16080	-	8	5
Slit glass	CONTACT GLASS ADF	2C912280	-	11	9
Contact glass	CONTACT GLASS	2C912250	-	11	19
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	302KK17320	2KK17320	10	36
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	302KK17330	2KK17330	10	37
Lens	LENS	-	-	-	-
Reflector	REFLECTOR SCANNER	2C912110	-	10	16
Exposure lamp	PARTS LAMP SCANNER SP	302KK94220	2KK94220	10	35
Optical rail	RAIL SCANNER	-	-	-	-
Original size detection sensor	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-	10	2
Laser scanner unit	LK-460	302KK93060	2KK93060	12	1
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER	302C917011	2C917011	5	12
Separation electrode	PLATE STA ELIMINATION	2C917080	-	5	24
Developing unit	DV-460	302KK93020	2KK93020	14	A01
Main charger unit	MC-460	302KK93080	2KK93080	13	A02
Fuser unit	FK-460(A)	302KK93040	2KK93040	15	A01
	FK-460(E)	302KK93050	2KK93050	15	A01
Heat roller	PARTS ROLLER HEAT SP	302KK94240	2KK94240	15	10
Press roller	PARTS ROLLER PRESS SP	302KK94290	2KK94290	15	13
Heat roller separation claw	SEPARATOR ASSY	302FT20120	2FT20120	15	5
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT INNER SP	302KK94300	2KK94300	18	19
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT	302KK28030	2KK28030	18	12
Switchback roller	PARTS ROLLER FEED SHIFT SP	302KK94310	2KK94310	18	20
Switchback pulley	PULLEY FEED SHIFT	2C921040	-	4	26

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Every service		

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Paper feed pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-6
	Separation pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-3
	Forwarding pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-6
	Cassette paper feed pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-13
	Cassette separation pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-11
	Cassette forwarding pulley	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-13
	MP paper feed pulley	Check, replace or clean	Every service	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-18
	MP separation pad	Check or replace	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-18
	Left registration roller	Check, replace or clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-21
	Right registration roller	Check, replace or clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-22
	Feed roller	Check or replace	User call	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace it if any problem such as flawed or worn state is found.	P.1-5-9
	Feed pulley	Check or clean	User call	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Slit glass	Clean	Every service	Clean with a dry cloth (do not clean with a wet cloth or alcohol).	
	Contact glass	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Mirror 1	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Lens	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Reflector	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check or replace	User call	Replace if an image problem occurs or after the exposure lamp does not turn on.	P.1-5-24
	Optical rail	Check or grease	User call	Check noise and shifting and then apply optical rail grease EM-50LP.	
	Original size detection sensor	Check or clean	User call	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	
	Laser scanner unit	Check or clean	User call	Clean the slit glass with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	P.1-5-35



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer/ separation section	Transfer roller	Clean	User call	Vacuum or clean with a dry cloth when user call occurs.	P.1-5-45
	Separation electrode	Check or clean	User call	Clean with a cleaning brush.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit	Check or replace	User call	Replace if the problem occurs.	P.1-5-44



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Drum section	Main charger unit	Check or replace	Every service	Replace if an image problem occurs.	P.1-5-43

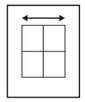
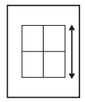
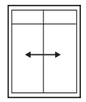
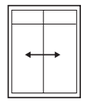
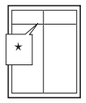
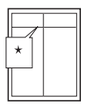
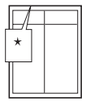
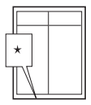
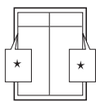
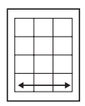
Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	Check or replace	User call	Replace if the problem occurs.	P.1-5-47
	Heat roller	Clean	150K	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-55
	Press roller	Clean	150K	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-49
	Heat roller separation claw	Check, replace or clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol. Replace if claw is flawed, deformed or worn.	P.1-5-54

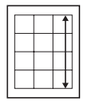
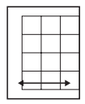
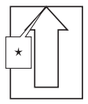
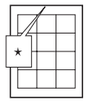
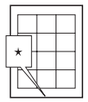
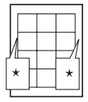
Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Check or clean	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty.	
	Eject pulley	Check or clean	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty.	
	Switchback roller	Check or clean	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty.	
	Switchback pulley	Check or clean	User call	Clean it with alcohol if it is dirty.	

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Original cover	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Image quality	Check and adjust	Every service		

Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLY	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-16	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	MAIN	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-16	
3	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU BYP	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-13	
4	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU OUT	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-13	First paper feeder: select LSU T1 Second paper feeder: select LSU T2 Third paper feeder: select LSU T3 Duplex copying: select LSU DUP
5	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration clutch turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	RCL BYP	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-12	
6	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Registration clutch turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	RCL ON	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-12	First paper feeder: select RCL T1 Second paper feeder: select RCL T2 Third paper feeder: select RCL T3 Duplex copying: select RCL DUP
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-53	
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-53	
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	AC	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-53	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-18	No adjustment for copying using the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN ADJ CONVEY SPEED 1	Test chart	P.1-3-18 P.1-3-22	U065: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U070: For copying originals from the DP. Duplex copying: select CONVEY SPEED 2
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	ADJUST DATA1 1sided	Test chart	P.1-3-20 P.1-3-25	U067: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. Rotate copying: select ADJUST DATA2 U072: For copying originals from the DP. Duplex copying (first page): select 2sided front Duplex copying (second page): select 2sided back
13	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing (image adjustment)	U066 U071	ADJUST DATA1 LEAD 1	Test chart	P.1-3-19 P.1-3-23	U066: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. Rotate copying: select ADJUST DATA2 U071: For copying originals from the DP. Duplex copying: select LEAD 2
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B MARGIN B MARGIN/	Test chart	P.1-3-54 P.1-3-55	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D MARGIN D MARGIN/	Test chart	P.1-3-54 P.1-3-55	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	A MARGIN C MARGIN A MARGIN/ C MARGIN/	Test chart	P.1-3-54 P.1-3-55	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.

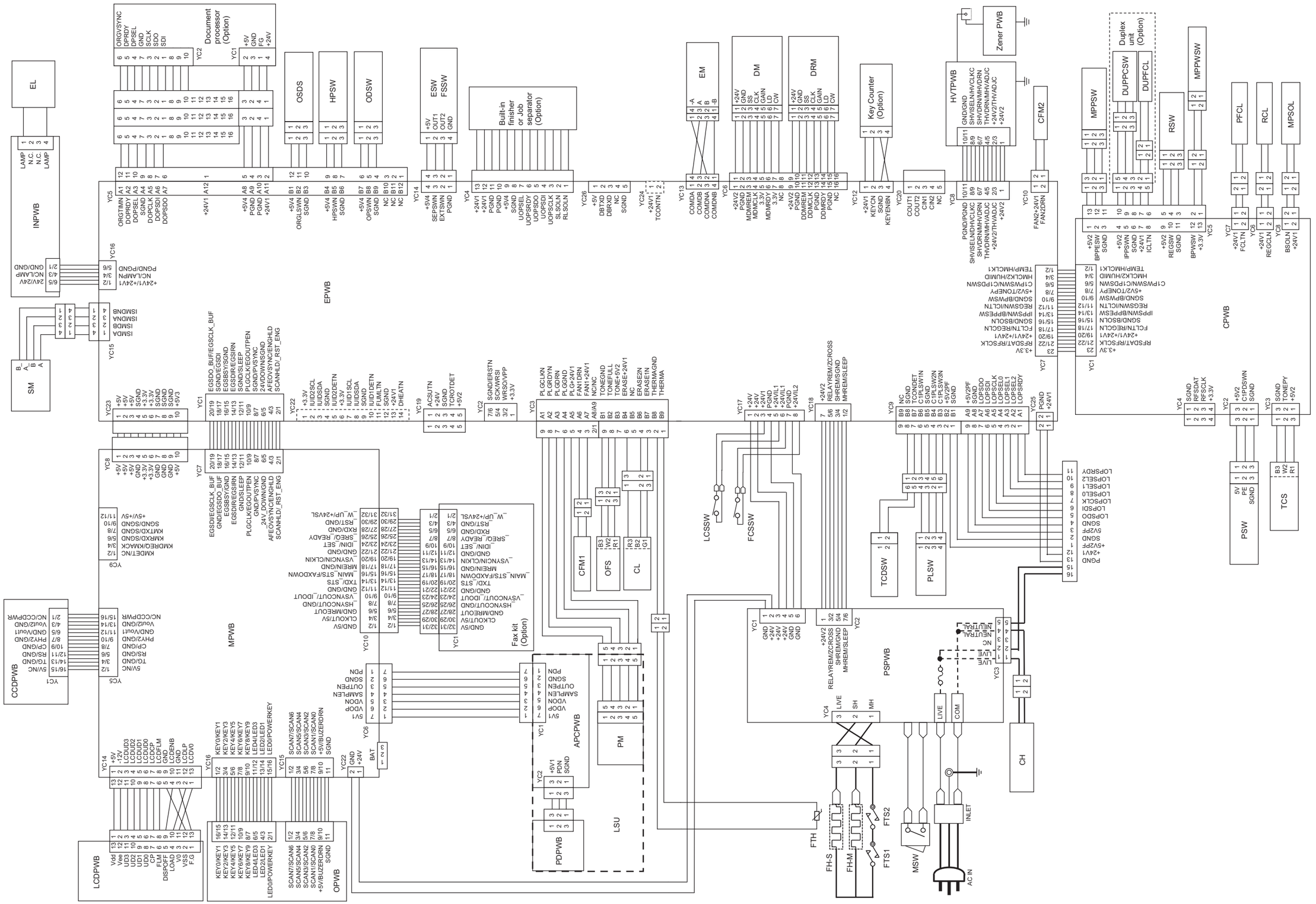
When maintenance item U092 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 302FZ56990), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U076 (Adjusting the DP automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

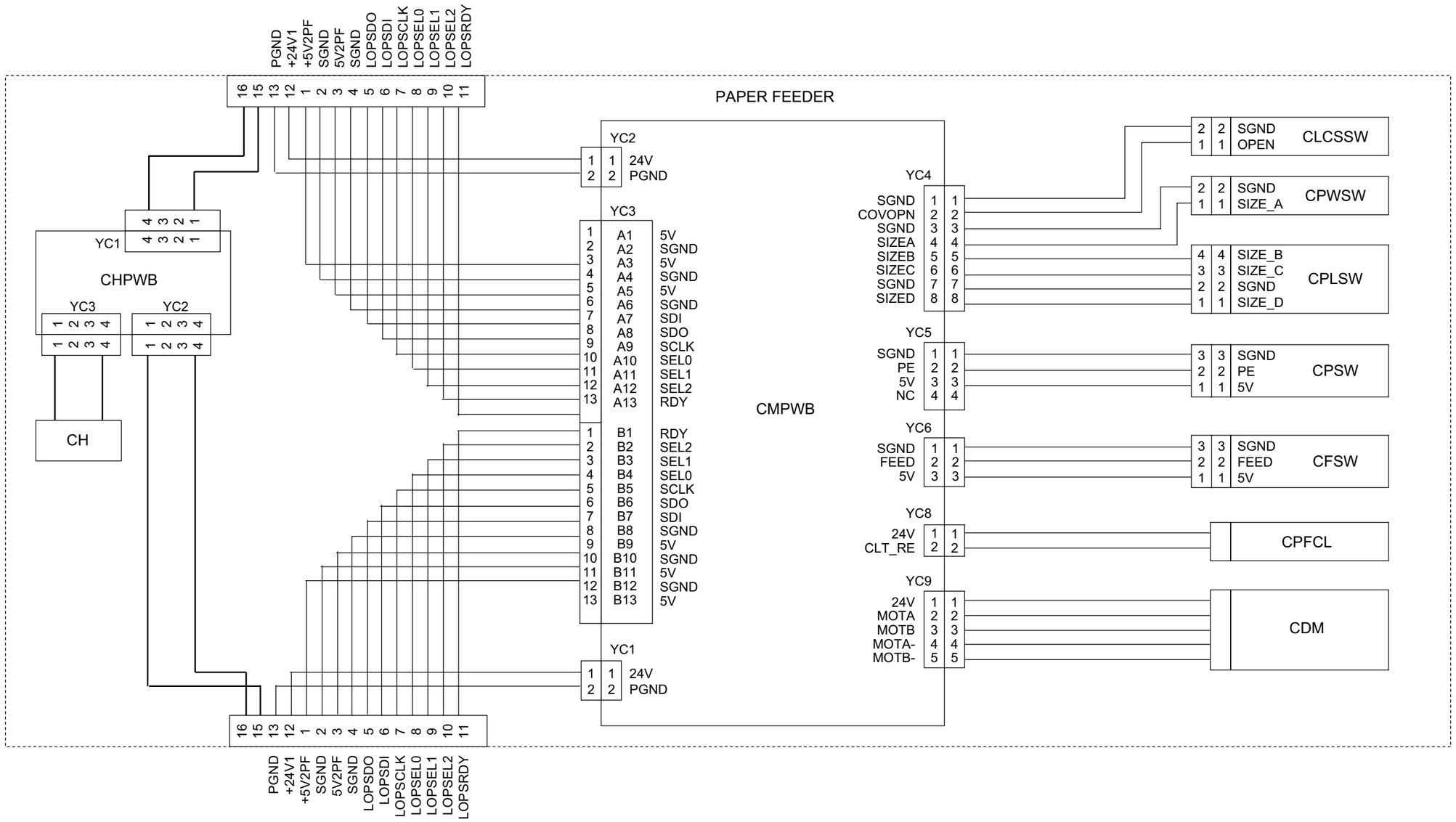
Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: ±0.8% Using DP: ±1.5%
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: ±1.0% Using DP: ±1.5%
Lateral squareness	Machine: ±1.5 mm/375 mm Using DP: ±3.0 mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: ±2.5 mm MP tray: ±2.5 mm Duplex mode: ±2.5 mm
Skewed paper feed	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex mode: 2.0 mm or less
Left-right difference	Cassette: 2.0 mm or less MP tray: 2.0 mm or less Duplex mode: 3.0 mm or less
Curling	Simplex mode: 10.0 mm or less Duplex mode: 10.0 mm or less

Wiring diagram

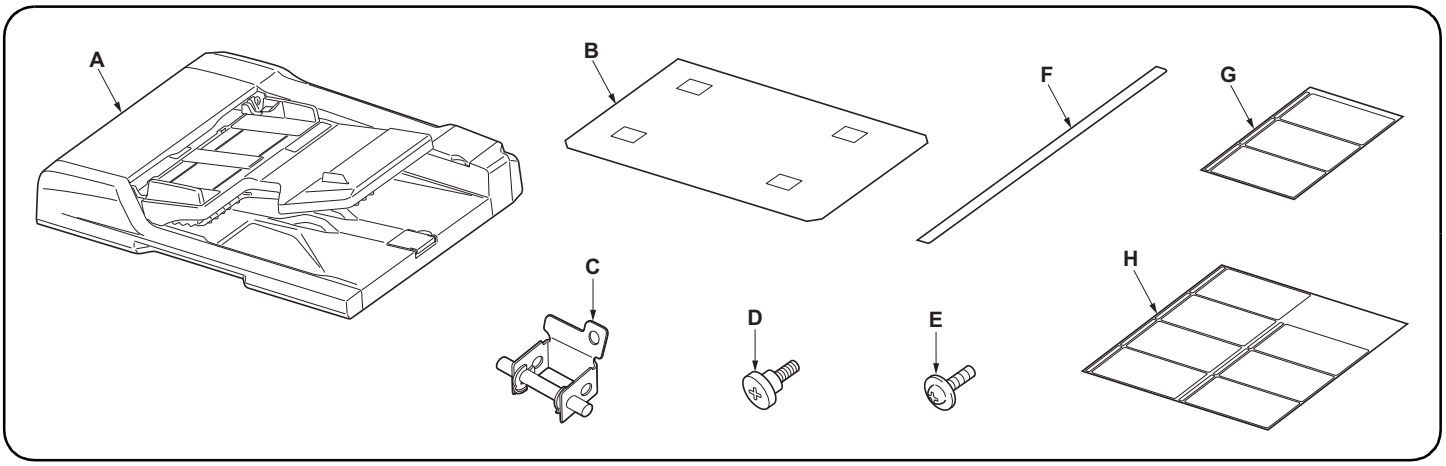


Paper feeder wiring diagram (22 ppm model only)



INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 114.5 VA max.
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/
P/N: 303MX46010



English

Supplied parts

A Document processor (DP) 1
B Original mat 1
C Angle adjusting plate 1
D Pin 2
E M4 × 14 screw 5
F Film 1
G Label A (for 120 V specifications・ for 220 V - 240 V specifications)..... 1
H Label B (for 220 V - 240 V specifications)... 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Procedure

Before installing the document processor, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Chargeur de document (DP) 1
B Tapis d'original..... 1
C Plaque de réglage d'angle..... 1
D Goupille 2
E Vis M4 × 14..... 5
F Film 1
G Étiquette A (pour les spécifications 120 V・ pour les spécifications 220 V - 240 V)..... 1
H Étiquette B (pour les spécifications 220 V - 240 V)..... 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Procédure

Avant d'installer le chargeur de document, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Español

Piezas suministradas

A Procesador de documentos (DP) 1
B Plancha de originales 1
C Placa de ajuste de ángulo 1
D Pasador 2
E Tornillo M4 × 14 5
F Película 1
G Etiqueta A (especificaciones de 120 V・ especificaciones de 220 V -240 V) 1
H Etiqueta B (especificaciones de 220 V - 240 V)..... 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Procedimiento

Antes de instalar el procesador de documentos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Vorlageneinzug (DP) 1
B Originalmatte 1
C Winkeleinstellhalter..... 1
D Rändelschraube 2
E M4 × 14 Schraube 5
F Films 1
G Aufkleber A (für 120 V-Spezifikationen・für 220 V - 240 V -Spezifikationen)..... 1
H Aufkleber B (für 220 V - 240 V -pezifikationen)..... 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Verfahren

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Vorlageneinzug installieren.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Alimentatore di originali (DP)..... 1
B Coprioriginale 1
C Piastra di regolazione dell'angolo..... 1
D Perno..... 2
E Vite M4 × 14 5
F Película 1
G Etichetta A (specifiche solo per 120V・ specifiche solo per 220 V - 240 V esteri 1
H Etichetta B (specifiche solo per 220 V - 240 V)..... 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Procedura

Prima di installare l'alimentatore di originali, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

简体中文

附属品

A 送稿器 (DP) 1
B 原稿垫..... 1
C 调整板..... 1
D 卡销..... 2
E 螺丝 M4 × 14 5
F 薄膜 1
G 标签 A(120V 规格产品・ 220V-240V 规格产品1 1
H 标签 B(220V-240V 规格产品) 1

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装步骤

安装 DP 时，必须先关闭机器主机的主电源开关，并拔下电源插头后，再进行安装作业。

日本語

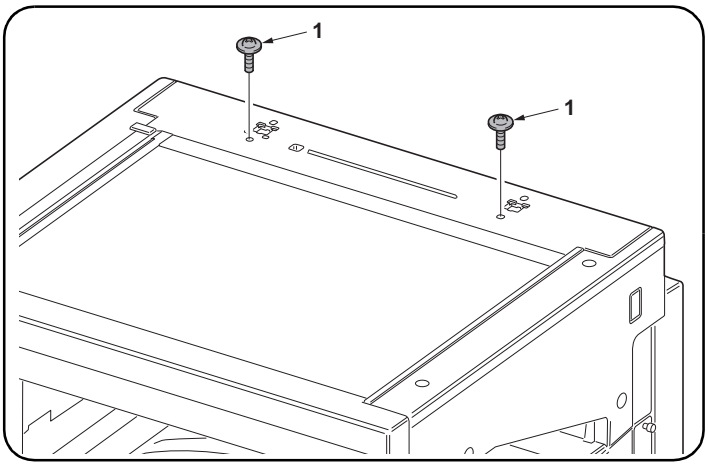
同梱品

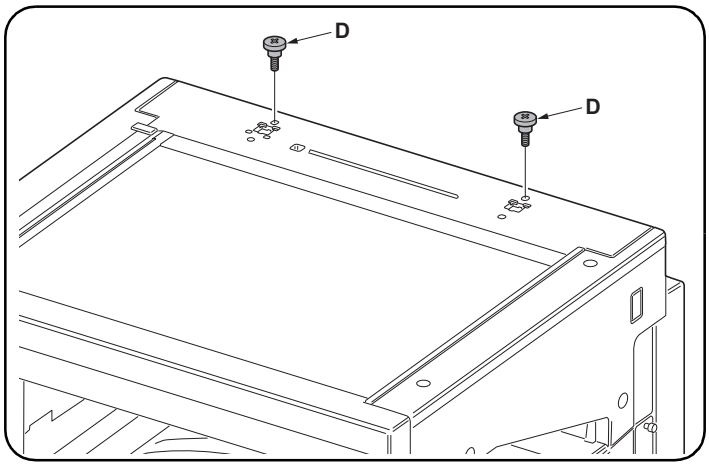
A 原稿送り装置(DP)..... 1
B 原稿マット..... 1
C 調整板..... 1
D ピン..... 2
E ビス M4 × 14 5
F フィルム..... 1
G ラベル A (120V 仕様・220V-240V 仕様)..1
H ラベル B (220V-240V 仕様)..... 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

取付手順

DP を設置する場合は、機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。





Installing the DP

1. Remove the 2 screws (1).

2. Install 2 pins (D).

Installation du DP

1. Déposez les 2 vis (1).

2. Installez 2 goupilles (D).

Instalación del DP

1. Quite los 2 tornillos (1).

2. Instale 2 pasadores (D).

Installieren des DP

1. Entfernen Sie die 2 Schrauben (1).

2. 2 Rändelschrauben (D) eindrehen.

Installazione del DP

1. Rimuovere le 2 viti (1).

2. Inserire 2 perni (D).

安装 DP

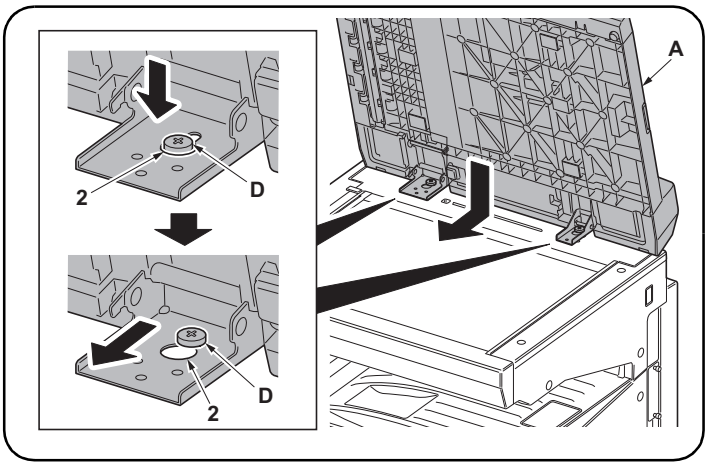
1. 取下 2 个螺丝（1）。

2. 装上 2 个卡销 (D)。

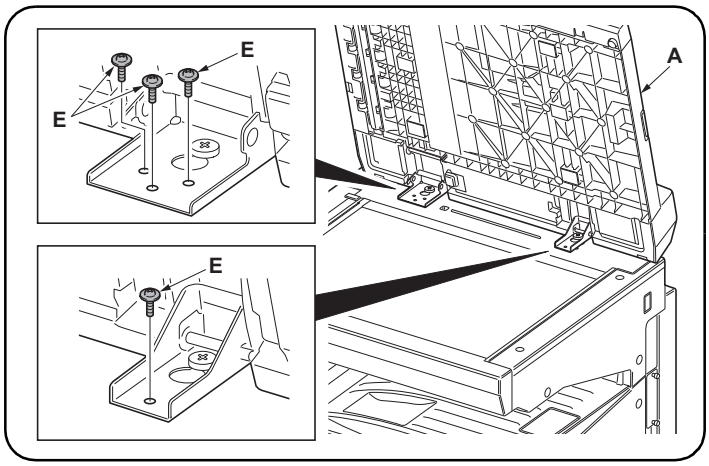
DP の取り付け

1. ビス (1)2 本を取り外す。

2. ピン (D)2 本を取り付ける。



3. Insert the pins (D) into the hinge holes (2) of DP (A) and slide the DP (A) toward the front side to install it.



4. Fix the DP (A) using four M4 × 14 screws (E).
Right: One
Left: Three

---

3. Insérez les goupilles (D) dans les orifices de charnière (2) du DP (A), puis faites glisser le DP (A) vers l'avant pour l'installer.

4. Fixez le DP (A) à l'aide de quatre vis M4 × 14 (E).
Côté droit: Une
Côté gauche: Trois

---

3. Inserte los pasadores (D) en los orificios de bisagra (2) del DP (A) y deslice el DP (A) hacia el lado frontal para instalar.

4. Fije el DP (A) utilizando cuatro tornillos M4 × 14 (E).
Derecho: Uno
Izquierdo: Tres

---

3. Die Rändelschrauben (D) in die Scharnierlöcher (2) des DP (A) einführen, und den DP (A) zum Installieren nach vorn schieben.

4. Den DP (A) mit vier M4 × 14 Schrauben (E) befestigen.
Rechts: Eine
Links: Drei

---

3. Inserire i perni (D) nei fori della cerniera (2) del DP (A) e fare scorrere il DP (A) verso il lato anteriore per installarlo.

4. Fissare il DP (A) utilizzando quattro viti M4 × 14 (E).
Destra: Una
Sinistra: Tre

---

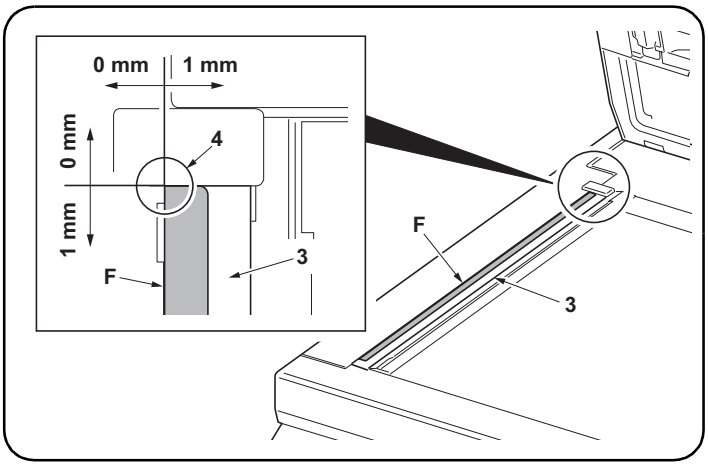
3. 将卡销 (D) 插入 DP(A) 的铰链部孔 (2)，向跟前滑动装上 DP(A)。

4. 用 4 个螺丝 M4 × 14(E) 固定 DP(A)。
右侧：1 个
左侧：3 个

---

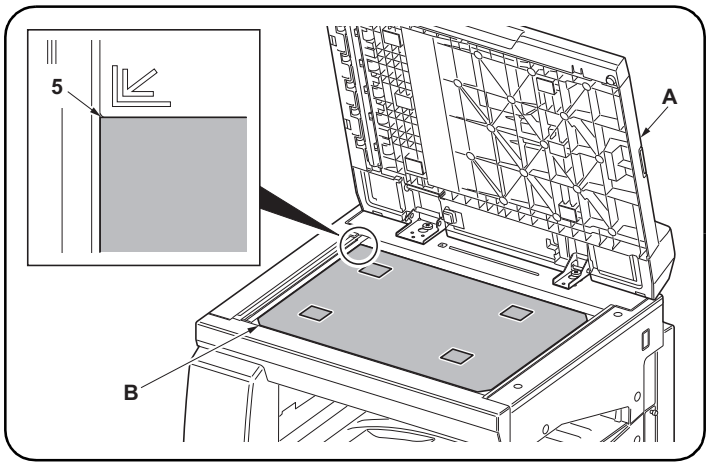
3. DP 本体 (A) のヒンジ部の穴 (2) にピン (D) を挿入し、DP 本体(A)を手前にスライドして取り付ける。

4. ビス M4 × 14(E)4 本で DP(A) を固定する。
右側:1 本
左側:3 本



Adhering the film

5. Wipe the slit glass (3) with a dry cloth.
6. Align the edge of the film (F) with the edge (4) of the slit glass (3) and stick it in place within the reference value range.



Attaching the original mat

7. Place the original mat (B) with its hook and loop fasteners up over the platen.
Align original mat (B) corner that has 90 degrees of angle with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.
8. Close the DP (A) slowly to attach the original mat (B) onto it with the hook and loop fasteners.

Adhésion du film

5. Nettoyez le verre fendu (3) à l'aide d'un chiffon sec.
6. Alignez le bord du film (F) avec le bord (4) du verre fendu (3) et insérez le tout en place dans les limites de la plage des valeurs de référence.

Fixation du tapis d'original

7. Placez le tapis d'original (B) sur la glace d'exposition avec son crochet et ses attaches à boucle orientées vers le haut.
Aligner le coin du plateau d'original (B) faisant un angle de 90 degrés avec le coin gauche interne du panneau d'instructions d'original.
8. Refermez progressivement le DP (A) pour fixer le tapis d'original (B) sur celui-ci avec le crochet et les attaches à boucle.

Fijación de la película

5. Limpie el cristal de paso (3) con un paño seco.
6. Alinee el borde de la película (F) con el borde (4) del cristal de paso (3) y péguela, en su lugar, dentro del rango del valor de referencia.

Colocación de la plancha de originales

7. Coloque la plancha de originales (B) en su gancho y fijadores de bucle sobre el crystal de exposición.
Alinee la esquina que tiene un ángulo de 90 grados de la alfombrilla para originales (B) con la esquina interior izquierda del panel de instrucciones para el original.
8. Cierre lentamente el DP (A) para colocar la plancha de originales (B) con el gancho y fijadores de bucle.

Anbringen des Films

5. Das schmale Glas (3) mit einem trockenen Tuch abwischen.
6. Die Kante des Films (F) entlang der Kante (4) des schmalen Glases (3) ausrichten und im Bezugswertebereich festkleben.

Anbringen der Originalmatte

7. Die Originalmatte (B) mit den Klettverschlüssen nach oben auf das Vorlagenglas legen.
Die Ecke der Originalmatte (B), die einen 90-Grad-Winkel aufweist, mit der linken, inneren Kante des Originalbedienfeldes ausrichten.
8. Den DP (A) langsam schließen, so dass die Originalmatte (B) mit den Klettverschlüssen an ihm haftet.

Applicazione della pellicola

5. Pulire il vetro lettura (3) strofinandolo con un panno asciutto.
6. Allineare il bordo della pellicola (F) con il bordo (4) del vetro lettura (3) e incollarla in posizione all'interno del campo del valore di riferimento.

Montaggio del coprioriginale

7. Collocare il copioriginali (B) sulla lastra di esposizione con il lato provvisto di nastro velcro autoadesivo rivolto verso l'alto.
Allineare l'angolo di 90 gradi del coprioriginale (B) con l'angolo interno sinistro del pannello di controllo originale.
8. Chiudere lentamente il DP (A) in modo che il coprioriginale (B) vi si possa fissare mediante il nastro velcro.

粘贴薄膜

5. 用干布擦拭窄缝玻璃（3）。
6. 将薄膜（F）边缘与窄缝玻璃（3）边缘（4）对齐，在标准值范围内将其粘贴到位。

安装原稿垫

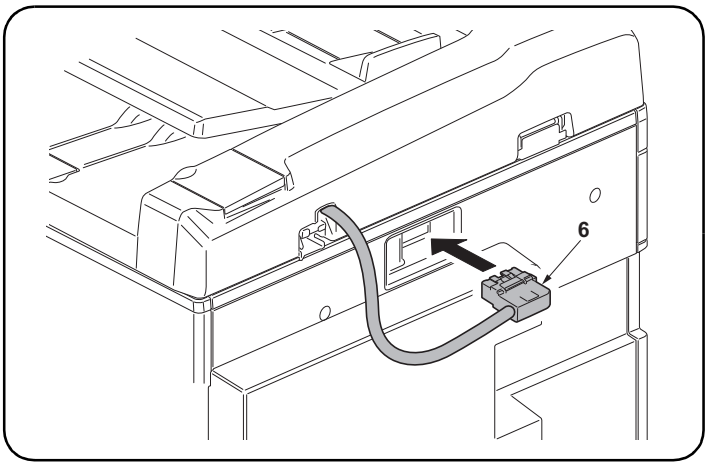
7. 将带有尼龙带的原稿垫（B）朝上，放在原稿玻璃板上。
将原稿垫（B）成 90° 角的部分对准原稿玻璃板的左内角。
8. 轻轻地放下 DP(A)，使原稿垫（B）粘在 DP 背面上。

フィルム貼り付け

5. スリットガラス（3）を乾拭き清掃する。
6. フィルム（F）の端をスリットガラス（3）の端（4）に合わせ、基準値の範囲内に貼り付ける。

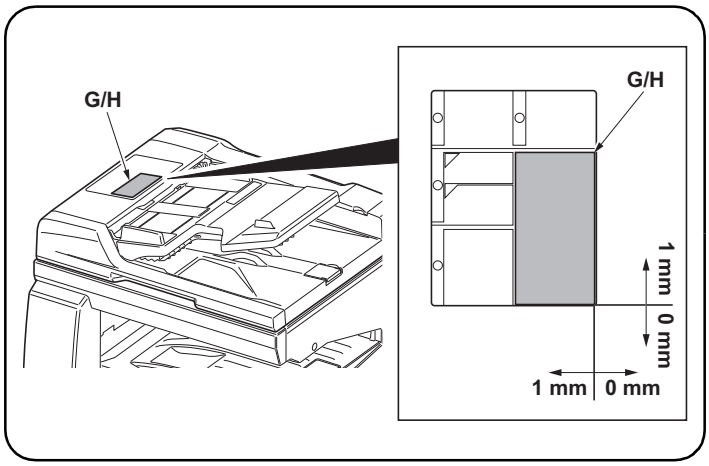
原稿マットの取り付け

7. 原稿マット（B）をマジックテープが付いている面を上にして、原稿ガラス上に置く。
原稿マット（B）は、90° になっている角を原稿指示板の左奥（5）に合わせること。
8. DP 本体（A）をゆっくりと下ろし、原稿マット（B）を DP 裏面に貼り付ける。



Connecting the signal cable

9. Connect the connector (6) of the signal cable to the machine.
Do not twist the signal cable.



Adhering the labels

10. After cleaning with alcohol, adhere operation label A (G) or B (H) of the corresponding language.

Connexion du câble de signal

9. Branchez le connecteur (6) du câble de signal sur la machine.
Attention à ne pas tordre le câble de signal.

Apposition des étiquettes

10. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, apposez l'étiquette de précautions [Veillez à ne pas laisser d'originaux dans le bac d'éjection.] (F), l'étiquette de précautions [Face vers le Haut] (G), et l'étiquette [Procédure d'utilisation] (H) dans la langue voulue.

Conexión del cable de señal

9. Conecte el conector (6) del cable de señal en la máquina.
No tuerza el cable de señal.

Pegado de etiquetas

10. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta de precaución [No deje documentos en el equipo.] (F), etiqueta de precaución [Cara Arriba] (G) y la etiqueta [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (H) del correspondiente idioma.

Anschließen des Signalkabels

9. Den Stecker (6) des Signalkabels an die Maschine anschließen.
Das Signalkabel nicht verdrehen.

Anbringen der Aufkleber

10. Nach der Reinigung der Klebeflächen mit Alkohol den Warnaufkleber [Lassen Sie keine Originale auf dem Gerät liegen.] (F), den Warnaufkleber [Vorderseite Oben] (G) und den Aufkleber [Bedienungsverfahren] (H) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

Collegamento del cavo del segnale

9. Collegare il connettore (6) del cavo del segnale alla macchina.
Non attorcigliare il cavo del segnale.

Applicazione delle etichette

10. Dopo avere pulito con alcol, applicare l'etichetta di avvertenza [Non lasciare i documenti sul dispositivo.] (F), l'etichetta di avvertenza [Faccia Insú] (G) e l'etichetta [Procedure di funzionamento] (H) redatte nella lingua corrispondente.

连接信号线

9. 连接信号线的插头 (6)。
请勿缠绕信号线。

贴上标签

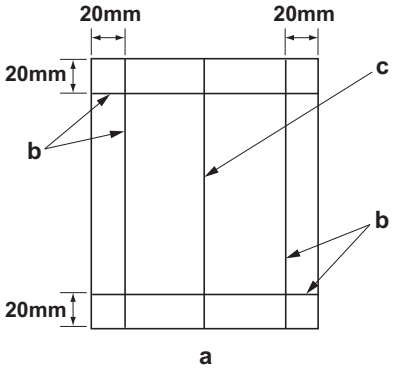
10. 用酒精清洁后，贴上对应语言的操作标签 (G) (H)。

信号線の接続

9. 信号線のコネクタ (6) を接続する。
信号線をねじらないこと。

ラベルの貼り付け

10. アルコール清掃後、該当する言語の操作ラベル A(G) またはラベル B(H) を、基準値の範囲内に貼り付ける。



Checking the operation

1. To check the machine operation, prepare an A3 size original (a) where four lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges and one line (c) is drawn at the center.
2. Connect the power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on. Load A3 paper into the 1st level cassette.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP original table and run a proof copy. Check the operation and the copy example.
4. If the gap between the original (a) and the copy example exceeds the reference value, perform adjustments. For the procedure, see the following pages.
Before checking image from the DP, check and adjust image from the machine. For details, see the service manual of the machine.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de la machine, préparez un original de format A3 (a) sur lequel quatre lignes (b) ont été tracées à 20 mm des bords, et sur lequel une ligne (c) a été tracée au centre.
2. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
3. Placez l'original (a) dans le DP et effectuez une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Si l'écart entre l'original (a) et l'exemple de copie est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez les réglages nécessaires. Pour la marche à suivre, reportez-vous aux pages suivantes.
Avant de vérifier l'image sur le DP, vérifier et régler l'image sur la machine. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel de service de la machine.

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Para verificar el funcionamiento de la máquina, prepare un origina de tamaño A3 (a) donde se dibujan cuatro líneas (b) a 20 mm de los bordes y una línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y una copia de muestra.
4. Si la separación entre el original (a) y la copia de muestra supera el valor de referencia, haga los ajustes. Para el procedimiento, vea las siguientes páginas.
Antes de verificar la imagen del DP, verifique y ajuste la imagen desde la máquina. Para detalles, vea el manual de servicio de la máquina.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Um den Betrieb der Maschine zu prüfen, ein A3-Original (a) vorbereiten, das vier Linien (b) im Abstand von 20 mm von den Kanten und eine Linie (c) in der Mitte aufweist.
2. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) in den DP einlegen und eine Probekopie anfertigen, um den Betrieb und das Kopienmuster zu prüfen.
4. Falls die Abweichung zwischen dem Original (a) und dem Kopienmuster den Bezugswert überschreitet, müssen Einstellungen durchgeführt werden. Das Verfahren ist auf den folgenden Seiten beschrieben.
Bevor das Bild vom DP geprüft wird, ist das Bild von der Maschine zu prüfen und einzustellen. Einzelheiten sind der Wartungsanleitung der Maschine zu entnehmen.

Controllo del funzionamento

1. Per controllare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare un originale di formato A3 (a) dove sono state tracciate quattro linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi e una linea (c) centrale.
2. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
3. Collocare l'originale (a) nel DP e fare una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento della macchina e l'esempio di copia.
4. Se la differenza tra l'originale (a) e la copia di prova supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le regolazioni. Per la procedura, leggere le seguenti pagine.
Prima di controllare l'immagine dal DP, controllare e regolare l'immagine dalla macchina. Per ulteriori dettagli, leggere il manuale d'istruzioni della macchina.

操作确认

1. 准备好 A3 尺寸的纸张（在边起 20㎜ 处划有 4 条线 (b)）和操作确认用原稿 (a)（在纸张中心划有 1 条线 (c)）。
2. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。将 A3 纸张装入第一纸盒。
3. 将原稿 (a) 放在 DP 上，进行测试复印。
   确认操作和测印件的状态。
4. 如果原稿 (a) 和测印件的偏移超过标准值时，需要进行调整。（调整方法参照下页以后）
   确认和调整机器主机的图像后，必须对 DP 图像进行确认。详情请参照机器主机的维修手册。

動作確認

1. A3 サイズの用紙の端から 20㎜ の位置に線 (b)4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1 本を引いた動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。カセット 1 段目に A3 用紙を入れる。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP の原稿テーブルにセットし、テストコピーをおこなう。
   動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルのずれが基準値から外れている場合は調整をおこなう。(調整方法は、次ページ以降を参照)
   機械本体の画像確認および調整をおこなってから、DP の画像確認をおこなうこと。詳細は機械本体のサービスマニュアル参照

<<Checking image from the DP>>

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 8.	<Reference value>	Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mm
For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 11.	<Reference value>	Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mm
For checking the magnification, see page 15.	<Reference value>	Within ±1.5%
For checking the leading edge timing, see page 17.	<Reference value>	Simplex copying: within ±2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±2.0 mm
For checking the center line, see page 19.	<Reference value>	Simplex copying: within ±2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±3.0 mm

When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.
For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 21.

<<Vérification de l'image sur le DP>>

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 8.	<Valeur de référence>	Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 11.	<Valeur de référence>	Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 15.	<Valeur de référence>	±1,5% max.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 17.	<Valeur de référence>	Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±2,0 mm max.
Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 19.	<Valeur de référence>	Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max.

Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois. Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 21.

<<Verificación de la imagen del DP>>

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 8.	<Valor de referencia>	Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm
Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 11.	<Valor de referencia>	Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm
Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 15.	<Valor de referencia>	Dentro de ±1,5 %
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 17.	<Valor de referencia>	Copia simple: dentro de ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±2,0 mm
Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 19.	<Valor de referencia>	Copia simple: dentro de ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±3,0 mm

Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.
Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 21.

<<Überprüfen des Bilds vom DP>>

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 8.	<Bezugswert>	Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 11.	<Bezugswert>	Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 15.	<Bezugswert>	Innerhalb ±1,5 %
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 17.	<Bezugswert>	Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 19.	<Bezugswert>	Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 21.

<<Controllo di immagine dal DP>>

Verificare che la regolazione avvenga nel seguente ordine. Altrimenti, la regolazione non potrà essere seguita correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 8.	<Valore di riferimento>	Copia simplex:entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm
Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 11.	<Valore di riferimento>	Copia simplex:entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm
Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 15.	<Valore di riferimento>	Entro ±1,5%
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 17.	<Valore di riferimento>	Copia simplex:entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±2,0 mm
Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 19.	<Valore di riferimento>	Copia simplex:entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±3,0 mm

Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente. Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 21.

<< 图像确认 >>

必须按照以下步骤进行调整，否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

•确认前端倾斜度　第 8 页	〈标准值〉	单面：± 3.0mm 以内、双面：± 4.0mm 以内
•确认后端倾斜度　第 11 页	〈标准值〉	单面：± 3.0mm 以内、双面：± 4.0mm 以内
•确认等倍值　第 15 页	〈标准值〉	± 1.5%以内
•确认前端定时调整　第 17 页	〈标准值〉	单面：± 2.0mm 以内、双面：± 2.0mm 以内
•确认中心线　第 19 页	〈标准值〉	单面：± 2.0mm 以内、双面：± 3.0mm 以内

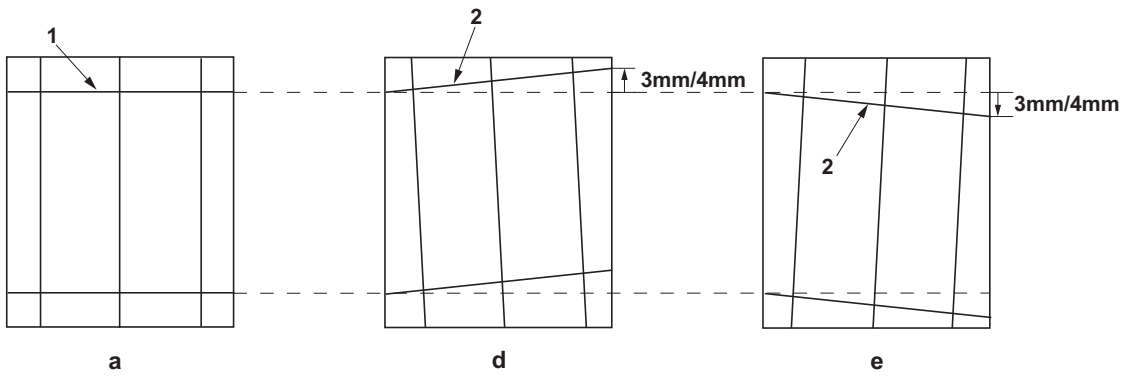
使用调整用原稿功能时，可以同时自动进行等倍值、前端定时以及中心线的调整。
•通过调整用原稿进行自动调整　第 21 页

<< 画像の確認 >>

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

・先端斜め確認	8 ページ	**＜基準値＞片面：± 3.0mm 以内、両面：± 4.0mm 以内**
・後端斜め確認	11 ページ	**＜基準値＞片面：± 3.0mm 以内、両面：± 4.0mm 以内**
・等倍度確認	15 ページ	**＜基準値＞± 1.5% 以内**
・先端タイミング確認	17 ページ	**＜基準値＞片面：± 2.0mm 以内、両面：± 2.0mm 以内**
・センターライン確認	19 ページ	**＜基準値＞片面：± 2.0mm 以内、両面：± 3.0mm 以内**

調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。
・調整用原稿による自動調整　21 ページ



Checking the angle of leading edge
Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

Vérification de l'angle du bord avant
Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

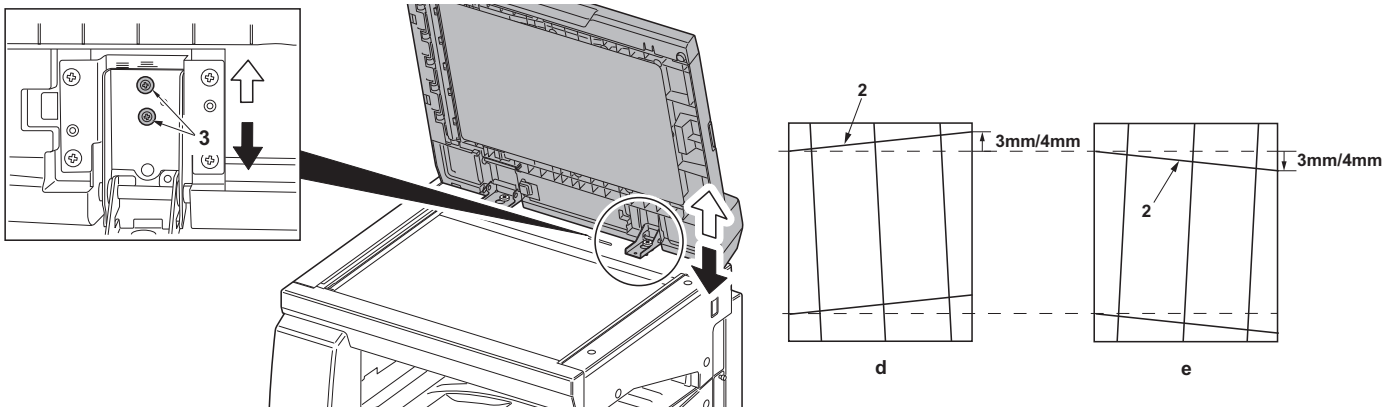
Verificación del ángulo del borde superior
Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante
Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale
Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

确认前端倾斜度
确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 3.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 4.0㎜ 以内

先端斜め確認
原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 3.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 4.0㎜ 以内



Adjusting the DP

1. Open the DP and loosen two adjusting screws (3) of right hinge.
2. Adjust the position of the DP.
For copy example (d): Move the DP down (➡).
For copy example (e): Move the DP up (⇨).
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm
3. Tighten two adjusting screws (3).
4. Carry out the tasks in steps 7 and 8 on page 4.
Briefly remove the original mat (B) from the DP main unit (A) and then re-attach the original mat (B) by following the steps

Réglage du DP

1. Ouvrez le DP et desserrez les deux vis de réglage (3) de la charnière droite.
2. Réglez la position du DP.
Pour l'exemple de copie (d): Déplacez le DP vers le bas (➡).
Pour l'exemple de copie (e): Déplacez le DP vers le haut (⇨).
Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm
3. Resserrez les deux vis de réglage (3).
4. Procédez aux opérations des étapes7 et 8 de la page 4.
Enlevez brièvement le tapis d'original (B) de l'unité principale DP (A) et réinstallez le tapis d'original (B) en procédant de la manière suivante.

Ajuste del DP

1. Abra el DP y afloje los dos tornillos de ajuste (3) de la bisagra derecha.
2. Ajuste la posición del DP.
Para la copia de muestra (d): Mueva el DP abajo (➡).
Para la copia de muestra (e): Mueva el DP arriba (⇨).
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm
3. Apriete los tornillos de ajuste (3).
4. Realice las tareas descritas en los pasos 7 y 8 de la página 4.
Quite, brevemente, la plancha de original (B) de la unidad principal DP (A) y, a continuación, vuelva a colocar la plancha de original (B) de acuerdo al siguiente procedimiento.

Einstellen des DP

1. Den DP öffnen, und die zwei Einstellschrauben (3) des rechten Scharniers lösen.
2. Die Position des DP einstellen.
Für Kopienmuster (d): Den DP absenken (➡).
Für Kopienmuster (e): Den DP anheben (⇨).
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm
3. Die zwei Einstellschrauben (3) wieder festziehen.
4. Die Arbeiten der Schritte 7 und 8 auf Seite 4 ausführen.
Die Originalmatte (B) kurz aus der DP-Haupteinheit (A) herausnehmen und dann die Originalmatte (B) wieder mit folgenden Schritten anbringen.

Regolazione del DP

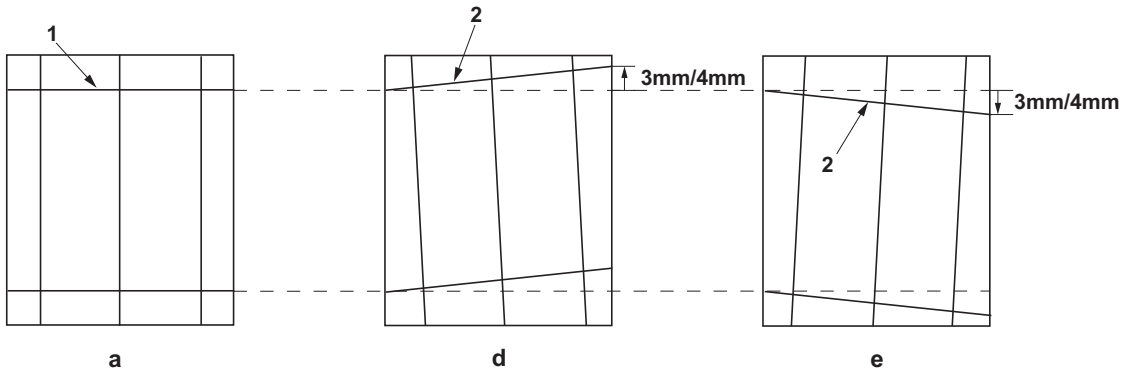
1. Aprire il DP e allentare le due viti di regolazione (3) della cerniera destra.
2. Regolare la posizione del DP.
Per un esempio di copia (d): Muovere il DP verso il basso (➡).
Per un esempio di copia (e): Muovere il DP verso l'alto (⇨).
Variazione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm
3. Stringere le due viti di regolazione (3).
4. Effettuare i lavori riportati nei punti 7 e 8 a pagina 4.
Rimuovere temporaneamente il coprioriginale (B) dall'unità principale del DP (A) e quindi ricollocare il coprioriginale (B) seguendo i passi.

调整 DP

1. 打开 DP，松弛铰链右侧的 2 个调整螺丝 (3)。
2. 调整 DP 的位置。
测印件 (d) 时：将 DP 盖向下 (➡) 移动。
测印件 (e) 时：将 DP 盖向上 (⇨) 移动。
每 1 格的移动量: 约 0.5mm
3. 紧固 2 个调整螺丝 (3)。
4. 执行第 4 页中的步骤 7 和 8。
暂时从 DP (A) 主机上拆下原稿垫(B)，然后按步骤重新安装原稿垫(B)。

DP の調整

1. DP を開き、ヒンジ右側の調整ビス (3)2 本をゆるめる。
2. DP の位置を調整する。
コピーサンプル (d) の場合:DP 本体を下(➡)へ動かす。
コピーサンプル (e) の場合:DP 本体を上(⇨)へ動かす。
1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約 0.5mm
3. 調整ビス (3)2 本を締める。
4. 4 ページの手順 7.8 の作業を行う。
原稿マット(B)を DP 本体(A)から一旦、取り外し、手順に従い、原稿マット(B)を、再度貼り付けること。



5. Make a proof copy again.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

---

5. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
6. Répétez les étapes 1 à 5 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

---

5. Haga otra copia de prueba.
6. Repita los pasos 1 a 5 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

---

5. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
6. Die Schritte 1 bis 5 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

---

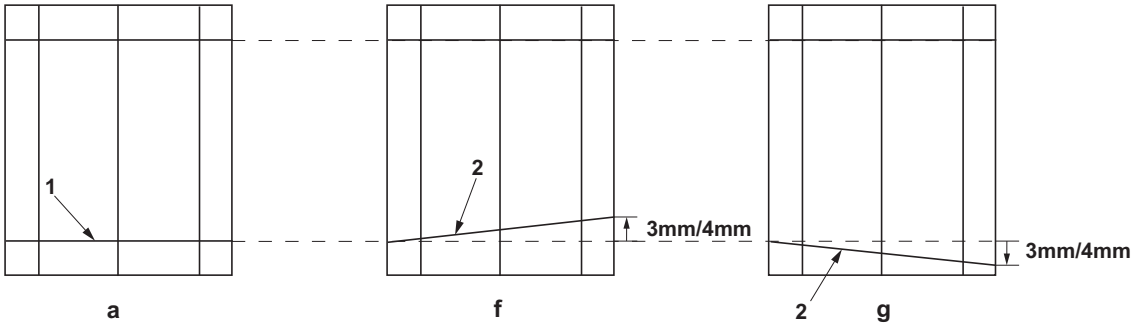
5. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
6. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 5 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

---

5. 再次进行测试复印。
6. 反复操作步骤 1 ～ 5，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 3.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 4.0㎜ 以内

---

5. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
6. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 5 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 3.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 4.0㎜ 以内



Checking the angle of trailing edge
Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière
Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

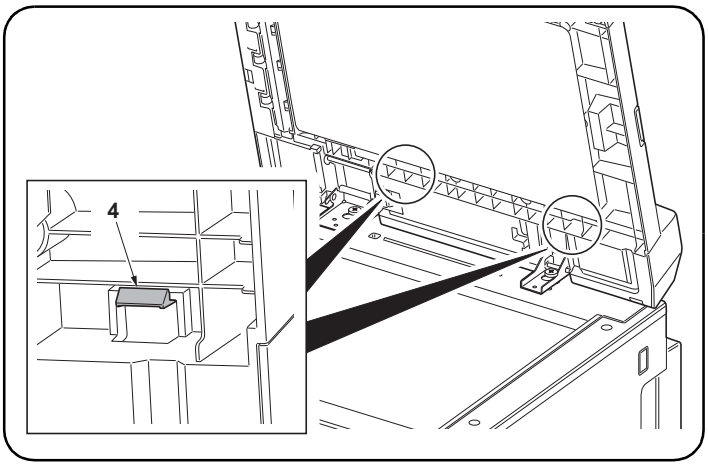
Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior
Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante
Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita
Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

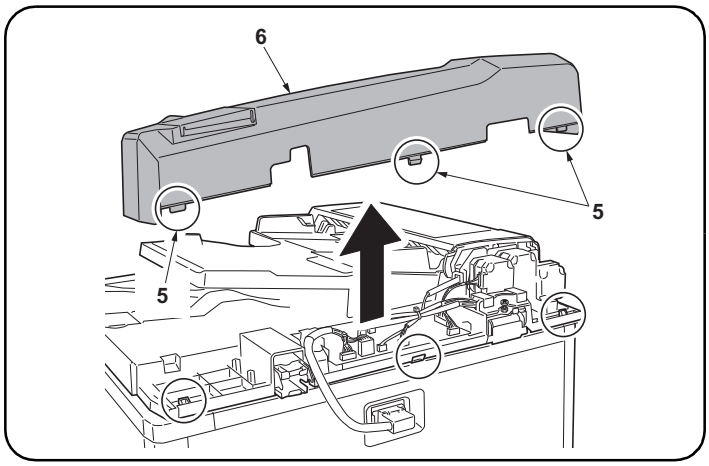
确认后端倾斜度
确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 3.0mm 以内
双面时：± 4.0mm 以内

後端斜め確認
原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 3.0mm 以内
両面の場合:± 4.0mm 以内



Adjusting the DP

1. Open the DP and release two latches (4) using a flat-head screwdriver.



2. Release three latches (5) at the rear of the DP using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the cover (6).

Réglage du DP

1. Ouvrez le DP et libérez les deux verrous (4) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate.

2. Libérez les trois verrous (5) situés à l'arrière du DP en utilisant un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le capot (6).

Ajuste del DP

1. Abra el DP y suelte los dos pestillos (4) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana.

2. Suelte los tres pestillos (5) en el lado trasero del DP utilizando un destornillador de punta plana para desmontar la cubierta (6).

Einstellen des DP

1. Den DP öffnen, und die zwei Rasten (4) mit einem Flachschraubenzieher lösen.

2. Die drei Rasten (5) auf der Rückseite des DP mit einem Flachschraubenzieher lösen, um die Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

Regolazione del DP

1. Aprire il DP e rilasciare i due fermi (4) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta.

2. Rilasciare i tre fermi (5) sul retro del DP utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il coperchio (6).

调整 DP

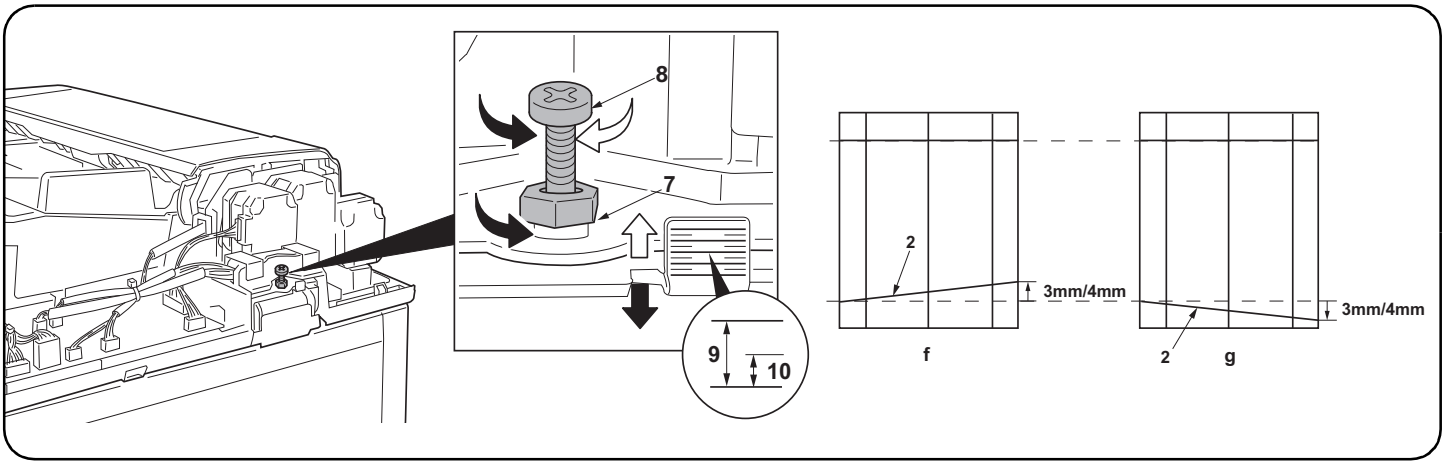
1. 打开 DP，用一字形螺丝刀等松开 2 处嵌入部 (4)。

2. 用一字形螺丝刀等松开 DP 后侧的 3 处嵌入部 (5)，并拆下盖板 (6)。

DP の調整

1. DP を開き、はめ込み (4)2 箇所をマイナスドライバなどで解除する。

2. DP 後側のはめ込み (5)3 箇所をマイナスドライバなどで解除し、カバー (6) を取り外す。



3. Adjust the height of DP.
Loosen the nut (7).
For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (8). (➡)
For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (8). (⇨)
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm (9)/ Approx. 0.5 mm (10)
Retighten the nut (7).

4. Refit the cover (6) removed in step 2.
5. Carry out the tasks in steps 7 and 8 on page 4.
Briefly remove the original mat (B) from the DP main unit and then re-attach the original mat (B) by following the steps

---

3. Réglez la hauteur du DP.
Desserrez l'écrou (7).
Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (8). (➡)
Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (8). (⇨)
Quantité de changement par pas: environ 1 mm (9) / environ 0,5 mm (10)
Resserrez l'écrou (7).

4. Remettez en place le capot (6) retiré auparavant à l'étape 2.
5. Procédez aux opérations des étapes7 et 8 de la page 4.
Enlevez brièvement le tapis d'original (B) de l'unité principale DP (A) et réinstallez le tapis d'original (B) en procédant de la manière suivante.

---

3. Ajuste la altura del DP.
Afloje la tuerca (7).
Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (8). (➡)
Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (8). (⇨)
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 1 mm (9)/aprox. 0,5 mm (10)
Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (7).

4. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (6) desmontada en el paso 2.
5. Realice las tareas descritas en los pasos 7 y 8 de la página 4.
Quite, brevemente, la plancha de original (B) de la unidad principal DP (A) y, a continuación, vuelva a colocar la plancha de original (B) de acuerdo al siguiente procedimiento.

---

3. Die Höhe des DP einstellen.
Lösen Sie die Mutter (7).
Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (8). (➡)
Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (8) festziehen. (⇨)
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: ca. 1 mm (9)/ca. 0,5 mm (10)
Ziehen Sie die Mutter (7) wieder fest.

4. Die in Schritt 2 entfernte Abdeckung (6) wieder anbringen.
5. Die Arbeiten der Schritte 7 und 8 auf Seite 4 ausführen.
Die Originalmatte (B) kurz aus der DP-Haupteinheit (A) herausnehmen und dann die Originalmatte (B) wieder mit folgenden Schritten anbringen.

---

3. Regolazione dell'altezza del DP
Allentare il dado (7).
Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (8). (➡)
Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (8). (⇨)
Variazione graduale: circa 1 mm (9) / circa 0,5 mm (10)
Stringere di nuovo il dado (7).

4. Reinserire il coperchio (6) rimosso nel passo 2.
5. Effettuare i lavori riportati nei punti 7 e 8 a pagina 4.
Rimuovere temporaneamente il coprioriginale (B) dall'unità principale del DP (A) e quindi ricollocare il coprioriginale (B) seguendo i passi.

---

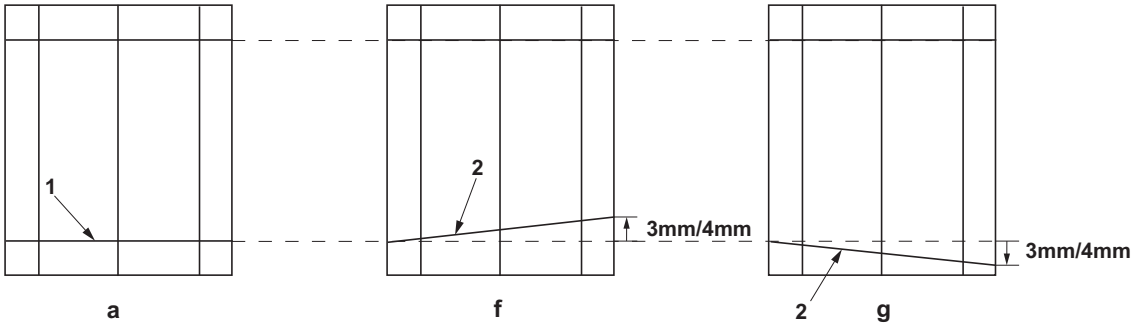
3. 调整 DP 的高度。
松弛螺母 (7)。
测印件 (f) 时：松弛调整螺丝 (8)。(➡)
测印件 (g) 时：紧固调整螺丝 (8)。(⇨)
每 1 格的移动量：约 1㎜(9) / 约 0.5㎜(10)
将螺母 (7) 按原样紧固好。

4. 在步骤 2 拆下的盖板 (6) 按原样装好。
5. 执行第 4 页中的步骤 7 和 8。
暂时从 DP (A) 主机上拆下原稿垫 (B)，然后按步骤重新安装原稿垫 (B)。

---

3. DP の高さを調整する。
ナット (7) をゆるめる。
コピーサンプル (f) の場合:調整ビス (8) をゆるめる。(➡)
コピーサンプル (g) の場合:調整ビス (8) を締める。(⇨)
1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約 1㎜(9) / 約 0.5㎜(10)
ナット (7) を元通り締める。

4. 手順 2 で取り外したカバー(6) を元通り取り付ける。
5. 4 ページの手順 7.8 の作業を行う。
原稿マット(B)を DP 本体(A)から一旦、取り外し、手順に従い、原稿マット(B)を、再度貼り付けること。



6. Make a proof copy again.
7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

---

6. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
7. Répétez les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

---

6. Haga otra copia de prueba.
7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

---

6. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
7. Die Schritte 1 bis 6 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

---

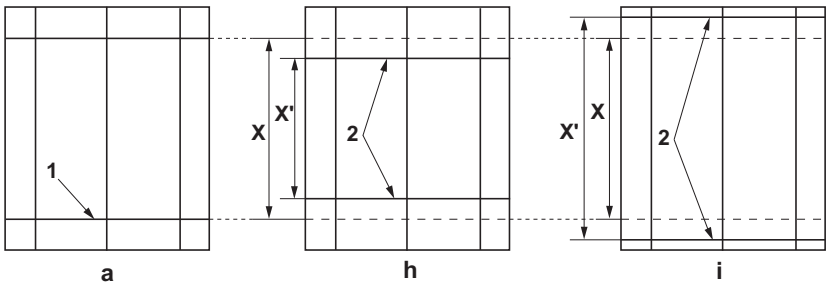
6. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

---

6. 再次进行测试复印。
7. 反复操作步骤 1 ～ 6，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 3.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 4.0㎜ 以内

---

6. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
7. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 3.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 4.0㎜ 以内



$$-1.5\% \leqq \frac{X - X'}{X} \times 100 \leqq +1.5\%$$

Checking the magnification
Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
〈Reference value〉 Within ±1.5 %

If the operation panel is a 7-segment type.
1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U070, use the Exposure key to select "exp.1" and then adjust the upper and lower limits by magnifying the image. Press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy.
For copy example (h): Increase the setting value.
For copy example (i): Decrease the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.2 mm

Vérification de l'agrandissement
Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
〈Valeur de référence〉 ±1,5% max.

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments.
1. Passez en mode de maintenance U070, sélectionnez "exp. 1" à l'aide de la touche d'exposition puis ajuster les bords supérieur et inférieur en agrandissant l'image. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test.
Pour l'exemple de copie (h): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (i): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,2 mm

Verificación del cambio de tamaño
Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
〈Valor de referencia〉 Dentro de ±1,5 %

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo de 7 segmentos.
1. EnEntre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U070, utilice la tecla de exposición para seleccionar "exp. 1" y, a continuación, ajuste los límites superior e inferior cambiando de tamaño la imagen. Presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (h): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (i): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,2 mm

Überprüfen der Vergrößerung
Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
〈Bezugswert〉 Innerhalb ±1,5 %

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt.
1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U070 setzen, mit der Belichtungstaste "exp. 1" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze durch Vergrößern des Bilds einstellen. Die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (h): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Für Kopienmuster (i): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,2 mm

Controllo dell'ingrandimento
Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
〈Valore di riferimento〉 Entro ±1,5 %

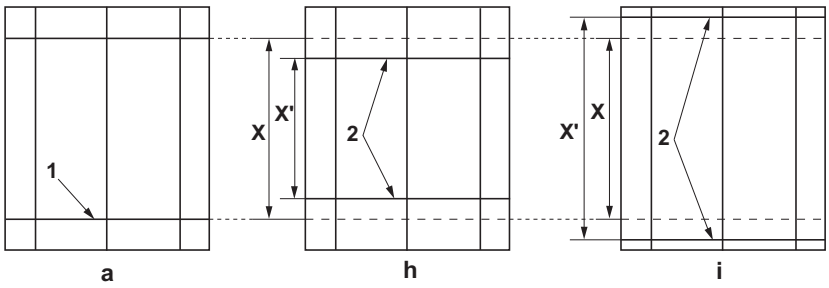
Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti.
1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U070, usare il tasto di esposizione per selezionare "exp.1" e quindi regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore tramite l'ingrandimento immagine. Premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (h): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (i): Diminuire il valore dell' impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,2 mm

确认等倍值
确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉± 1.5%以内

如果操作面板采用七段显示屏
1. 设定为 U070 维护模式，按浓淡控制键选择“exp.1”，然后放大图像，调整上、下限值。按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (h) 时：提高设定值。
测印件 (i) 时：降低设定值。
1 级的移动量：约 0.2㎜

DP 等倍度調整
原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞± 1.5% 以内

操作パネルが 7 seg タイプの場合
1. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、濃度調整キーを“exp.1”を選択し画像倍率により上下限調整を行う。割込みキーを押し、テストコピーにて画像確認をする。
コピーサンプル (h) の場合:設定値を上げる
コピーサンプル (i) の場合:設定値を下げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.2㎜



$$-1.5\% \leqq \frac{X - X'}{X} \times 100 \leqq +1.5\%$$

If the operation panel is an LCD type.

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U070, select "CONVEY SPEED1" and use image magnification and paper cassette level selection to adjust the upper and lower limits. Then press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy
For copy example (h): Increase the setting value.
For copy example (i): Decrease the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.2 mm

2. Make a proof copy again.

3. Repeat steps 1 to 2 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
〈Reference value〉 Within ±1.5 %

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U070, sélectionnez "CONVEY SPEED 1" puis ajustez les bords supérieur et inférieur à l'aide des fonctions d'agrandissement de l'image et de sélection du niveau de la cassette à papier. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test.
Pour l'exemple de copie (h): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (i): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,2 mm

2. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

3. Répétez les étapes 1 à 2 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
〈Valeur de référence〉 ±1,5% max.

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo LCD.

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U070, seleccione "CONVEY SPEED1", y utilice cambio de tamaño de la imagen y selección del nivel de casete de papel para ajustar los límites superior e inferior. A continuación, presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (h): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (i): Reduzca el valor de configuración.Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,2 mm

2. Haga otra copia de prueba.

3. Repita los pasos 1 a 2 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
〈Valor de referencia〉 Dentro de ±1,5 %

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt.

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U070 setzen, "CONVEY SPEED1" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze mittels Bildvergrößerung und Wahl der Papierkassettenstufe einstellen. Dann die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (h): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Für Kopienmuster (i): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,2 mm

2. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

3. Die Schritte 1 bis 2 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
〈Bezugswert〉 Innerhalb ±1,5 %

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U070, selezionare "CONVEY SPEED1" e usare l'ingrandimento immagine e la selezione del livello del cassetto carta per regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore. Quindi premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (h): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (i): Diminuire il valore dell' impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,2 mm

2. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

3. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 2 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
〈Valore di riferimento〉 Entro ±1,5 %

如果操作面板采用 LCD 屏

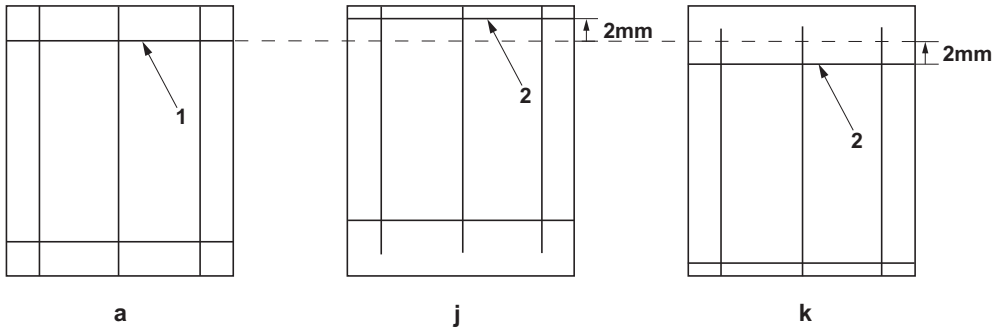
1. 设定为 U070 维护模式，选择“CONVEY SPEED1”并通过选择图像放大倍率及纸盒来调整上、下限。然后按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (h) 时：提高设定值。
测印件 (i) 时：降低设定值。
1 级的移动量：约 0.2㎜

2. 再次进行测试复印。
3. 反复操作步骤 1 ～ 2，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
〈标准值〉± 1.5%以内

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合

1. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、“CONVEY SPEED1”を選択し画像倍率と用紙段選択により、上下限調整を行い割込みキーを押し、テストコピーにて画像確認をする
コピーサンプル (h) の場合:設定値を上げる
コピーサンプル (i) の場合:設定値を下げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.2㎜

2. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
3. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで調整手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞± 1.5% 以内



Checking the leading edge timing

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm

If the operation panel is a 7-segment type.

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U071, use the Exposure key to select "exp.1" and then adjust the upper and lower limits by magnifying the image. Press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy.
For copy example (j): Decrease the setting value.
For copy example (k): Increase the setting valueue
Amount of change per step: 0.2 mm

Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±2,0 mm max.

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments.

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U071, sélectionnez "exp. 1" à l'aide de la touche d'exposition puis ajuster les bords supérieur et inférieur en agrandissant l'image. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test.
Pour l'exemple de copie (j): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (k): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,2 mm

Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±2,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±2,0 mm

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo de 7 segmentos.

1. EnEntre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U071, utilice la tecla de exposición para seleccionar "exp. 1" y, a continuación, ajuste los límites superior e inferior cambiando de tamaño la imagen. Presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (j): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (k):Aumente el valor de configuración.
Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,2 mm

Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt.

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U071 setzen, mit der Belichtungstaste "exp. 1" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze durch Vergrößern des Bilds einstellen. Die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (j): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Für Kopienmuster (k):Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,2 mm

Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±2,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±2,0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti.

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U071, usare il tasto di esposizione per selezionare "exp.1" e quindi regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore tramite l'ingrandimento immagine. Premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (j): Diminuire il valore d'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (k): Aumentare il valore d'impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,2 mm

确认前端定时调整

确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 2.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 2.0㎜ 以内

如果操作面板采用七段显示屏

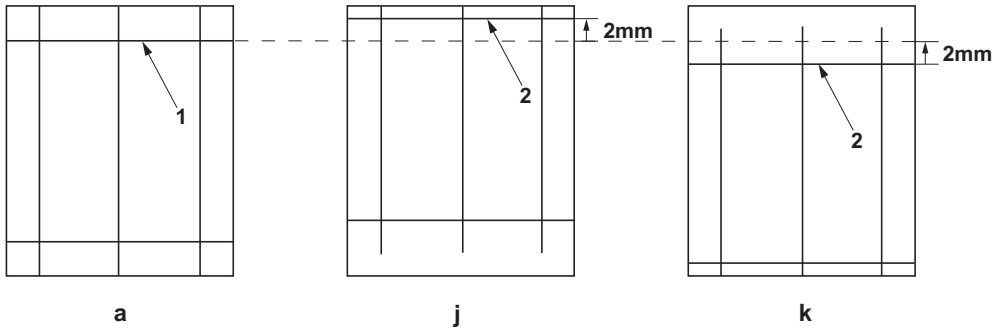
1. 设定为 U071 维护模式，按浓淡控制键选择“exp.1”，然后放大图像，调整上、下限值。按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (i) 时：降低设定值。
测印件 (k) 时：提高设定值。
1 级的移动量：约 0.2㎜

DP 先端タイミング

原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 2.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 2.0㎜ 以内

操作パネルが 7 seg タイプの場合

1. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、濃度調整キーを“exp.1”を選択し、倍率調整キーにより上下限調整を行う。割込みキーを押し、テストコピーにて画像確認をする。
コピーサンプル (j) の場合:設定値を下げる
コピーサンプル (k) の場合:設定値を上げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.2㎜



If the operation panel is an LCD type.

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U071, select "LEAD1" and use image magnification and paper cassette level selection to adjust the upper and lower limits. Then press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy
For copy example (j): Decrease the setting value.
For copy example (k): Increase the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.2 mm

2. Make a proof copy again.

3. Repeat steps 1 to 2 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U071, sélectionnez "LEAD1" puis ajustez les bords supérieur et inférieur à l'aide des fonctions d'agrandissement de l'image et de sélection du niveau de la cassette à papier. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test..
Pour l'exemple de copie (j): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (k): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,2 mm

2. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

3. Répétez les étapes 1 à 2 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±2,0 mm max.

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo LCD

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U071, seleccione "LEAD1", y utilice cambio de tamaño de la imagen y selección del nivel de casete de papel para ajustar los límites superior e inferior. A continuación, presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (j): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (k): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,2 mm

2. Haga otra copia de prueba.

3. Repita los pasos 1 a 2 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±2,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±2,0 mm

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt.

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U071 setzen, "LEAD 1" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze mittels Bildvergrößerung und Wahl der Papierkassettenstufe einstellen. Dann die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (j): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Für Kopienmuster (k): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,2 mm

2. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

3. Die Schritte 1 bis 2 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U071, selezionare "LEAD1" e usare l'ingrandimento immagine e la selezione del livello del cassetto carta per regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore. Quindi premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (j): Diminuire il valore d'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (k): Aumentare il valore d'impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,2 mm

2. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

3. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 2 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±2,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±2,0 mm

如果操作面板采用 LCD 屏

1. 设定为 U071 维护模式，选择"LEAD1"并通过选择图像放大倍率及纸盒来调整上、下限。然后按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (j) 时：降低设定值。
测印件 (k) 时：提高设定值。
1 级的移动量：约 0.2㎜

2. 再次进行测试复印。

3. 反复操作步骤 1 ～ 2，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 2.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 2.0㎜ 以内

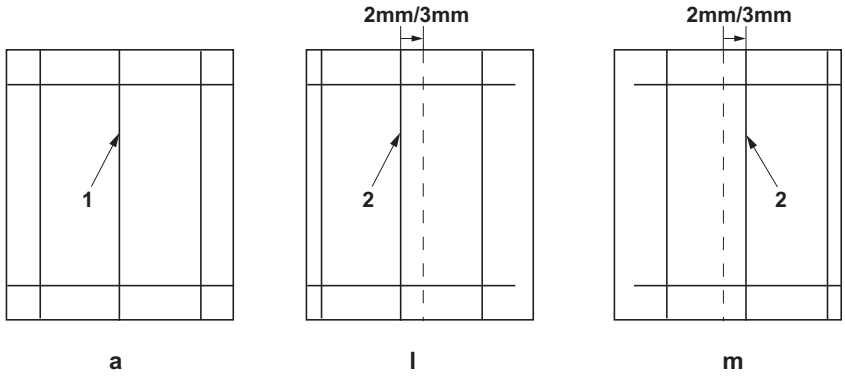
操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合

1. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、"LEAD1"を選択し画像倍率と用紙段選択により、上下限調整を行い割込みキーを押し、テストコピーにて画像確認をする
コピーサンプル (j) の場合:設定値を下げる
コピーサンプル (k) の場合:設定値を上げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.2㎜

2. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

3. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、調整手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。

＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 2.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 2.0㎜ 以内



Checking the center line

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

If the operation panel is a 7-segment type.

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U072, use the Exposure key to select "exp.1" and then adjust the upper and lower limits by magnifying the image. Press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy
For copy example (l): Increase the setting value.
For copy example (m): Decrease the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.15mm

Vérification de la ligne médiane

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max.

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments.

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U072, sélectionnez "exp. 1" à l'aide de la touche d'exposition puis ajuster les bords supérieur et inférieur en agrandissant l'image. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test.
Pour l'exemple de copie (l): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (m): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,15 mm

Verificación de la línea central

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±2,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±3,0 mm

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo de 7 segmentos.

1. EnEntre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U072, utilice la tecla de exposición para seleccionar "exp. 1" y, a continuación, ajuste los límites superior e inferior cambiando de tamaño la imagen. Presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (l): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (m): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,15 mm

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mml

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt.

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U072 setzen, mit der Belichtungstaste "exp. 1" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze durch Vergrößern des Bilds einstellen. Die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (l): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Für Kopienmuster (m): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,15 mm

Controllo della linea centrale

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±2,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±3,0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti.

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U072, usare il tasto di esposizione per selezionare "exp.1" e quindi regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore tramite l'ingrandimento immagine. Premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (l): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (m): Diminuire il valore dell' impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,15 mm

确认中心线

确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 2.0mm 以内
双面时：± 3.0mm 以内

如果操作面板采用七段显示屏

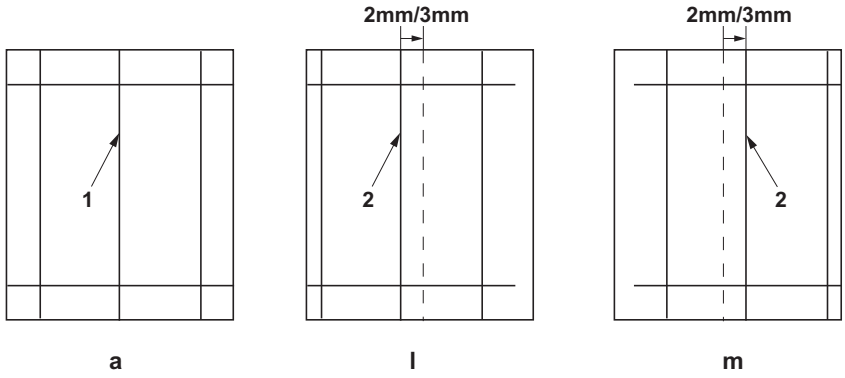
1. 设定为 U072 维护模式，按浓淡控制键选择“exp.1”，然后放大图像，调整上、下限值。按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (l) 时：提高设定值。
测印件 (m) 时：降低设定值。
1 级的移动量：0.15mm

DP センターライン調整

原稿 (a) のセンターライン (1) とコピーサンプルのセンターライン (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 2.0mm 以内
両面の場合:± 3.0mm 以内

操作パネルが 7 seg タイプの場合

1. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、濃度調整キーを“exp1”を選択し、倍率調整により上下限調整を行う。割込みキーを押し、テストコピーにて画像確認をする。
コピーサンプル (l) の場合:設定値を上げる
コピーサンプル (m) の場合:設定値を下げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.15mm



If the operation panel is an LCD type.

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U072, select "1sided" and use image magnification and paper cassette level selection to adjust the upper and lower limits. Then press the Interrupt key and check the image in the proof copy
For copy example (l): Increase the setting value.
For copy example (m): Decrease the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.15 mm

2. Make a proof copy again.

3. Repeat steps 1 to 2 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±2.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U072, sélectionnez "1sided" puis ajustez les bords supérieur et inférieur à l'aide des fonctions d'agrandissement de l'image et de sélection du niveau de la cassette à papier. Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption et vérifiez l'image à l'aide d'une copie de test.
Pour l'exemple de copie (l): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (m): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,15 mm

2. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

3. Répétez les étapes 1 à 2 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max.

Si el tablero de controles es del tipo LCD.

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U072, seleccione "1saided", y utilice cambio de tamaño de la imagen y selección del nivel de casete de papel para ajustar los límites superior e inferior. A continuación, presione la tecla de interrupción y compruebe la imagen en la copia de prueba.
Para la copia de muestra (l): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (m): Reduzca el valor de configuración.Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,15 mm

2. Haga otra copia de prueba.

3. Repita los pasos 1 a 2 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±2,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±3,0 mm

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt.

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U072 setzen, "1saided" wählen und dann die obere und untere Grenze mittels Bildvergrößerung und Wahl der Papierkassettenstufe einstellen. Dann die Unterbrechungstaste drücken und das Bild an der Probekopie überprüfen.
Für Kopienmuster (l): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Für Kopienmuster (m): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,15 mm

2. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

3. Die Schritte 1 bis 2 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±2,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD.

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U072, selezionare "1saided" e usare l'ingrandimento immagine e la selezione del livello del cassetto carta per regolare i limiti superiore e inferiore. Quindi premere il tasto di interruzione e controllare l'immagine nella copia di prova.
Per un esempio di copia (l): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (m): Diminuire il valore dell' impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,15 mm

2. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

3. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 2 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±2,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±3,0 mm

如果操作面板采用 LCD 屏

1. 设定为 U072 维护模式，选择“1saided”并通过选择图像放大倍率及纸盒来调整上、下限。然后按插印键，确认测试复印的图像。
测印件 (l) 时：提高设定值。
测印件 (m) 时：降低设定值。
1 级的移动量：约 0.15㎜

2. 再次进行测试复印。

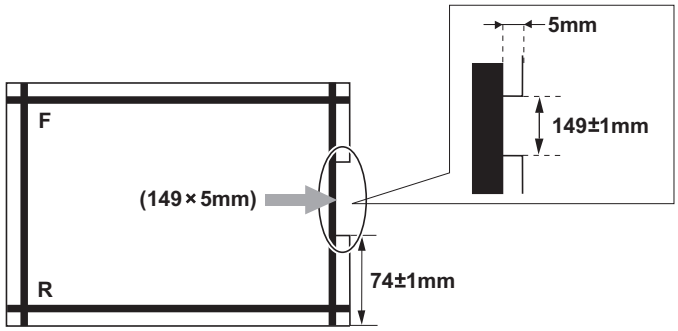
3. 反复操作步骤 1 ～ 2，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
〈标准值〉
单面时：± 2.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 3.0㎜ 以内

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合

1. メンテナンスモードU072 をセットし、“1sided”を選択し画像倍率と用紙段選択により、上下限調整を行う。割込みキーを押しテストコピーにて画像確認をする。
コピーサンプル (l) の場合:設定値を上げる
コピーサンプル (m) の場合:設定値を下げる
1 ステップの変化量:約 0.15㎜

2. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

3. コピーサンプルのセンターライン (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞
片面の場合:± 2.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合:± 3.0㎜ 以内



Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment

Before performing this adjustment, be sure to adjust the angle of leading edge and the angle of trailing edge (see pages 8 and 11).

1. Set the mode to Maintenance Mode U076 and cut off the trailing edge of the adjustment original. Then place it on the DP main unit original table with the side on which F and R are printed facing upwards
2. Press the Start button to feed in the loaded original. The magnification, leading edge timing and center line are then automatically adjusted.
3. If the results are OK and the operation panel is a 7-segment type: The following is displayed. (Item 1: Gd, Item 2: 0, Item 3: 0, Item 4: 0)
   Adjustments of the DP magnification, DP leading edge timing and DP center line are performed automatically.If the operation panel is an LCD type: (Numerical values for CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ and DP CENTER are displayed.)
4. If the results are NG and the operation panel is a 7-segment type: (nG1, nG2, nG3) and Item 1 are displayed. If the operation panel is an LCD type: (DATA, NG1, NG2) is displayed.(For details, see the service manual).

Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage

Avant d'effectuer ce réglage, veiller à régler l'angle du bord avant et l'angle du bord arrière (se reporter aux pages 8 et 11).

1. Passez en mode de maintenance U076 et coupez le bord queue de l'original de réglage. Placez-le ensuite sur le plateau de l'original de l'unité principal DP, le côté avec les lettres F et R imprimées regardant vers le haut.
2. Appuyez sur la touche de démarrage pour charger l'original. Le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord tête et de l'axe, s'effectue automatiquement.
3. Si les résultats obtenus sont satisfaisants et si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments : l'affichage doit être le suivant. (Point 1 : Gd, Point 2 : 0. Point 3 : 0, Point 4 : 0).Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD : (l'affichage est celui des valeurs numériques de CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ et DP CENTER.)
4. Si les résultats obtenus sont défectueux et si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments : l'affichage doit être le suivant (nG1, nG2, nG3) et Point 1. Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD : l'affichage est (DATA, NG12, NG2).(Pour plus de détails, reportez-vous au manuel de service).

Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste

Antes de hacer el ajuste, asegúrese de ajustar el ángulo del borde superior y el ángulo del borde inferior (vea las páginas 8 y 11).

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U076 y corte el borde inferior del original para el ajuste. Después, colóquelo en la cubierta de originales de la unidad principal DP, con el lado donde F y R están impresos hacia arriba.
2. Presione la tecla de inicio para alimentar el original cargado. Entonces, el cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y la línea central se ajustan automáticamente..
3. Si el resultado es correcto y el tablero de controles es del tipo de 7 segmentos: Aparecerá lo siguiente: (Ítem 1: Gd, Ítem 2: 0, Item 3: 0, Item 4: 0).
   Si el tablero de controles es del tipo LCD: (Se muestran los valores numéricos para CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ y DP CENTER).
4. .Si el resultado no es correcto y el tablero de controles es del tipo de 7 segmentos: se muestra (nG1, nG2, nG3) e Ítem 1. Si el tablero de controles es del tipo LCD: se muestra (DATA, NG1, NG2).(Para más detalles, vea el manual de servicio).

Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals

Bevor diese Einstellung durchgeführt wird, muss der Winkel der Vorder- und Hinterkante eingestellt werden (siehe die Seiten 8 und 11).

1. Den Modus auf Wartungsmodus U076 setzen und die Endkante des Originals für die Einstellung abschneiden. Dann dieses auf das Originalbedienfeld der DP-Haupteinheit legen, wobei die mit F und R bedruckte Seite nach oben weisen soll..
2. Die Starttaste drücken, um das eingelegte Original einzuziehen. Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie werden dann automatisch eingestellt
3. .Falls die Ergebnisse in Ordnung sind und es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt: Folgendes wird angezeigt. (Punkt1: Gd, Punkt2: 0, Punkt3: 0, Punkt4: 0)
   Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt: (Zahlenwerte für CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ und DP CENTER werden angezeigt.).
4. Falls die Ergebnisse nicht in Ordnung sind und es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt: (nG1, nG2, nG3) und Punkt 1 werden angezeigt. Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt: (DATA, NG1, NG2) wird angezeigt.(Einzelheiten sind der Wartungsanleitung zu entnehmen).

Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale

Prima di eseguire questa regolazione, verificare che l'angolo del bordo principale e l'angolo del bordo di uscita siano regolati (vedere le pagine 8 e 11).

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U076 e tagliare il bordo di uscita dell'originale per la regolazione. Quindi posizionarlo sul piano originale dell'unità principale del DP con il lato su cui sono stampati F e R rivolto verso l'alto.
2. Premere il tasto di avvio per alimentare l'originale caricato. L'ingrandimento, la sincronizzazione del bordo principale e la linea centrale, vengono quindi automaticamente regolati..
3. Se i risultati sono OK e il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti: viene visualizzato quanto segue. (Voce 1: Gd, Voce 2: 0, Voce 3: 0, Voce 4: 0).Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD: (Vengono visualizzati i valori numerici per CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ e DP CENTER.)
   Se i risultati sono NG e il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti: vengono visualizzati (nG1, nG2, nG3) e Voce 1. Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD: viene visualizzato (DATA, NG1, NG2).(Per ulteriori dettagli, vedere il manuale d'istruzioni).

通过调整用原稿进行自动调整

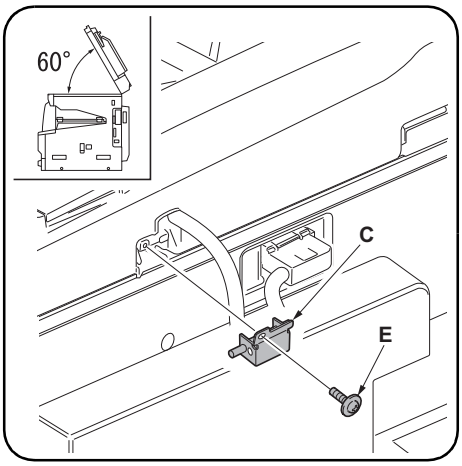
先完成前端倾斜和后端倾斜的调整后，再进行以下操作。（参照第 8 页和第 11 页）

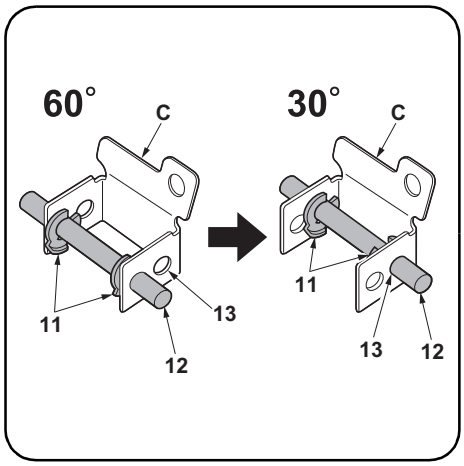
1. 设定为 U076 维护模式并切断调整用原稿的后端。印有 F 和 R 的面朝上，将调整用原稿放在 DP 主机原稿台上。
2. 按起动键供入已装入的原稿。然后自动进行等倍值、前端定时和中心线的调整。
3. 如果调整结果正常，且操作面板采用七段显示屏：显示以下信息。（项目 1：Gd，项目 2：0，项目 3：0，项目 4：0）
   如果操作面板采用 LCD 屏：（显示 CONVEY SPEED、LEAD EDGE ADJ 和 DP CENTER 的数值。）
4. 如果调整结果不正常，且操作面板采用七段显示屏：显示（nG1、nG2、nG3）和项目 1。如果操作面板采用 LCD 屏：显示（DATA、NG1、NG2）。
   确认原稿设定位置后，再次进行调整（详情请参照维修手册）。

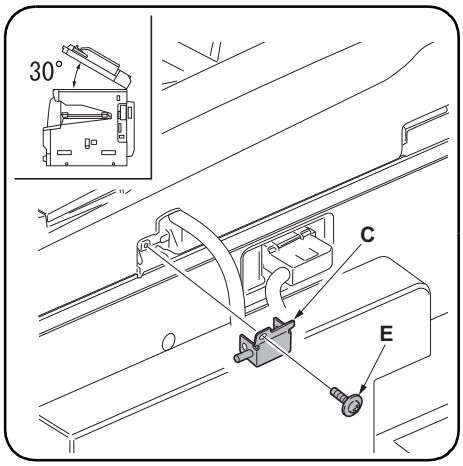
調整用原稿による自動調整

先端斜め調整および後端斜め調整をおこなってから実施する。(8 ページ、11 ページ参照)

1. メンテナンスモード U076 をセットし、調整用原稿の後端をカットし F・R が記載されている面を上に DP 本体の原稿テーブルにセットする。
2. スタートボタンでセットした原稿を搬送させ、等倍度・先端タイミング・センターライン調整が自動的におこなわれる。
3. 実行結果が OK の場合、操作部が 7 seg タイプの場合：次のように表示される。(項目 1:Gd, 項目 2:0, 項目 3:0, 項目 4:0)
   操作部が LCD タイプの場合(CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ, DP CENTER と各数値が表示されます)
4. 実行結果が NG の場合、操作部が 7 seg タイプの場合 (nG1, nG2, nG3) と項目 1 に表示され、操作部が LCD タイプの場合(DATA, NG1, NG2) と表示されます。
   原稿のセット位置を確認し、自動調整をおこなう(詳細はサービスマニュアル参照)。







Adjusting the DP open/close angle
To adjust the DP open/close angle to 60 degrees

1. Insert the angle adjusting plate (C) and fit it using M4 × 14 screw (E).

To adjust the DP open/close angle to 30 degrees

1. Remove two stop rings (11) and pull the shaft (12) out.
2. Insert the shaft (12) into the holes (13) and refit two stop rings (11).

3. Insert the angle adjusting plate (C) and fit it using M4 × 14 screw (E).

Réglage de l'angle d'ouverture/ fermeture du DP
Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/ fermeture du DP à 60 degrés

1. Insérez la plaque de réglage d'angle (C), et fixez-la à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 14 (E).

Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/ fermeture du DP à 30 degrés

1. Retirez deux bagues d'arrêt (11) et tirez l'arbre (12) vers l'extérieur.
2. Insérez l'arbre (12) dans les orifices (13) et remettez les deux bagues d'arrêt (11) en place.

3. Insérez la plaque de réglage d'angle (C), et fixez-la à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 14 (E).

Ajuste del ángulo de apertura/cierre del DP
Para ajustar el ángulo de apertura/ cierre del DP a 60 grados

1. Inserte la placa de ajuste de ángulo (C) y fije con el tornillo M4 × 14 (E).

Para ajustar el ángulo de apertura/ cierre del DP a 30 grados

1. Desmonte los dos aros de tope (11) y tire del eje (12) hacia fuera.
2. Inserte el eje (12) en los orificios (13) y vuelva a colocar los dos aros de tope (11).

3. Inserte la placa de ajuste de ángulo (C) y fije con el tornillo M4 × 14 (E).

Einstellen des DP-Öffnungs-/ Schließungswinkels
Einstellung des DP-Öffnungs-/ Schließungswinkels auf 60 Grad

1. Den Winkeleinstellhalter (C) einsetzen und mit einer M4 × 14 Schraube (E) befestigen.

Einstellung des DP-Öffnungs-/ Schließungswinkels auf 30 Grad

1. Die zwei Sicherungsringe (11) entfernen, und die Achse (12) herausziehen.
2. Die Achse (12) in die Löcher (13) einführen, und die zwei Sicherungsringe (11) wieder anbringen.

3. Den Winkeleinstellhalter (C) einsetzen und mit einer M4 × 14 Schraube (E) befestigen.

Regolazione dell'angolo di apertura e chiusura del DP
Per regolare l'angolo di apertura e chiusura del DP a 60 gradi

1. Inserire la piastra di regolazione dell'angolo (C) e fissarla con una vite M4 × 14 (E).

Per regolare l'angolo di apertura e chiusura del DP a 30 gradi

1. Rimuovere i due anelli di arresto (11) ed estrarre l'albero (12).
2. Inserire l'albero (12) nei fori (13) e fissare nuovamente i due anelli di arresto (11).

3. Inserire la piastra di regolazione dell'angolo (C) e fissarla con una vite M4 × 14 (E).

调整 DP 的角度
设定 60 度的 DP 开闭角度时

1. 插入调整板 (C)，用 1 个螺丝 M4 × 14(E) 进行固定。

设定 30 度的 DP 角度时

1. 拆下 2 个止动环 (11)，拔下轴 (12)。
2. 将轴 (12) 插入孔 (13)，并将 2 个止动环 (11) 按原样装好。

3. 插入调整板 (C)，用 1 个螺丝 M4 × 14(E) 进行固定。

DP 開閉角度の調整
DP 開閉角度を 60° に設定する場合

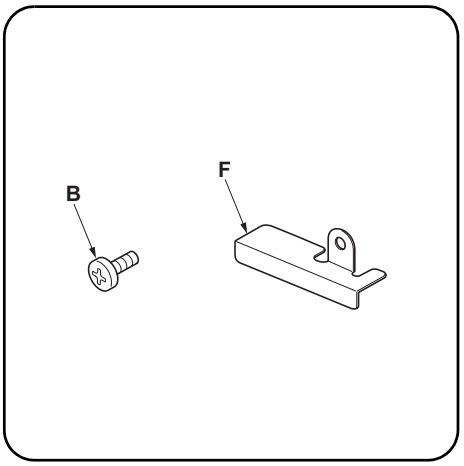
1. 調整板 (C) を挿入し、ビス M4 × 14(E)1 本で固定する。

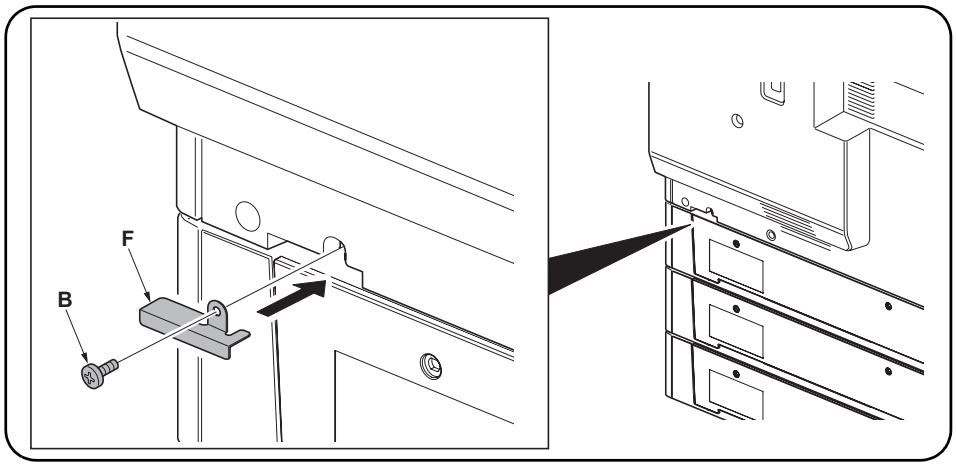
DP 開閉角度を 30° に設定する場合

1. ストップリング (11)2 個を外し、軸 (12) を引き抜く。
2. 軸 (12) を穴 (13) に挿入し、ストップリング (11)2 個を元通り取り付ける。

3. 調整板 (C) を挿入し、ビス M4 × 14(E)1 本で固定する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER





English

Additional step during PF-420 installation

Additional parts

B M3 x 8 screw 1
F Connector cover 1

After installing the PF-420, fasten the connector cover (F) in place using an M3 x 8 screw (B).

Note
This step is not required for 22 ppm MFP models (printer-based models) since the connector cover (F) is already attached.

Français

Opération supplémentaire pour l'installation de PF-420

Pièces supplémentaires

B Vis M3 x 8 1
F Couvercle du connecteur 1

Après avoir installé le PF-420, fixer le couvercle du connecteur (F) en position à l'aide d'une vis M3 x 8 (B).

Remarque
Cette opération n'est pas nécessaire pour les modèles de MFP à 22 ppm (modèles à base imprimante) car le couvercle du connecteur (F) est déjà fixé.

Español

Paso adicional durante la instalación de PF-420

Piezas adicionales

B Tornillo M3 x 8 1
F Cubierta del conector 1

Después de instalar el PF-420, apriete la cubierta del conector (F) en su lugar por medio de un tornillo M3 x 8 (B).

Nota
Este paso no es necesario para los modelos MFP de 22 ppm (modelos basados en impresoras), ya que la cubierta del conector (F) ya está instalada.

Deutsch

Zusätzlicher Schritt bei der PF-420 Installation

Zusätzliche Teile

B M3 × 8 Schraube 1
F Steckverbinderabdeckung 1

Nach Installieren deds PF-420 die Steckverbinderabdeckung (F) mittels einer M3 x 8 Schraube (B) befestigen.

Hinweis
Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich für MFP-Modell 22 ppm (Modell auf Druckerbasis), da die Steckverbinderabdeckung (F) dort schon angebracht ist.

Italiano

Passo aggiuntivo durante l'installazione di PF-420

Parti aggiuntive

B Vite M3 x 8 1
F Coperchio del connettore 1

Dopo l'installazione di PF-420, fissare il coperchio del connettore (F) in posizione utilizzando una vite M3 x 8 (B).

Nota
Questo passo non è richiesto per i modelli MPF da 22 ppm (modelli stampante base) poiché il coperchio del connettore (F) è già fissato.

简体中文

安装 PF-420 时的附加步骤

附加部件

B M3 x 8 螺丝 1
F 接插件盖板 1

安装 PF-420 后，使用 1 颗 M3 x 8 螺丝（B）将接插件盖板（F）紧固到位。

注意
因为 22ppm 型号（基于打印机的型号）已安装接插件盖板（F），因此无需执行此步骤。

日本語

PF-420 設置時の追加手順

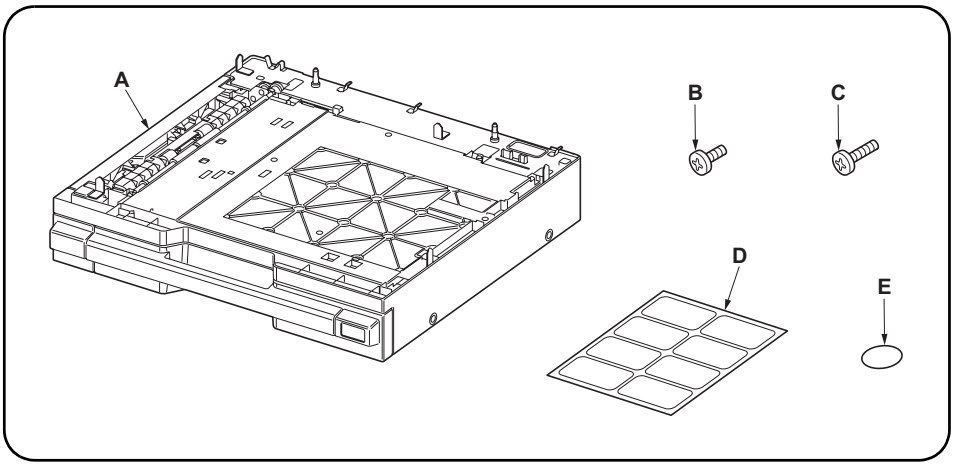
追加部品

B ビス M3 × 8 1
F コネクタカバー 1

PF-420 設置後、コネクタカバー(F) をビス M3 × 8(B) 1 本で固定してください。

注意
MFP(プリンタ標準機)の 22 枚機は、すでにコネクタカバー(F) が取り付いている為、上記手順は不要です。

2009.4
303MH56811



English

Supplied parts

A Cassette 1
B M3 × 8 screw 4
C M3 × 12 screw 1
D Cassette size label 1
E Hole seal..... 3

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Procedure

Be sure to turn off the main switch of the main body of the copier or MFP and disconnect the power plug of the main body from the wall outlet before starting to install the Duplex Unit.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Cassette 1
B Vis M3 x 8..... 4
C Vis M3 x 12..... 1
D tiquette au format cassette 1
E Obturateur 3

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Procédure

Veillez à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du corps principal du copieur ou du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation de l'unité recto-verso.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Casete 1
B Tornillo M3 x 8 4
C Tornillo M3 x 12 1
D Etiqueta de tamaño del casete 1
E Sello para orificios 3

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del cuerpo principal de la copiadora o MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar la Unidad Dúplex.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Kassette..... 1
B M3 x 8 Schrauben 4
C M3 x 12 Schraube 1
D Kassettengrößen-Etikett 1
E Abdeckungsetikett 3

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Verfahren

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter der Haupteinheit des Kopierers oder MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation der Duplex-Einheit beginnen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Cassetto 1
B Viti M3 x 8..... 4
C Vite M3 x 12..... 1
D Etichetta del formato del cassetto..... 1
E Copriforo..... 3

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Procedura

Assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale del corpo principale della copiatrice o dell'MFP e di disconnettere il cordone di alimentazione dalla presa a muro prima di dare inizio alla procedura d'installazione dell'Unità Duplex.

简体中文

A 纸盒..... 1
B M3 × 8 螺丝 4
C M3 × 12 螺丝..... 1
D 纸盒尺寸标签..... 1
E 孔用密封盖..... 3

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装步骤

安装供纸盒时，必须先关闭复印机或 MFP 本体的主电源开关，拔下本体电源插头后，才能进行操作。

日本語

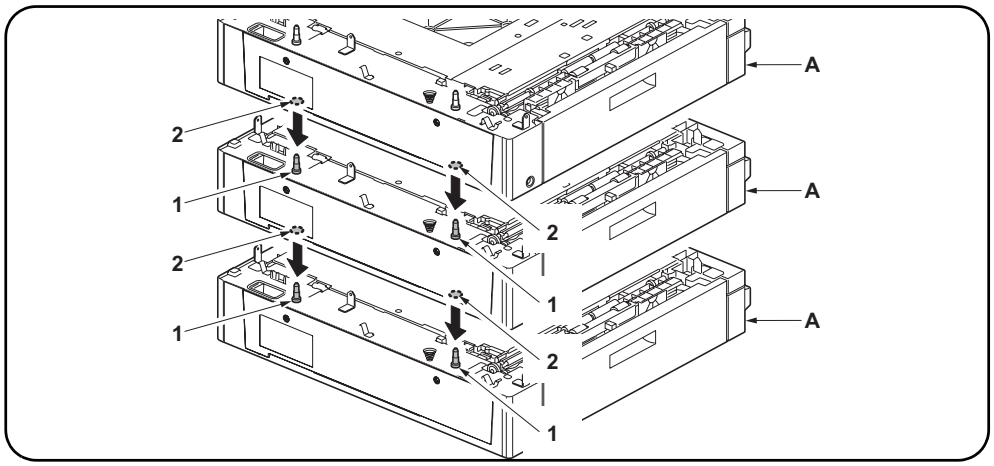
同梱品

A カセット..... 1
B ビス M3 × 8 4
C ビス M3 × 12 1
D カセットサイズラベル..... 1
E カバーラベル..... 3

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

取付手順

カセットを取り付ける際は、必ず複写機または MFP(プリンタ標準機)本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。



Up to three cassettes can be stacked.
(For 22 ppm MFP models, no more than two cassettes can be stacked.)

NOTICE

When stacking 2 or more cassettes, ensure that all the cassettes are stacked before placing the main body on the cassettes.

1. Place the main body directly down onto the cassettes by aligning the positioning insertion sections (2) of the top cassette with the positioning pins (1) at the rear of the bottom cassette (A) (only when stacking 2 or more cassettes).
When placing the main body on the cassettes, take care not to hit the main body against the cassette pins or ground plate.

Il est possible d'empiler jusqu'à trois cassettes.
Pour les modèles de MFP à 22 ppm, il est possible d'empiler jusqu'à deux cassettes.

AVIS

Pour empiler 2 cassettes ou plus, s'assurer que toutes les cassettes sont en place avant de placer le cops principal sur les cassettes.

1. Placez directement le corps principal sur les cassettes en alignant les sections d'insertion de positionnement (2) de la cassette supérieure avec les goupilles de positionnement (1) à l'arrière de la cassette (A) (dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement).
Lorsque le corps principal est placé sur les cassettes, attention à ne pas le cogner le corps principal contre les goupilles ou la plaque de terre de la cassette.

Se pueden instalar hasta tres casetes uno encima de otro.
(Para los modelos MFP de 22 ppm, no se puede apilar más dos casetes.)

AVISO

Cuando apile 2 casetes o más, asegúrese de que todos los casetes estén apilados antes de colocar el cuerpo principal sobre ellos.

1. Coloque el cuerpo principal directamente sobre los casetes, alineando las secciones de inserción de ubicación (2) del casete superior con los pasadores de ubicación (1), en la parte posterior del casete inferior (A) (solo cuando se apilan 2 casetes o más).
Cuando coloque el cuerpo principal sobre los casetes, tenga cuidado de no golpear el cuerpo principal contra los pasadores o placa de fondo de los casetes.

Bis zu drei Kassetten können übereinander gestapelt werden.
(Bei MFP-Modell 22 ppm können maximal zwei Kassetten gestapelt werden.)

HINWEIS

Wenn 2 oder mehr Kassetten gestapelt werden, sind zuerst alle Kassetten zu stapeln, bevor man die Haupteinheit auf die Kassetten setzt.

1. Die Haupteinheit direkt auf die Kassetten setzen; dabei die Positionsstiftnuten (2) der oberen Kassette auf die Positionsstifte (1) am hinteren Teil der unteren Kassette (A) ausrichten (nur bei Stapeln von 2 oder mehr Kassetten).
Achten Sie beim Platzieren der Haupteinheit darauf, dass Sie nicht gegen die Kassettenstifte oder die Bodenplatte stoßen.

È possibile impilare fino a tre cassettoni.
(Per i modelli MFP da 22 ppm, non possono essere impilati più di due cassettoni.)

NOTIFICA

Quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni, assicurarsi che tutti i cassettoni siano impilati prima di posare il corpo principale sui cassettoni.

1. Posizionare il corpo principale direttamente sopra i cassettoni, allineando le posizioni delle sezioni di inserimento (2) del cassettone superiore con i perni di posizionamento (1) alla parte posteriore del cassettone inferiore (A) (solo quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni).
Quando si posiziona il corpo principale sui cassettoni, prestare attenzione a non urtare il corpo principale contro i perni di posizionamento o la piastra di messa a terra.

最多可堆叠三个纸盒。
（22 ppm MFP 机型最多可堆叠 2 个纸盒。）

注意

堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时，确保所有纸盒已正确堆叠后方可将主机置于纸盒上。

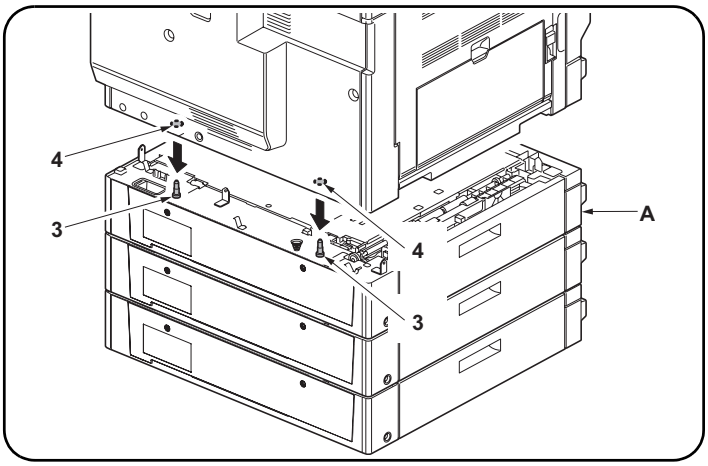
1. 将顶部纸盒的定位插入部（2）对准底部纸盒（A）后部的定位针（1），然后将主机直接置于顶部纸盒上（仅当堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时）。
将主机置于纸盒上时，请注意不要碰到纸盒定位针或接地板。

カセットは最大 3 段まで装着可能。
(MFP(プリンタ標準機)の 22 枚機は 2 段まで装着可能)

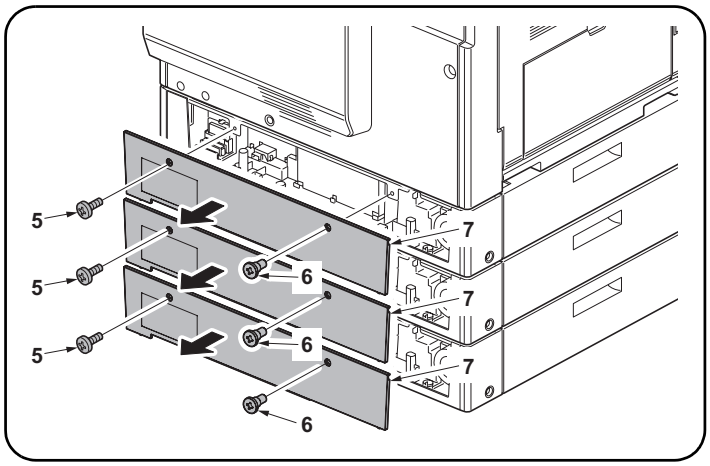
注意

カセットを 2 段以上装着する場合は、先に全てのカセットを重ねた状態にしてから、本体をのせること。

1. 下側カセット (A) 後部の位置決めピン (1) に、上側カセット (A) の位置決め挿入部 (2) を合わせ、真上からのせる。(2 段以上装着時のみ)
のせる際、カセットのピンおよびアース板に当てないように作業を行うこと。



2. Place the main body directly down onto the cassettes by aligning the positioning insertion sections of the main body (4) with the positioning pins (3) at the rear of the cassette (A).
When placing the main body on the cassettes, take care not to hit the main body against the cassette pins or ground plate.



3. Remove the screw (5) and pin (6) from each cassette and remove the back covers (7).

---

2. Placez directement le corps principal sur les cassettes en alignant les sections d'insertion de positionnement (4) du corps pirncipal avec les goupilles de positionnement (3) à l'arrière de la cassette (A) (dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement).
Lorsque le corps principal est placé sur les cassettes, attention à ne pas le cogner le corps principal contre les goupilles ou la plaque de terre de la cassette.

3. Déposez la vis (5) et la goupille (6) de chaque cassette et déposez les capots arrière (7).

---

2. Coloque el cuerpo principal directamente sobre los casetes, alineando las secciones de inserción de ubicación del cuerpo principal (4) con los pasadores de ubicación (3), en la parte posterior del casete (A).
Cuando coloque el cuerpo principal sobre los casetes, tenga cuidado de no golpear el cuerpo principal contra los pasadores o placa de fondo de los casetes.

3. Quite el tornillo (5) y el pasador (6) de cada casete y desmonte las cubiertas posteriores (7).

---

2. Die Haupteinheit direkt auf die Kassetten setzen; dabei die Positionsstiftnuten der Haupteinheit (4) auf die Positionsstifte (3) am hinteren Teil der Kassette (A) ausrichten.
Achten Sie beim Platzieren der Haupteinheit darauf, dass Sie nicht gegen die Kassettenstifte oder die Bodenplatte stoßen.

3. Die Schraube (5) und den Stift (6) jeder Kassette entfernen und die hinteren Abdeckungen (7) abnehmen.

---

2. Mettere il corpo principale direttamente sopra i cassettoni allineando le posizioni delle sezioni di inserimento del corpo principale (4) con i perni di posizionamento (3) nella parte posteriore del cassettone (A).
Quando si posa il corpo principale sui cassettoni, fare molta attenzione a non urtare il corpo principale contro i perni di posizionamento o la piastra di messa a terra.

3. Rimuovere la vite (5) e il perno (6) da ciascun cassettone e rimuovere i coperchi posteriori (7).

---

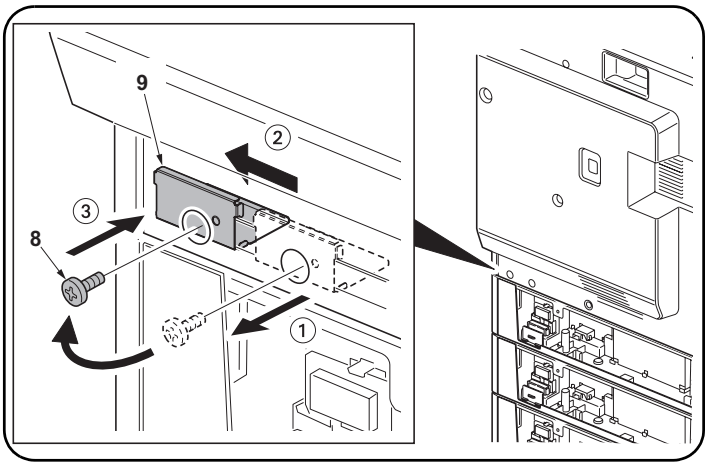
2. 将主机的定位插入部（4）对准纸盒（A）后部的定位针（3），然后将主机直接置于纸盒上。
将主机置于纸盒上时，请注意不要碰到纸盒定位针或接地板。

3. 取下各纸盒上的螺丝（5）和销钉（6），然后取下后盖板（7）。取下各纸

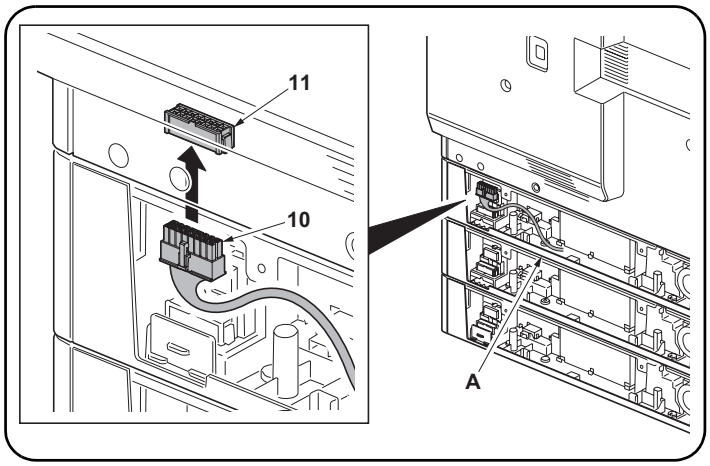
---

2. カセット（A）後部の位置決めピン（3）に、本体の位置決め挿入部（4）を合わせ、真上からのせる。
のせる際、カセットのピンおよびアース板に当てないように作業を行うこと。

3. 各カセットのビス（5）1 本およびピン（6）1 本を外し、後カバー（7）を取り外す。



4. Remove the screw (8) on the rear of the main body.
5. Slide the connector cover (9) on the inside of the main body back cover in the direction of the arrow.
6. Secure the connector cover (9) using the screw (8) removed in step 4.



7. Plug the connector (10) for the cassette (A) into the connector socket (11).

---

4. Déposez la vis (8) au dos du corps principal.
5. Faites glisser le couvercle du connecteur (9) se trouvant à l'intérieur du couvercle arrière du corps principal dans la direction de la flèche.
6. Fixez le couvercle du connecteur (9) à l'aide de la vis (8) déposée à l'étape 4.

7. Raccordez le connecteur (10) de la cassette (A) avec l'embase (11).

---

4. Quite el tornillo (8) de la parte posterior del cuerpo principal.
5. Deslice, en la dirección que muestra la flecha, la cubierta del conector (9), en el interior de la cubierta posterior del cuerpo principal.
6. Asegure la cubierta del conector (9) por medio del tornillo (8) desmontado en el paso 4.

7. Enchufe el conector (10) del casete (A) en el enchufe del conector (11).

---

4. Die Schraube (8) an der Rückseite der Haupteinheit abnehmen.
5. Die Steckverbinderabdeckung (9) an der Innenseite der hinteren Haupteinheitsabdeckung in der Pfeilrichtung verschieben.
6. Die Steckverbinderabdeckung (9) mit der in Schritt 4 entfernten Schraube (8) sichern.

7. Den Steckverbinder (10) für die Kassette (A) in die Steckverbinderbuchse (11) stecken.

---

4. Rimuovere la vite (8) sulla parte posteriore del corpo principale.
5. Slittare il coperchio del connettore (9) all'interno del coperchio posteriore del corpo principale nella direzione della freccia.
6. Fissare il coperchio del connettore (9) usando la vite (8) rimossa nel punto 4.

7. Collegare il connettore (10) per il cassettone (A) nella presa del connettore (11).

---

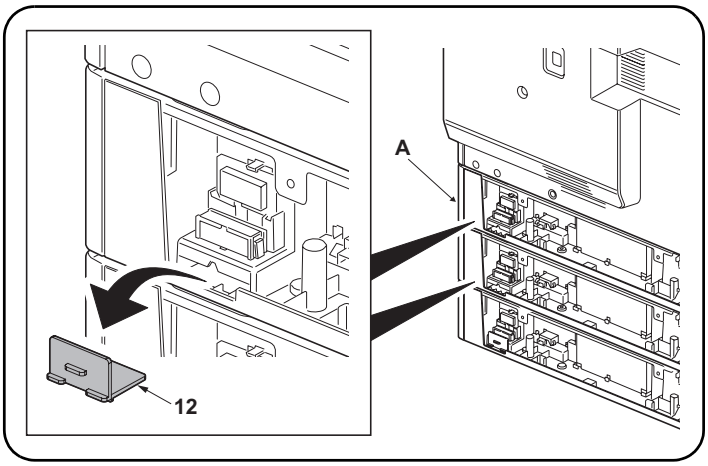
4. 取下主机后部的螺丝（8）。
5. 沿箭头方向滑动位于主机后盖板内侧的接插件盖板（9）。
6. 使用在步骤 4 中取下的螺丝（8）紧固接插件盖板（9）。

7. 将纸盒（A）的接插件（10）插入插座（11）中。

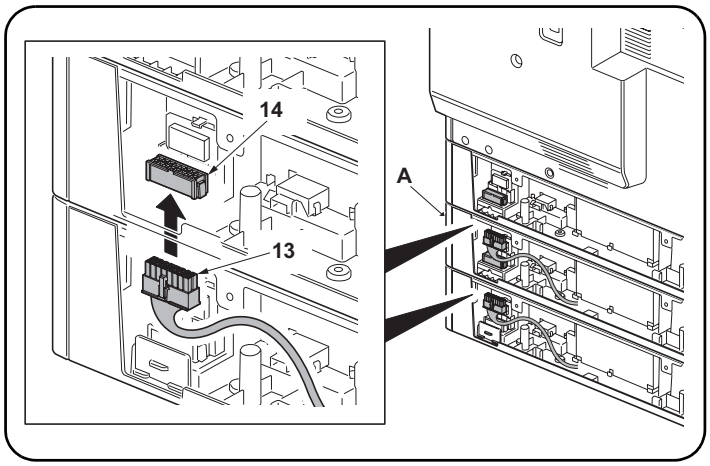
---

4. 本体後側のビス (8)1 本を外す。
5. 本体後カバー内側にあるコネクタカバー(9) を、矢印方向にスライドさせる。
6. 手順 4 で外したビス (8)1 本で、コネクタカバー(9) を固定する。

7. カセット (A) のコネクタ (10) を本体のコネクタ (11) に接続する。



8. Remove the connector cover (12) from the cassettes other than the lowest cassette (A).
(only when stacking 2 or more cassettes)



9. Plug the connector (13) for the lower cassette (A) into the connector socket (14) in the upper cassette (A).
(only when stacking 2 or more cassettes)

---

8. Déposez le couvercle du connecteur (12) des cassettes autres que la cassette (A).
(dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement)

9. Raccordez le connecteur (13) de la cassette inférieure (A) avec l'embase (14) de la cassettes supérieure (A).
(dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement)

---

8. Desmonte la cubierta del conector (12) de todos los casetes, excepto del inferior (A).
(solo cuando se apilan 2 casetes o más)

9. Enchufe el conector (13) del casete inferior (A) en el enchufe del conector (14) del casete superior (A).
(solo cuando se apilan 2 casetes o más)

---

8. Die Steckverbinderabdeckung (12) von den Kassetten mit Ausnahme der untersten Kassette (A) abnehmen.
(nur bei Stapeln von 2 oder mehr Kassetten)

9. Den Steckverbinder (13) für die untere Kassette (A) in die Steckverbinderbuchse (14) der oberen Kassette (A) stecken.
(nur bei Stapeln von 2 oder mehr Kassetten)

---

8. Rimuovere il coperchio del connettore (12) dai cassettoni, eccetto quello del cassettone (A) più in basso.
(solo quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni)

9. Collegare il connettore (13) per il cassettone (A) inferiore, nella presa del connettore (14) nel cassettone (A) superiore.
(solo quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni)

---

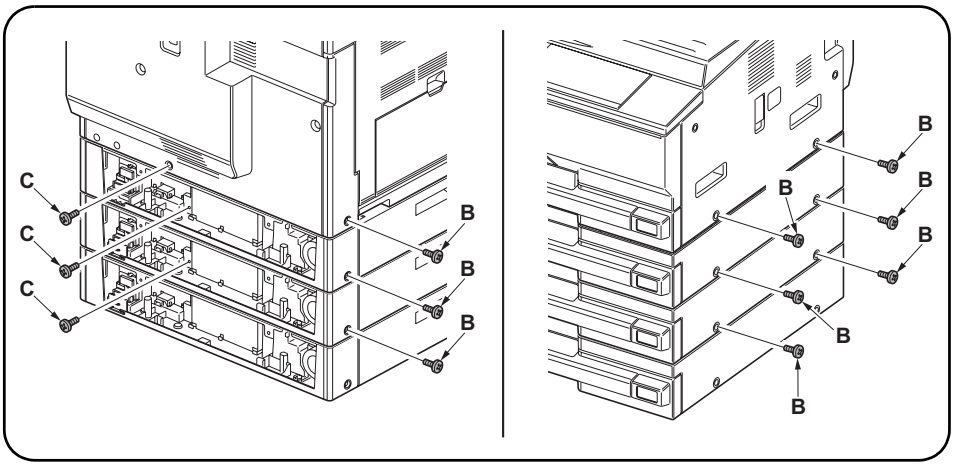
8. 取下纸盒(底部纸盒(A)除外)上的接插件盖板(12)。
(仅当堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时)

9. 将下部纸盒(A)的接插件(13)插入上部纸盒(A)的插座(14)中。
(仅当堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时)

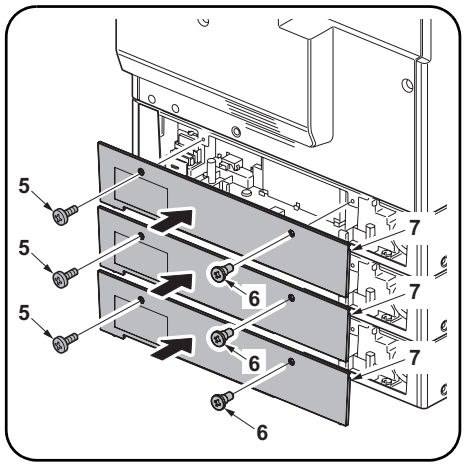
---

8. 最下段以外のカセット (A) より、コネクタカバー(12) を取り外す。
(2 段以上装着時のみ)

9. 下側カセット (A) のコネクタ (13) を上側カセット (A) のコネクタ (14) に接続する。(2 段以上装着時のみ)



10. Secure each of the cassettes using three M3 x 8 screws (B) and one M3 x 12 screw (C).
Right: Two M3 x 8 screws (B)
Left: One M3 x 8 screw (B)
Rear: One M3 x 12 screw (C)



11. Re-attach the back cover (7) to each cassette using the screw (5) and pin (6).

---

10. Fixez chacune des cassettes à l'aide des trois vis M3 x 8 (B) et la vis M3 x 12 (C).
Droite : Deux vis M3 x 8 (B)
Gauche : Une vis M3 x 8 (B)
Arrière : Une vis M3 x 12 (C)

11. Reposez le capot arrière (7) de chaque cassette à l'aide de la vis (5) et de la goupille (6).

---

10. Asegure cada uno de los casetes por medio de tres tornillos M3 x 8 (B) y un tornillo M3 x 12 (C).
Derecha: dos tornillos M3 x 8 (B)
Izquierda: un tornillo M3 x 8 (B)
Atrás: un tornillo M3 x 12 (C)

11. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (7) de cada casete por medio del tornillo (5) y el pasador (6).

---

10. Jede Kassette mit jeweils drei M3 x 8 Schrauben (B) und einer M3 x 12 Schraube (C) sichern.
Rechts: Zwei M3 x 8 Schrauben (B)
Links: Eine M3 x 8 Schraube (B)
Hinten: Eine M3 x 12 Schraube (C)

11. Die hintere Abdeckung (7) wieder mittels Schraube (5) und Stift (6) an jeder Kassette anbringen.

---

10. Fissare ciascuno dei cassettoni usando tre viti M3 x 8 (B) e una vite M3 x 12 (C).
Lato destro: due viti M3 x 8 (B)
Lato sinistro: una vite M3 x 8 (B)
Lato posteriore: una vite M3 x 12 (C)

11. Ricollocare il coperchio posteriore (7) a ciascun cassettone usando la vite (5) e il perno (6).

---

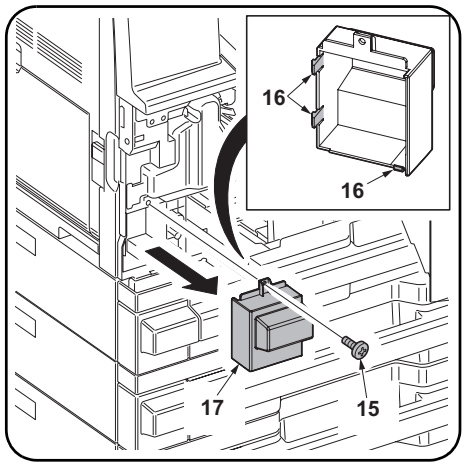
10. 使用 3 个 M3 × 8 螺丝(B)和 1 个 M3 × 12 螺丝(C)紧固所有的纸盒。
右侧: 2 个 M3 × 8 螺丝(B)
左侧: 1 个 M3 × 8 螺丝(B)
后部: 1 个 M3 × 12 螺丝(C)

11. 使用螺丝(5)和销钉(6)重新安装后盖板(7)。

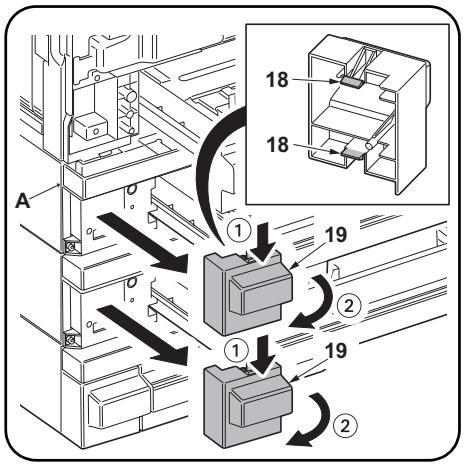
---

10. 各カセットをビス M3 × 8(B)3 本およびビス M3 × 12(C)1 本で固定する。
右側:ビス M3 × 8(B) 各 2 本
左側:ビス M3 × 8(B) 各 1 本
後側:ビス M3 × 12(C) 各 1 本

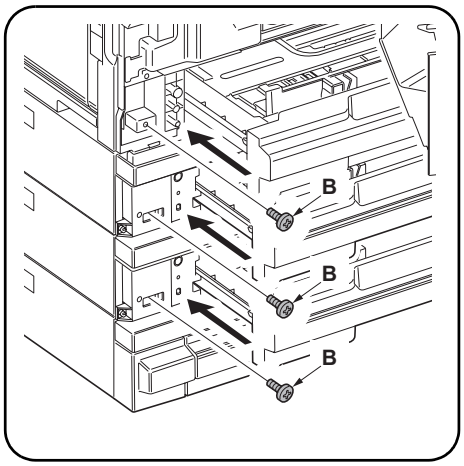
11. 各カセットの後カバー(7) を、ビス (5)1 本およびピン (6)1 本で、元通り取り付ける。



12. Pull the cassette out of the main body and open the front cover.
13. Remove the screw (15) and disengage the 3 hooks (16). Then remove the cover (17).



14. Pull out the cassettes other than the lowest cassette (A).(only when stacking 2 or more cassettes)
15. Disengage the 2 hooks (18) and remove the cover (19). (only when stacking 2 or more cassettes)
Remove the cover (19) by pushing it in the direction of arrow ① and turning it in the direction of arrow ② .



16. Secure each cassette using an M3 x 8 screw (B).
17. Re-attach the removed components.

---

12. Sortez la cassette du corps principal et ouvrez le capot avant.
13. Déposez la vis (15) et libérez les 3 crochets (16). Déposez ensuite le capot (17).

14. Sortez les cassettes sauf la cassette inférieure (A). (dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement)
15. Libérez les 2 crochets (18) et enlevez la capot (19). (dans le cas d'un empilage de 2 cassettes ou plus uniquement)
Déposez le capot (19) en poussant dans la direction de la flèche ① et en tournant dans la direction de la flche ② .

16. Fixez chaque cassette à l'aide d'une vis M3 x 8 (B).
17. Reposez les pièces déposées.

---

12. Extraiga el casete del cuerpo principal y abra la cubierta frontal.
13. Quite el tornillo (15) y desenganche los 3 ganchos (16). Después, desmonte la cubierta (17).

14. Extraiga los casetes, excepto el inferior (A). (solo cuando se apilan 2 casetes o más)
15. Desenganche los 2 ganchos (18) y desmonte la cubierta (19). (solo cuando se apilan 2 casetes o más)
Quite la cubierta (19) empujándola en la dirección de la flecha ① y girndola en la direccin de la flecha ② .

16. Asegure cada uno de los casetes por medio de un tornillo M3 x 8 (B).
17. Vuelva a instalar los componentes desmontados.

---

12. Die Kassette aus der Haupteinheit herausziehen und die Frontabdeckung öffnen.
13. Die Schraube (15) entfernen und die 3 Haken (16) aushaken. Dann die Abdeckung (17) abnehmen.

14. Die Kassetten mit Ausnahme der untersten Kassette (A) herausziehen.(nur bei Stapeln von 2 oder mehr Kassetten)
15. Die 2 Haken (18) aushaken und die Abdeckung (19) abnehmen.(nur bei Stapeln von 2 oder mehr Kassetten)
Die Abdeckung (19) abnehmen, indem man sie in der Pfeilrichtung ① drckt und in der Pfeilrichtung ② dreht.

16. ede Kassette mit einer M3 x 8 Schraube (B) sichern.
17. Die abgenommenen Komponenten wieder anbringen.

---

12. Estrarre il cassetto dal corpo principale ed aprire il coperchio anteriore.
13. Rimuovere la vite (15) e sganciare i 3 ganci (16). Quindi rimuovere il coperchio (17).

14. Estrarre i cassetti tranne quello del cassettone (A) più in basso. (solo quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni)
15. ganciare i 2 ganci (18) e rimuovere il coperchio (19). (solo quando si impilano 2 o più cassettoni)
Rimuovere il coperchio (19) spingendolo nella direzione della freccia ① e ruotandolo nella direzione della freccia ② .

16. Fissare ciascun cassetto usando una vite M3 x 8 (B).
17. Ricollegare i componenti rimossi.

---

12. 从主机中拉出纸盒，然后打开前盖板。
13. 取下螺丝（15），松开 3 个卡扣（16）。然后取下盖板（17）。

14. 拉出除底部纸盒（A）之外的纸盒。（仅当堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时）
15. 松开 2 个卡扣（18），然后取下盖板（19）。（仅当堆叠 2 个或 2 个以上的纸盒时）
取下盖板（19）时，沿箭头①方向推盖板然后沿箭头②方向转动盖板。

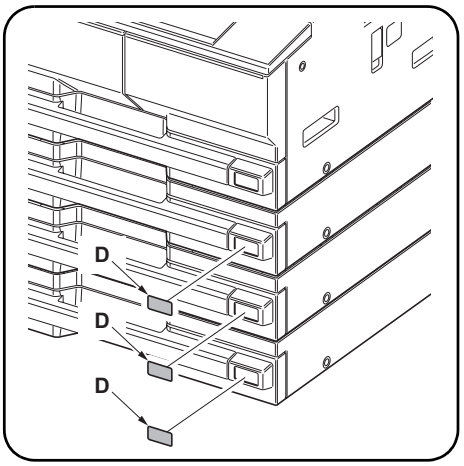
16. 使用 M3 × 8 螺丝（B）紧固所有的纸盒。
17. 重新安装取下的部件。

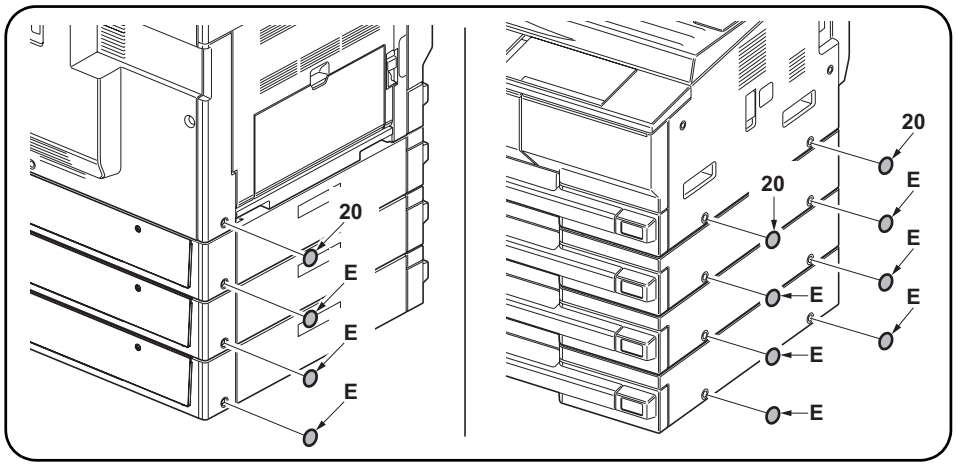
---

12. 本体のカセットを引き出し、前カバーを開く。
13. ビス（15）1 本およびフック（16）3 箇所を外し、カバー（17）を取り外す。

14. 最下段以外のカセット（A）のカセットを引き出す。（2 段以上装着時のみ）
15. フック（18）2 箇所を外し、カバー（19）を取り外す。（2 段以上装着時のみ）
カバー（19）は、矢印方向①より押し矢印方向②にまわすように外す。

16. 各カセットをビス M3 × 8（B）1 本で固定する。
17. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付ける。





18. Stick cassette size labels (D) onto each cassette according to the paper size to be used.

19. Stick the hole seals (20) supplied with the main unit over the 3 screw holes in the main unit.
20. Stick the hole seals (E) supplied with the cassettes over the 3 screw holes in each cassette.

Checking the operation
Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.

---

18. Collez les étiquettes au format cassette (D) sur chaque cassette en fonction du papier utilisé.

19. Collez les obturateurs (20) fournis avec l'unité principale sur les 3 de vis de cette unité principale.
20. Collez les obturateurs (E) fournis avec les cassettes sur les 3 de vis de chaque cassette.

Vérification du fonctionnement
Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.

---

18. Pegue las etiquetas de tamaño de los casetes (D) en cada uno de ellos, de acuerdo al tamaño de papel a utilizar.

19. Pegue los sellos para orificios (20), suministrados con la unidad principal, sobre los 3 orificios para tornillos de la unidad principal.
20. Pegue los sellos para orificios (E), suministrados con los casetes, sobre los 3 orificios para tornillos de cada casete.

Verificación del funcionamiento
Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.

---

18. Kassettengrößen-Etiketten (D) entsprechend der zu verwendenden Papiergröße auf die Kassetten kleben.

19. Die mit der Haupteinheit gelieferten Abdeckungsetiketten (20) auf die 3 Schraublöcher in der Haupteinheit kleben.
20. Die mit den Kassetten gelieferten Abdeckungsetiketten (E) auf die 3 Schraublöcher in jeder Kassette kleben.

Überprüfen des Betriebs
Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.

---

18. ncollare le etichette del formato del cassetto (D) su ciascun cassetto, a seconda del formato carta utilizzato.

19. ncollare i copriforo (20) forniti con l'unità principale, sui 3 fori delle viti nell'unità principale.
20. Incollare i copriforo (E) forniti con i cassettoni sui 3 fori delle viti in ciascun casettone.

Verifica di funzionamento
Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

---

18. 根据所用纸张尺寸将纸盒尺寸标签(D)粘贴至各纸盒。

19. 将随主机提供的孔用密封盖(20)粘贴至主机的 3 个螺丝孔上。
20. 将随纸盒提供的孔用密封盖(E)粘贴至各纸盒的 3 个螺丝孔上。

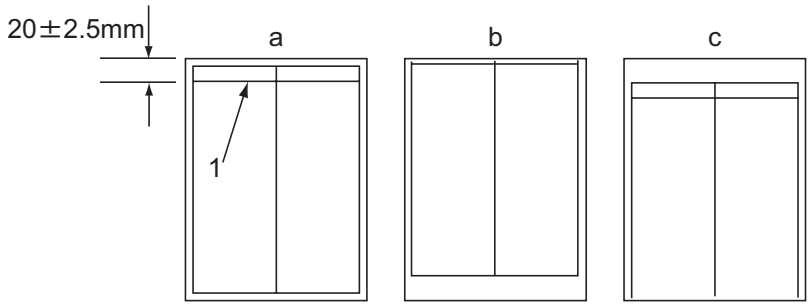
操作确认
将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。

---

18. 使用する用紙サイズに合わせて、カセットサイズラベル (D) を各カセットに貼り付ける。

19. 本体のビス穴 3 箇所に本体同梱のカバーラベル (20) を貼り付ける。
20. 各カセットのビス穴 3 箇所にカセット同梱のカバーラベル (E) を貼り付ける。

動作確認
機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。



If the operation panel is a 7-segment type:
Adjusting the leading edge timing

1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Press the image quality mode key until "Text" is lit. (group 1)
2nd level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp3" is lit. (mode 3)
3nd level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp4" is lit. (mode 4)
4rd level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp5" is lit. (mode 5)
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image.
<Reference value> Within 20 ± 2.5(copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the edge of the paper and the copy example line (1) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -5.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.

3. .Output the test pattern again.

4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments:
Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Appuyez sur la touche de mode de qualité d'image jusqu'à ce que "Text" s'allume. (groupe 1)
Cassette de 2ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp3" s'allume. (mode 3)
Cassette de 3ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp4" s'allume. (mode 4)
Cassette de 4ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp5" s'allume. (mode 5)
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour imprimer un motif de test et vérifiez l'image imprimée.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre le bord du papier et le trait sur l'exemple de copie (1) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, procédez au réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b):augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -5,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.

3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.

4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo 7 segmentos:
Ajuste de la sincronización del borde superior

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Presione la tecla de modo de calidad de imagen hasta que se encienda "Text" (grupo 1)
Casete de 2º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp3" (modo 3)
Casete de 3º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp4" (modo 4).
Casete de 4º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp5" (modo 5)
Presione la tecla de interrupción para imprimir un patrón de prueba y compruebe la imagen impresa.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si el espacio entre el borde del papel y la línea de la copia de muestra (1) es mayor que el valor de referencia, realice el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor
Gama de ajustes: -5,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.

3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.

4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timings

1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Drücken Sie die Bildqualitätsmodustaste, bis "Text" aufleuchtet. (Gruppe 1)
Kassette 2. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp3" aufleuchtet. (Modus 3)
Kassette 3. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp4" aufleuchtet. (Modus 4)
Kassette 4. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp5" aufleuchtet. (Modus 5)
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um ein Testmuster auszudrucken, und überprüfen Sie das Druckbild.<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ± 2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Papierkante und der Kopienmusterlinie (1) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -5,0 – +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.

3. Machen Sie eine erneute Probekopie.

4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti:
Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Premere il tasto di modo della qualità dell'immagine finché "Text" non si illumina. (gruppo 1)
Cassetto del 2° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp3" non si illumina. (modo 3)
Cassetto del 3° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp4" non si illumina. (modo 4)
Cassetto del 4° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp5" non si illumina. (modo 5)
Premere il tasto di interruzione per stampare i modelli di prova e controllare l'immagine stampata.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento tra il bordo della carta e la linea dell'esempio di copia (1) è maggiore rispetto al valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -5.0 –+10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta il bordo di entrata di 0.1 mm.

3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为 7 seg 型时
[前端图像偏移调整]

1. 执行维修模式 034。
用图像质量模式键使“文字复印”点亮。(组 1)
第二纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp3”点亮。(模式 3)
第三纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp4”点亮。(模式 4)
第四纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp5”点亮。(模式 5)
按插印键，打印测试图案，然后确认图像质量。〈参考值〉20 ± 2.5 mm 以内（a 图像为复印示例）
如果纸张边缘与复印示例线(1)的间距大于参考值，则执行以下调整。

2. b 图像时：增加调整值。
c 图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-5.0–+10.0
1 单位的变化量：0.1mm

3. 再次进行试输出图像。

4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉20 ± 2.5 mm 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

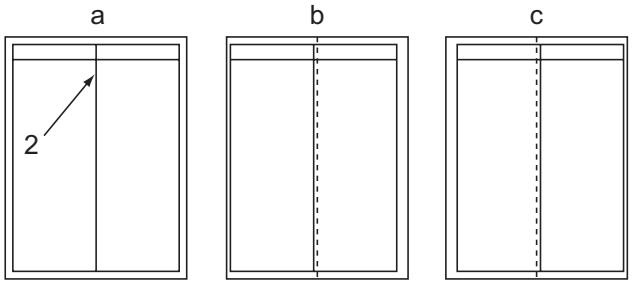
操作パネルが 7seg タイプの場合
[先端タイミング調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
画質モードキーで“文字”を点灯させる。(グループ 1)
カセット 2 段目：濃度調整キー“exp3”を点灯させる。(モード 3)
カセット 3 段目：濃度調整キー“exp4”を点灯させる。(モード 4)
カセット 4 段目：濃度調整キー“exp5”を点灯させる。(モード 5)
割り込みキーを押し、テストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5mm 以内
(コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
紙の先端とコピーサンプルの線 (1) のずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合：設定値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合：設定値を下げる。
設定範囲：-5.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量：0.1mm

3. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (1) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5mm 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is a 7-segment type:
Adjusting the center line

1. 1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Press the image quality mode key until "Text" and "Photo" are lit. (group 2)
2nd level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp3" is lit. (mode 3))
3rd level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp4" is lit. (mode 4)
4th level cassette:Press the exposure key until "exp5" is lit. (mode 5)
Press the Interrupt key to print a test pattern and check the printed image.
<Reference value> Within ± 2.0 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the center of the paper (dotted line) and the copy example line (2) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -7.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.
3. Output the test pattern again.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within ± 2.0 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments:
Réglage de la ligne centrale

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Appuyez sur la touche de mode de qualité d'image jusqu'à ce que "Text" et "Photo" s'allument. (groupe 2)
Cassette de 2ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp3" s'allume. (mode 3)
Cassette de 3ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp4" s'allume. (mode 4)
Cassette de 4ème niveau:Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp5" s'allume. (mode 5)
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour imprimer un motif de test et vérifiez l'image imprimée.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 2,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -7,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.
3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.
4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 2,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo 7 segmentos:
Ajuste de la línea central

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Presione la tecla de modo de calidad de imagen hasta que se enciendan "Text" y "Photo". (grupo 2)
Casete de 2º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp3" (modo 3)
Casete de 3º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp4" (modo 4)
Casete de 4º nivel:Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que se encienda "exp5" (modo 5)
Presione la tecla de interrupción para imprimir un patrón de prueba y compruebe la imagen impresa.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si la separación entre el centro del papel (línea de puntos) y la línea de la copia de muestra (2) es mayor que el valor de referencia, realizar el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -7,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.
3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.
4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen der Mittellinie

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Drücken Sie die Bildqualitätsmodustaste, bis "Text" und "Photo" aufleuchten. (Gruppe 2)
Kassette 2. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp3" aufleuchtet. (Modus 3)
Kassette 3. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp4" aufleuchtet. (Modus 4)
Kassette 4. Stufe:Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp5" aufleuchtet. (Modus 5)
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um ein Testmuster auszudrucken, und überprüfen Sie das Druckbild.<Bezugswert> Binnen ±2,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Mittenlinie des Papiers (Punktierte Linie) und der Kopienmusterlinie (2) größer als der Bezugswert ist,ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -7,0 – +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.
4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen ± 2,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti:
Regolazione della linea di centro

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Premere il tasto di modo della qualità dell'immagine finché "Text" e "Photo" non si illuminano. (gruppo 2)
Cassetto del 2° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp3" non si illumina. (modo 3)
Cassetto del 3° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp4" non si illumina. (modo 4)
Cassetto del 4° livello:Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "exp5" non si illumina. (modo 5)
Premere il tasto di interruzione per stampare i modelli di prova e controllare l'immagine stampata.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ±2.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento fra il centro della carta (linea tratteggiata) e la linea dell'esempio di copia (2) è maggiore rispetto al valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -7.0 –+10.0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ±2.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为 7 seg 型时
[中心线的调整]

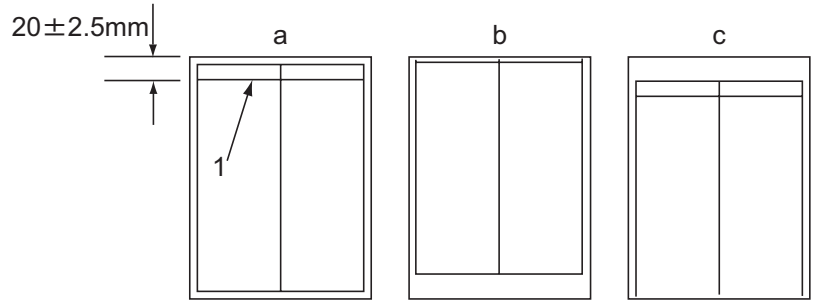
1. 执行维修模式 034。
用图像质量模式键使“文字复印”和“图片复印”点亮。(组 2)
第二纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp3”点亮。(模式 3)
第三纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp4”点亮。(模式 4)
第四纸盒：用浓度调整键使“exp5”点亮。(模式 5)
按插印键，打印测试图案，然后确认图像质量。
按下插入键，在双面模式下试输出图像，进行图像确认。〈参考值〉± 2.0 mm 以内(a 图像为复印示例)
若纸张中线(虚线)与复印示例线(2)的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b 图像时：增加调整值。
c 图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-7.0-+10.0
1 单位的变化量：0.1mm
3. 再次进行试输出图像。
4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉20 ± 2.5 mm 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

操作パネルが 7seg タイプの場合
[センターライン調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
画質モードキーで“文字”及び“写真”を点灯させる。(グループ 2)
カセット 2 段目:濃度調整キー“exp3”を点灯させる。(モード 3)
カセット 3 段目:濃度調整キー“exp4”を点灯させる。(モード 4)
カセット 4 段目:濃度調整キー“exp5”を点灯させる。(モード 5)
割り込みキーを押し、テストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。〈基準値〉± 2.0mm 以内
(コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
紙のセンター(波線)とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-7.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1mm
3. 再度テストパターン出力をおこなう。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉± 2.0mm 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is an LCD type:
Adjusting the leading edge timing

1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Select ADJ, RCL ON TIMING and press the Start key.
2nd level cassette:Select RCL T1.
3rd level cassette:Select RCL T2.
4rd level cassette:Select RCL T3.
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image.
<Reference value> Within 20 ± 2.5(copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the edge of the paper and the copy example line (1) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -5.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.
3. Output the test pattern again.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5(copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD:
Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Sélectionnez ADJ, RCL ON TIMING et appuyez sur la touche de départ copie.
Cassette de 2ème niveau:Sélectionnez RCL T1.
Cassette de 3ème niveau:Sélectionnez RCL T2.
Cassette de 4ème niveau:Sélectionnez RCL T3.
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour imprimer un motif de test et vérifiez l'image imprimée.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre le bord du papier et le trait sur l'exemple de copie (1) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, procédez au réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b):augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -5,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.
3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.
4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie).

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo LCD:
Ajuste de la sincronización del borde superior

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Seleccione ADJ, RCL ON TIMING y presione la tecla de inicio.
Casete de 2º nivel:Seleccione RCL T1.
Casete de 3º nivel:Seleccione RCL T2.
Casete de 4º nivel:Seleccione RCL T3.
Presione la tecla de interrupción para imprimir un patrón de prueba y compruebe la imagen impresa
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si el espacio entre el borde del papel y la línea de la copia de muestra (1) es mayor que el valor de referencia, realice el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -5,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.
3. Haga salir nuevamente el patrón de prueba.
4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timings

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Wählen Sie ADJ, RCL ON TIMING, und drücken Sie die Starttaste.
Kassette 2. Stufe:Wählen Sie RCL T1.
Kassette 3. Stufe:Wählen Sie RCL T2.
Kassette 4. Stufe:Wählen Sie RCL T3.
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um ein Testmuster auszudrucken, und überprüfen Sie das Druckbild.<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Papierkante und der Kopienmusterlinie (1) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -5,0 - +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.
4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD:
Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Selezionare ADJ, RCL ON TIMING e premere il tasto di avvio.
Cassetto del 2° livello:Selezionare RCL T1.
Cassetto del 3° livello:Selezionare RCL T2.
Cassetto del 4° livello:Selezionare RCL T3.
Premere il tasto di interruzione per stampare i modelli di prova e controllare l'immagine stampata.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento tra il bordo della carta e la linea dell'esempio di copia (1) è maggiore rispetto al valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -5.0 - +10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta il bordo di entrata di 0,1 mm.
3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为 LCD 型时
[前端图像偏移调整]

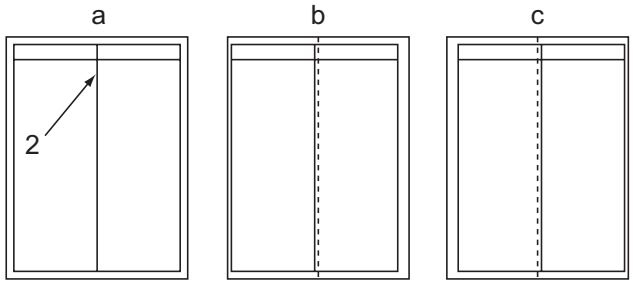
1. 执行维修模式 034。
选择 ADJ.RCL ON TIMING 按下开始键。
第二纸盒 :RCL T1
第三纸盒 :RCL T2
第四纸盒 :RCL T3
按插印键，打印测试图案，然后确认图像质量。〈参考值〉20 ± 2.5 mm 以内（a 图像为复印示例）
若纸张中线与复印示例线（1）的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b 图像时：增加调整值。
c 图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-5.0-10.0
1 单位的变化量：0.1mm
3. 再次进行试输出图像。
4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线（1）的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉20 ± 2.5 mm 以内（a 图像为复印示例）

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合
[先端タイミング調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
ADJ, RCL ON TIMING を選択し、スタートキーを押す。
カセット 2 段目:RCL T1 を選択する。
カセット 3 段目:RCL T2 を選択する。
カセット 4 段目:RCL T3 を選択する。
割り込みキーを押し、テストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5mm 以内
（ コピーサンプル (a) 画像）
紙の先端とコピーサンプルの線 (1) ずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整を行う。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-5.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1mm
3. 再度テストパターン出力をおこなう。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (1) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5mm 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is an LCD type:
Adjusting the center line

1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Select ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING and press the Start key.
2nd level cassette:Select LSU T1.
3nd level cassette:Select LSU T2.
4nd level cassette:Select LSU T3.
Press the Interrupt key to print a test pattern and check the printed image.
<Reference value> Within ± 2.0 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the center of the paper (dotted line) and the copy example line (2) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -7.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the center line by 0.1 mm.
3. Output the test pattern again.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within ± 2.0 mm (copy example (a))

Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD:
Réglage de la ligne centrale

1. 1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Sélectionnez ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING et appuyez sur la touche de départ copie.
Cassette de 2ème niveau:Sélectionnez LSU T1.
Cassette de 3ème niveau:Sélectionnez LSU T2.
Cassette de 4ème niveau:Sélectionnez LSU T3.
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour imprimer un motif de test et vérifiez l'image imprimée.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 2,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b):augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -7,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, la ligne centrale se déplace de 0,1 mm.
3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.
4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 2,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie).

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo LCD:
Ajuste de la línea central

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Seleccione ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING y presione la tecla de inicio.
Casete de 2º nivel:Seleccione LSU T1.
Casete de 3º nivel:Seleccione LSU T2.
Casete de 4º nivel:Seleccione LSU T3.
Presione la tecla de interrupción para imprimir un patrón de prueba y compruebe la imagen impresa.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si la separación entre el centro del papel (línea de puntos) y la línea de la copia de muestra (2) es mayor que el valor de referencia, realizar el siguiente ajuste.
2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -7,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve la línea de centro en 0,1 mm.
3. Haga salir nuevamente el patrón de prueba.
4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen der Mittellinie

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Wählen Sie ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING, und drücken Sie die Starttaste.
Kassette 2. Stufe:Wählen Sie LSU T1.
Kassette 3. Stufe:Wählen Sie LSU T2.
Kassette 4. Stufe:Wählen Sie LSU T3.
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um ein Testmuster auszudrucken, und überprüfen Sie das Druckbild.<Bezugswert> Binnen ±2,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Mittenlinie des Papiers (Punktierte Linie) und der Kopienmusterlinie (2) größer als der Bezugswert ist,ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -7,0 - +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Mittellinie um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.
4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen ± 2,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD:
Regolazione della linea di centro

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Selezionare ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING e premere il tasto di avvio.
Cassetto del 2° livello:Selezionare LSU T1.
Cassetto del 3° livello:Selezionare LSU T2.
Cassetto del 4° livello:Selezionare LSU T3.
Premere il tasto di interruzione per stampare i modelli di prova e controllare l'immagine stampata.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ±2.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento fra il centro della carta (linea tratteggiata) e la linea dell'esempio di copia (2) è maggiore rispetto al valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -7.0 - +10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta la linea centrale di 0,1 mm.
3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ±2.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

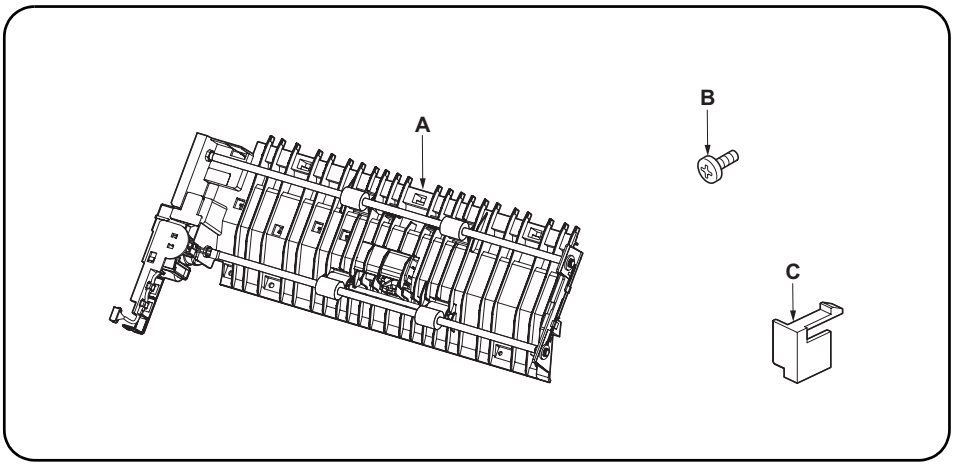
操作面板为 LCD 型时
[中心线的调整]

1. 执行维修模式 034。
选择 ADJ.LSU OUT TIMING 按下开始键。
第二纸盒 :LSU T1。
第三纸盒 :LSU T2。
第四纸盒 :LSU T3。
按插印键，打印测试图案，然后确认图像质量。〈 参考值 〉 ± 2.0 mm 以内（a 图像为复印示例）
若纸张中线（虚线）与复印示例线（2）的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。
2. b 图像时：增加调整值。
c 图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-0.7~+10.0
1 单位的变化量：0.1mm
3. 再次进行试输出图像。
4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线（1）的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈 参考值 〉 ± 2.0 mm 以内（a 图像为复印示例）

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合
[センターライン調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING を選択し、スタートキーを押す。
カセット 2 段目:LSU T1 を選択する。
カセット 3 段目:LSU T2 を選択する。
カセット 4 段目:LSU T3 を選択する。
割り込みキーを押し、テストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。
〈基準値〉± 2.0mm 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
紙のセンター(波線)とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準外の場合は、次の調整を行う。
2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-7.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1mm
3. 再度テストパターン出力をおこなう。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉± 2.0mm 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DUPLEX UNIT



English

Supplied parts
A Duplex unit..... 1
B M3 x 08 screw 2
C Wire guide 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Procedure
Be sure to turn off the main switch of the main body of the copier or MFP and disconnect the power plug of the main body from the wall outlet before starting to install the Duplex Unit.

Français

Pièces fournies
A Unité recto-verso 1
B Vis M3 x 08..... 2
C Guide câble 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Procédure
Veillez à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du corps principal du copieur ou du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation de l'unité recto-verso.

Español

Partes suministradas
A Unidad dúplex..... 1
B Tornillo M3 x 08 2
C Guía para el cable 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del cuerpo principal de la copiadora o MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar la Unidad Dúplex.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile
A Duplex-Einheit 1
B M3 x 08 Schraube 2
C Kabelführung 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter der Haupteinheit des Kopierers oder MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation der Duplex-Einheit beginnen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura
A Unità Duplex 1
B Vite M3 x 08..... 2
C Guida cavi..... 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Procedura
Assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale del corpo principale della copiatrice o dell'MFP e di disconnettere il cordone di alimentazione dalla presa a muro prima di dare inizio alla procedura d'installazione dell'Unità Duplex.

简体中文

附属品
A 双面器.....1
B M3 × 08 螺钉 2
C 电线导管.....1

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

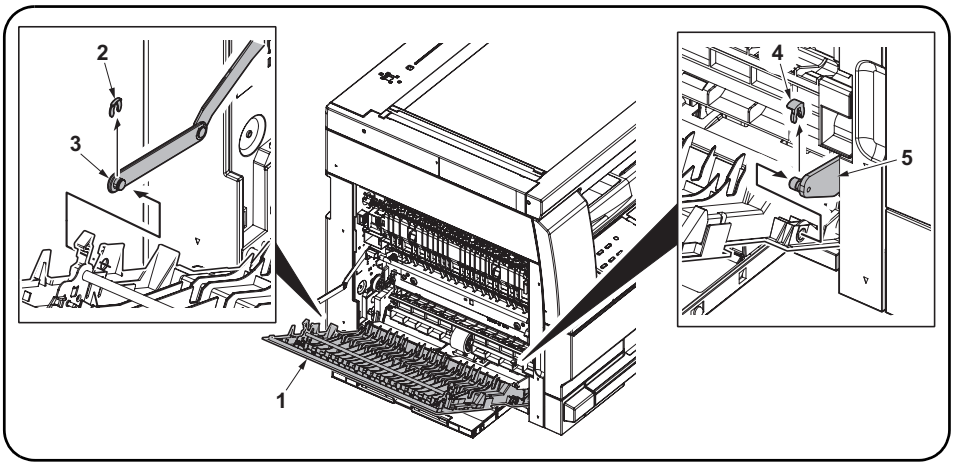
安装步骤
安装双面器时，必须先关闭复印机或MFP本体的主电源开关，拔下本体电源插头后，才能进行操作。

日本語

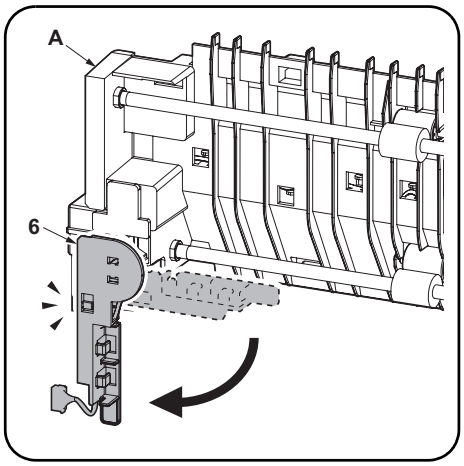
同梱品
A 両面ユニット.....1
B ビス M3 × 08 2
C 電線ガイド.....1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

取付手順
両面ユニットを取り付ける際は、必ず複写機またはMFP(プリンタ標準機)本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。



1. Open the left cover (1).
2. Remove the stop ring (2) and the strap (3) from the rear side.
3. Remove the stop ring (4) and strap (5) from the front side.
4. Open the left cover (1) until it is put horizontally.



5. Turn the wire guide section (6) on the duplex unit (A) in the direction of the arrow until you hear a click.

---

1. Ouvrez le couvercle gauche (1).
2. Retirez la bague d'arrêt (2) et la courroie (3) du côté arrière.
3. Déposez la bague d'arrêt (4) et la courroie (5) sur le côté avant.
4. Ouvrez le couvercle gauche (1) jusqu'à ce qu'il soit placé horizontalement.

5. Faites tourner la partie guide câble (6) de l'unité recto-verso (A) dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.

---

1. Abra la cubierta izquierda (1).
2. .Desmonte el anillo de tope (2) y la correa (3) del lado trasero.
3. Quitar el anillo de tope (4) y la correa (5) del lado delantero.
4. Abra la cubierta izquierda (1) hasta que lo ponga horizontalmente.

5. Girar, en la dirección de la flecha, la sección de la guía para el cable (6) en la unidad dúplex (A), hasta escuchar un clic.

---

1. Aprire il coperchio sinistro (1).
2. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (2) e la cinghietta (3) dal lato posteriore.
3. Entfernen Sie den Anschlagring (4) und den Riemen (5) von der Vorderseite.
4. Aprire il coperchio sinistro (1) finché non è in posizione orizzontale.

5. Drehen Sie das Kabelführungsteil (6) an der Duplex-Einheit (A) in der Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.

---

1. Aprire il coperchio sinistro (1).
2. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (2) e la cinghietta (3) dal lato posteriore.
3. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (4) e la cinghietta (5) dal lato fronta.
4. Aprire il coperchio sinistro (1) finché non è in posizione orizzontale.

5. Ruotare la sezione di guida cavi (6) sull'unità Duplex (A) nella direzione della freccia, finché non si sente un clic.

---

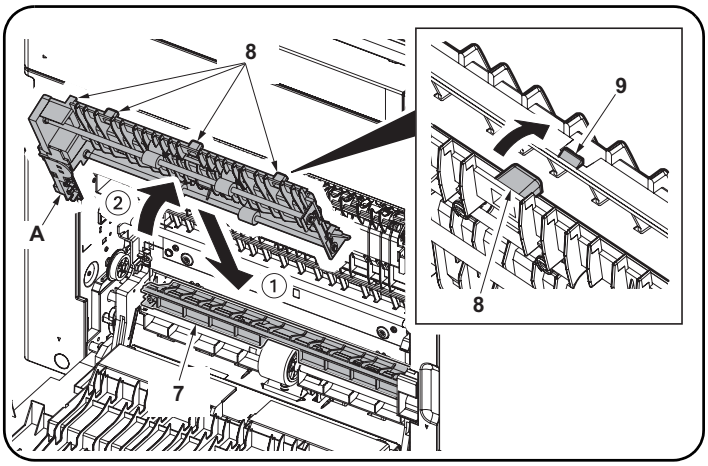
1. 打开左盖 (1)。
2. 卸下后侧的止动环 (2) 和紧固夹件 (3)。
3. 卸下前侧的止动环 (4) 和紧固夹件(5)。
4. 打开左盖 (1) 至水平状态。

5. 将双面器(A)的电线导管部分(6)朝箭头方向旋转，直至听到喀嗒声。

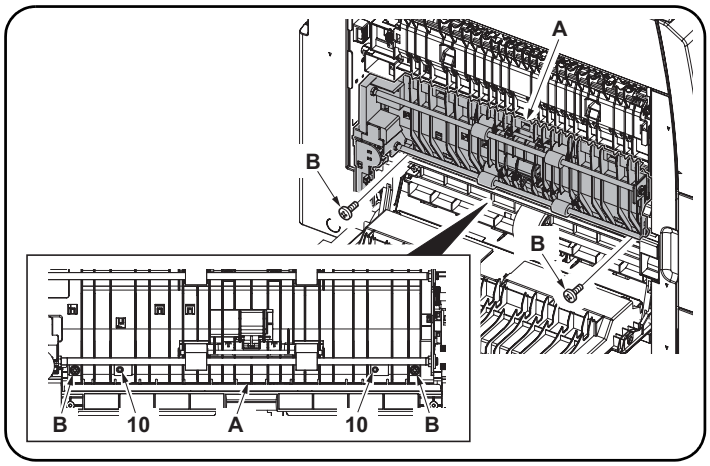
---

1. 左カバー(1) を開く。
2. 後側のストップリング (2) およびストラップ (3) を取り外す。
3. 前側のストップリング (4) およびストッパ (5) を取り外す。
4. 左カバー(1) を水平になるまで開く。

5. 両面ユニット (A) の電線ガイド部分 (6) を矢印方向にカチッと音がするまで回す。



6. Mount the duplex unit (A) on the conveying guide (7) and push the upper section in the direction of the arrow so that the 4 latches (8) fit over the pawls (9).



7. Fit the projections (10) into the duplex unit (A).
8. Secure the duplex unit (A) with two M3 x 08 screws (B).

---

6. Montez l'unité recto-verso (A) sur le guide d'entraînement (7) et poussez la partie supérieure dans la direction de la flèche de sorte que les 4 verrous (8) s'encastrent sur les cliquets (9).

7. Insérez les saillies (10) dans l'unité recto-verso (A).
8. Fixez l'unité recto-verso (A) avec les deux vis M3 x 08 (B).

---

6. Montar la unidad dúplex (A) en la guía de transporte (7) y empujar la porción superior, en la dirección de la flecha, de forma tal que los 4 pestillos (8) encajen sobre los trinquetes (9).

7. Instalar los resaltos (10) en la unidad dúplex (A).
8. Asegure la unidad duplex (A) con los dos tornillos M3 x 08 (B).

---

6. Montieren Sie die Duplex-Einheit (A) an der Förderführung (7), und drücken Sie den oberen Teil in der Pfeilrichtung, so dass die 4 Rasten (8) über die Klauen (9) greifen.

7. Setzen Sie die Vorsprünge (10) in die Duplex-Einheit (A) ein.
8. Die Duplex-Einheit (A) mit den zwei Schrauben M3 x 08 (B) befestigen.

---

6. Montare l'unità Duplex (A) sulla guida di trasporto (7) e spingere la sezione superiore nella direzione della freccia, in modo che 4 fermi (8) si inseriscano sui nottolini (9).

7. Inserire le sporgenze (10) nell'unità Duplex (A).
8. Fissare l'unità duplex (A) a mezzo delle due viti M3 x 08 (B).

---

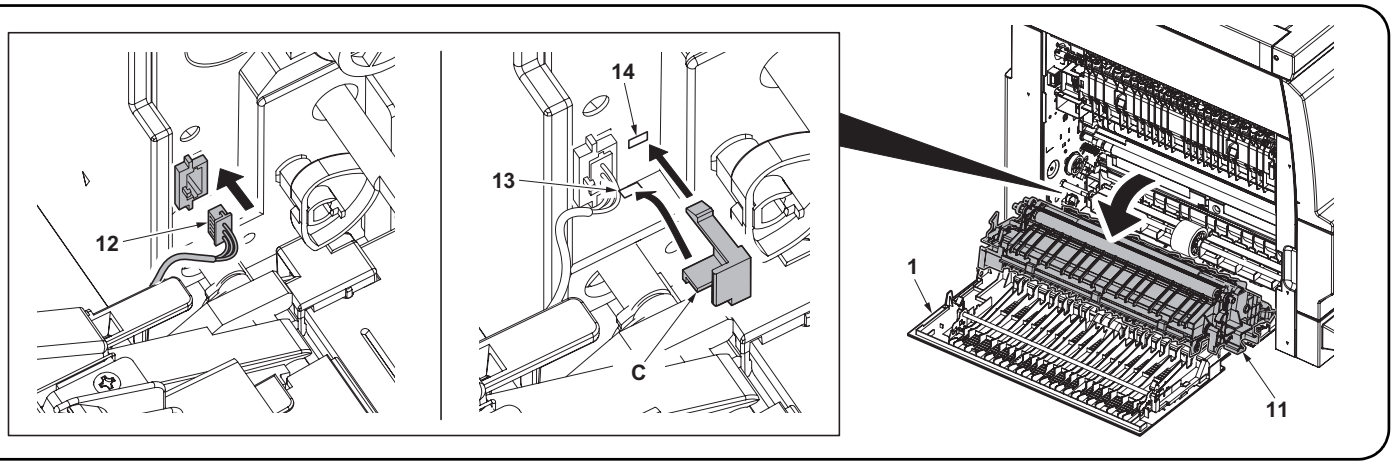
6. 安装传输导板(7)上的双面器(A)时,沿箭头方向推传输导板上部,使4个卡扣(8)与卡爪(9)啮合。

7. 将凸出部分(10)安装至双面器中(A)。
8. 用2个 M3 × 08 螺钉 (B) 紧固双面器 (A)。

---

6. 両面ユニット (A) を搬送ガイド (7) に載せ、上部を矢印方向へ押して、はめ込み部 (8)4 箇所を爪 (9) にはめ込む。

7. ボス (10) を両面ユニット (A) にはめ込む。
8. ビス M3 × 08(B)2 本で両面ユニット (A) を固定する。



9. Open the conveyer unit (11) and connect the connector (12) of the duplex unit (A) to the main body.
10. Slot the wire guide (C) into latch (13) and then latch (14) on the main unit.
11. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.
12. Close the conveyer unit (11) and left cover (1).

Checking the operation
Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.

---

9. Ouvrez l'unité d'entraînement (11) et connectez le connecteur (12) de l'unité recto-verso (A) au corps principal.
10. Glissez le guide câble (C) dans le verrou (13) puis dans le verrou (14) de l'unité principale
11. .Remettez les pieces enlevees a leurposition d'origine.
12. Fermez l'unité d'entraînement (11) et le couvercle gauche (1).

Vérification du fonctionnement
Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.

---

9. Abra la unidad transportadora (11) y conecte el conector (12) de la unidad duplex (A) en el cuerpo principal.
10. Encajar la guía para el cable (C) en el pestillo (13) y, a continuación, en el pestillo (14) de la unidad principal.
11. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadasen sus posiciones originales.
12. Cerrar la unidad transportadora (11) y la cubierta izquierda (1).

Verificación del funcionamiento
Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.

---

9. Die Fördereinheit öffnen (11), und den Steckverbinder (12) der Duplex-Einheit (A) an die Haupteinheit anschließen.
10. Schieben Sie die Kabelführung (C) in die Raste (13) und dann die Raste (14) an der Haupteinheit
11. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihrenursprunglichen Positionen anbringen.
12. Schließen Sie die Fördereinheit (11) und die linke Abdeckung (1).

Überprüfen des Betriebs
Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.

---

9. Aprire l'unità convogliatore (11) e collegare il connettore (12) dell'unità duplex (A) al corpo principale.
10. Inserire la guida cavi (C) nel fermo (13), e quindi il fermo (14) sull'unità principale.
11. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loroposizioni originali
12. Chiudere l'unità convogliatore (11) e il coperchio sinistro (1).

Verifica di funzionamento
Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

---

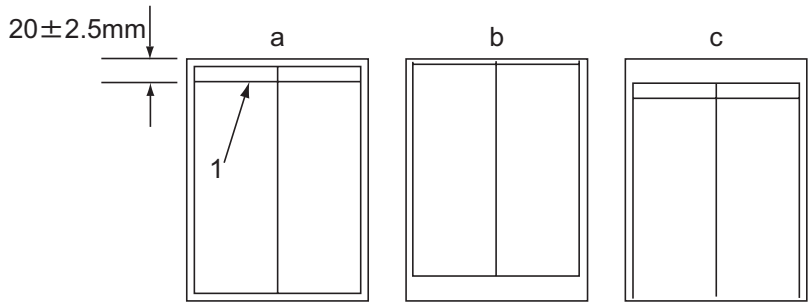
9. 打开输送装置 (11)，将双面器 (A) 的插头 (12) 连接在本体上。
10. 将电线导管(C)先后插入主机上的卡扣 (13)和(14)中。
11. 卸下的部件按原样装上。
12. 关闭输送 装置(11)及左盖(1) 。

操作确认
将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。

---

9. 搬送ユニット (11) を開き、両面ユニット (A) のコネクタ (12) を本体に接続する。
10. 電線ガイド (C) を本体のはめ込み部 (13)、(14) の順にはめ込む。
11. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付ける。
12. 搬送ユニット (11) および左カバー(1) を閉じる。

動作確認
機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。



If the operation panel is a 7-segment type:
Adjusting the leading edge timing

1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Press the image quality mode key until "Text" is lit. (group 1)
Press the exposure key until "exp1" is flashing. (mode 6)
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image. <Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
ISetting range: -5.0 -+ 10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.

3. Make a test copy again.

4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments:
Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Appuyez sur la touche de mode de qualité d'image jusqu'à ce que "Text" s'allume. (groupe 1)
Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp1" clignote. (mode 6)
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour produire le motif de test en mode recto-verso et vérifiez l'image. <Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -5,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.

3. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo 7 segmentos:
Ajuste de la sincronización del borde superior

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Presione la tecla de modo de calidad de imagen hasta que se encienda "Text" (grupo 1)
Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que destelle "exp1" (modo 6)
Presionar la tecla de interrupción para imprimir el patrón de prueba en modo dúplex y controlar la imagen. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realizar el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -5,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.

3. Vuelva a hacer una copia de ensayo.

4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a)).

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timings

1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Drücken Sie die Bildqualitätsmodustaste, bis "Text" aufleuchtet. (Gruppe 1)
Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp1" blinkt. (Modus 6)
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um das Testmuster im Duplexmodus auszugeben, und überprüfen Sie das Bild. <Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).
Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -5,0 – +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.

3. Machen Sie eine erneute Probekopie.

4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti:
Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Premere il tasto di modo della qualità dell'immagine finché "Text" non si illumina. (gruppo 1)
Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "expl" inizia a lampeggiare. (modo 6)
Premere il tasto di interruzione per eseguire i modelli di prova nel modo duplex e controllare l'immagine. <Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -5.0 –+10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta il bordo di entrata di 0.1 mm.

3. Fare di nuovo una copia di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为 7 seg型时
[前端图像偏移调整]

1. 执行维修模式034。
用图像质量模式键使“文字复印”点亮。(组1)
用浓度调整键使“exp1”闪烁。(模式6)
按下插入键，在双面模式下试输出图像，进行图像确认。
〈参考值〉20±2.5㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)
若纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b图像时：增加调整值。
c图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-5.0ー +10.0
1单位的变化量: 0.1mm

3. 再次进行试复印。

4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉20±2.5㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

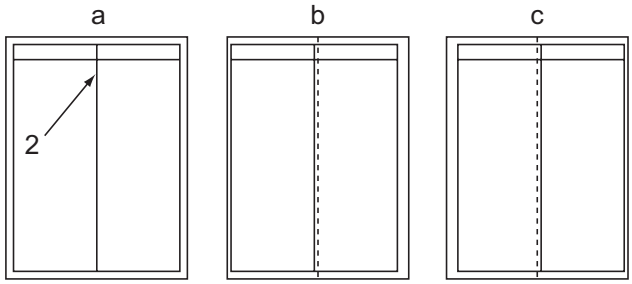
操作パネルが 7seg タイプの場合
[先端タイミング調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
画質モードキーで“文字”を点灯させる。(グループ 1)
濃度調整キーで“exp1”を点滅させる。(モード 6)
割り込みキーを押し、両面モードでテストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
ずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:設定値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-5.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1㎜

3. 再度テストパターン出力を行う。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (1) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is a 7-segment type:
Adjusting the center line

1. 1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Press the image quality mode key until "Text" and "Photo" are lit. (group 2)
Press the exposure key until "exp1" is flashing. (mode 6)
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image. <Reference value> Within ± 3.0 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the center of the paper (dotted line) and the copy example line (2) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -7.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.
3. Make a test copy again.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within ± 3.0 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type à 7 segments:
Réglage de la ligne centrale

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Appuyez sur la touche de mode de qualité d'image jusqu'à ce que "Text" et "Photo" s'allument. (groupe 2)
Appuyez sur la touche d'exposition jusqu'à ce que "exp1" clignote. (mode 6)
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour produire le motif de test en mode recto-verso et vérifiez l'image. <Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 3,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -7,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.
3. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 3,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie).

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo 7 segmentos:
Ajuste de la línea central

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Presione la tecla de modo de calidad de imagen hasta que se enciendan "Text" y "Photo". (grupo 2)
Presione la tecla de exposición hasta que destelle "exp1" (modo 6)
Presionar la tecla de interrupción para imprimir el patrón de prueba en modo dúplex y controlar la imagen. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 3,0 (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realizar el siguiente ajus.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -7,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.
3. Vuelva a hacer una copia de ensayo.
4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 3,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine 7-Segment-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen der Mittellinie

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Drücken Sie die Bildqualitätsmodustaste, bis "Text" und "Photo" aufleuchten. (Gruppe 2)
Drücken Sie die Belichtungstaste, bis "exp1" blinkt. (Modus 6)
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um das Testmuster im Duplexmodus auszugeben, und überprüfen Sie das Bild. <Bezugswert> Binnen ±3,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Mittenlinie des Papiers (Punktierte Linie) und der Kopienmusterlinie (2) größer als der Bezugswert ist,ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -7,0 – +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Machen Sie eine erneute Probekopie.
4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen ± 3,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello a 7 segmenti:
Regolazione della linea di centro

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Premere il tasto di modo della qualità dell'immagine finché "Text" e "Photo" non si illuminano. (gruppo 2)
Premere il tasto di esposizione finché "expl" inizia a lampeggiare. (modo 6)
Premere il tasto di interruzione per eseguire i modelli di prova nel modo duplex e controllare l'immagine. <Valore di riferimento> Entro ±3.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a)
Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazio.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -7.0 –+10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta il bordo di entrata di 0.1 mm.
3. Fare di nuovo una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ±3.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为 7 seg型时
[中心线的调整]

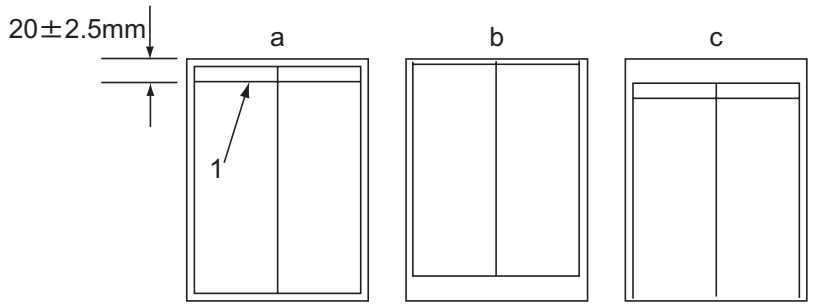
1. 执行维修模式034。
用图质模式键使“文字复印”和“图片复印”点亮。(组2)
用浓度调整键使“exp1”闪烁。(模式6)
按下插入键，在双面模式下试输出图像，进行图像确认。
〈参考值〉±3.0㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)
若纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b图像时：增加调整值。
c图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-7.0— +10.0
1单位的变化量： 0.1mm
3. 再次进行试复印。
4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉±3.0㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

操作パネルが 7seg タイプの場合
[センターライン調整]

1. メンテナンスモードU034 を実行する。
画質モードキーで“文字”および“写真”を点灯させる。(グループ 2)
濃度調整キーで“exp1”を点滅させる。(モード 6)
割り込みキーを押し、両面モードでテストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。
〈基準値〉± 3.0㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
紙のセンター(破線)とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-7.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1㎜
3. 再度テストパターン出力を行う。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉± 3.0㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is an LCD type:
Adjusting the leading edge timing

1. 1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Select ADJ, RCL ON TIMING and press the Start key.
Select RCL DUP.
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image. <Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -5.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the leading edge by 0.1 mm.
3. Output the test pattern again.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 until the line (1) in the copy example is within the reference value.
<Reference value> Within 20 ±2.5 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD:
Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant

1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Sélectionnez ADJ, RCL ON TIMING et appuyez sur la touche de départ copie.
Sélectionnez RCL DUP.
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour produire le motif de test en mode recto-verso et vérifiez l'image. <Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence,effectuez le réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -5,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, le bord avant se déplace de 0,1 mm.
3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.
4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de 20 ± 2,5 mm(image (a) d'un exemple de copie)

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo LCD:
Ajuste de la sincronización del borde superior

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Seleccione ADJ, RCL ON TIMING y presione la tecla de inicio.
Seleccione RCL DUP.
Presionar la tecla de interrupción para imprimir el patrón de prueba en modo dúplex y controlar la imagen. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a)).
Si la separación supera el valor de referencia,realizar el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -5,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve el extremo guía en 0,1 mm.
3. Haga salir nuevamente el patrón de prueba.
4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de 20 ± 2,5mm(imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timings

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Wählen Sie ADJ, RCL ON TIMING, und drücken Sie die Starttaste.
Wählen Sie RCL DUP.
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um das Testmuster im Duplexmodus auszugeben, und überprüfen Sie das Bild. <Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)
Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -5,0 - +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Vorderkante um 0,1 mm verschoben.
3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.
4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen 20 ±2,5 mm(Kopienmuster (a) Bild).

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD:
Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Selezionare ADJ, RCL ON TIMING e premere il tasto di avvio.
Selezionare RCL DUP.
Premere il tasto di interruzione per eseguire i modelli di prova nel modo duplex e controllare l'immagine. <Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a)
Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -5.0 - +10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta il bordo di entrata di 0.1 mm.
3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro 20 ±2.5 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为LCD型时
[前端图像偏移调整]

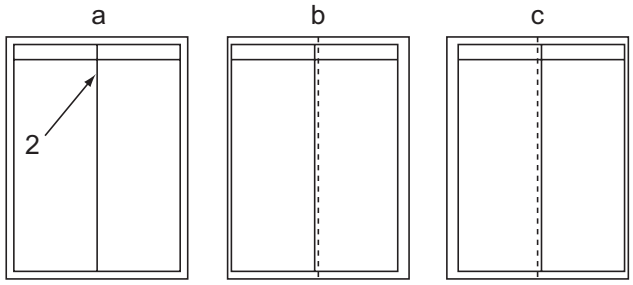
1. 执行维修模式034。
选择ADJ.RCL ON TIMING按下开始键。
选择RCL DUP。
按下插入键，在双面模式下试输出图像，进行图像确认。
〈参考值〉20±2.5㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)
若纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b图像时：增加调整值。
c图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-5.0ー +10.0
1单位的变化量: 0.1mm
3. 再次进行试复印。
4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉20±2.5㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合
[先端タイミング調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
ADJ, RCL ON TIMING を選択し、スタートキーを押す。
RCL DUP を選択する。
割り込みキーを押し、両面モードでテストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
ずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-5.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1㎜
3. 再度テストパターン出力を行う。
4. コピーサンプルの線 (1) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉20 ± 2.5㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)



If the operation panel is an LCD type:
Adjusting the center line

1. Run maintenance mode 034.
Select ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING and press the Start key.
Select LSU DUP.
Press the Interrupt key to output the test pattern in duplex mode and check the image. <Reference value> Within ± 3.0 mm (copy example (a) image)
If the gap between the center of the paper (dotted line) and the copy example line (2) is larger than the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

2. For the image in copy example (b): Increase the value.
For the image in copy example (c): Decrease the value.
Setting range: -7.0 - +10.0
Changing the value by one moves the center line by 0.1 mm.

3. Output the test pattern again.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until an adequate image is obtained.
<Reference value> Within ± 3.0 mm (copy example (a) image)

Si le panneau de commande est du type LCD:
Réglage de la ligne centrale

1. 1. Exécutez le mode de maintenance 034.
Sélectionnez ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING et appuyez sur la touche de départ copie.
Sélectionnez LSU DUP.
Appuyez sur la touche d'interruption pour produire le motif de test en mode recto-verso et vérifiez l'image. <Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ± 3,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie
Si l'écart entre l'axe du papier (ligne pointillée) et le trait de l'exemple de copie (2) est supérieur à la valeur de référence,effectuez le réglage suivant.

2. Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (b) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'image dans l'exemple de copie (c) : diminuer la valeur.
Plage de paramètres: -7,0 - +10,0
Lorsqu'on change la valeur d'une unité, la ligne centrale se déplace de 0,1 mm.

3. Produisez à nouveau le motif de test.

4. Répétez les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (1) dans l'exemple de copie soit dans les limites de la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Dans les limites de ±3,0 mm (image (a) d'un exemple de copie)

Si el tablero de controles es de tipo LCD:
Ajuste de la línea central

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento 034.
Seleccione ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING y presione la tecla de inicio.
Seleccione LSU DUP.
Presionar la tecla de interrupción para imprimir el patrón de prueba en modo dúplex y controlar la imagen.
<Valor de referencia>Dentro de ± 3,0 mm (imagen de copia de muestra (a))
Si la separación entre el centro del papel (línea de puntos) y la línea de la copia de muestra (2) es mayor que el valor de referencia, realizar el siguiente ajuste.

2. Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (b): aumentar el valor.
Para la imagen en la copia de muestra (c): disminuir el valor.
Gama de ajustes: -7,0 - +10,0
Un cambio de valor en una unidad mueve la línea de centro en 0,1 mm.

3. Haga salir nuevamente el patrón de prueba.

4. Repetir los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que la línea (1) en la copia de muestra se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>Dentro de ± 3,0 mm(imagen de copia de muestra (a))

Wenn es sich um eine LCD-Bedienungstafel handelt:
Einstellen der Mittellinie

1. 1. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus 034 aus.
Wählen Sie ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING, und drücken Sie die Starttaste.
Wählen Sie LSU DUP.
Drücken Sie die Unterbrechungstaste, um das Testmuster im Duplexmodus auszugeben, und überprüfen Sie das Bild. <Bezugswert> Binnen ±3,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild).
Falls der Abstand zwischen der Mittenlinie des Papiers (Punktierte Linie) und der Kopienmusterlinie (2) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

2. Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (b): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für das Bild im Kopienmuster (c): Den Wert verringern.
Einstellbereich: -7,0 - +10,0
Durch Ändern des Werts um eins wird die Mittellinie um 0,1 mm verschoben.

3. Das Testmuster erneut ausgeben.

4. Die Schritte 2 und 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (1) im Kopienmuster innerhalb des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> Binnen ±3,0 mm (Kopienmuster (a) Bild)

Se il tipo di pannello operativo è quello LCD:
Regolazione della linea di centro

1. 1. Avviare il modo manutenzione 034.
Selezionare ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING e premere il tasto di avvio.
Selezionare LSU DUP.
Premere il tasto di interruzione per eseguire i modelli di prova nel modo duplex e controllare l'immagine. <Valore di riferimento> Entro ± 3.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))
Se lo scostamento fra il centro della carta (linea tratteggiata) e la linea dell'esempio di copia (2) è maggiore rispetto al valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

2. Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (b): aumentare il valore.
Per l'immagine nell'esempio di copia (c): ridurre il valore.
Gamma di impostazione: -7.0 - +10.0
Cambiando il valore di una unità si sposta la linea centrale di 0,1 mm.

3. Eseguire di nuovo i modelli di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 finché la linea (1) nell'esempio di copia non sia entro il valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ± 3.0 mm (immagine dell'esempio di copia (a))

操作面板为LCD型时
[中心线的调整]

1. 执行维修模式034。
选择ADJ.LSU OUT TIMING按下开始键。
选择LSU DUP。
按下插入键，在双面模式下试输出图像，进行图像确认。
〈参考值〉±3.0㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)
若纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离超过参考值范围，则进行进一步的调整。

2. b图像时：增加调整值。
c图像时：减少调整值。
设定范围：-7.0ー +10.0
1单位的变化量: 0.1mm

3. 再次进行试复印。

4. 反复操作步骤 2 至 3，直到纸张中线与复印示例线(1)的距离处于参考值范围内。
〈参考值〉±3.0㎜ 以内(a 图像为复印示例)

操作パネルが LCD タイプの場合
[センターライン調整]

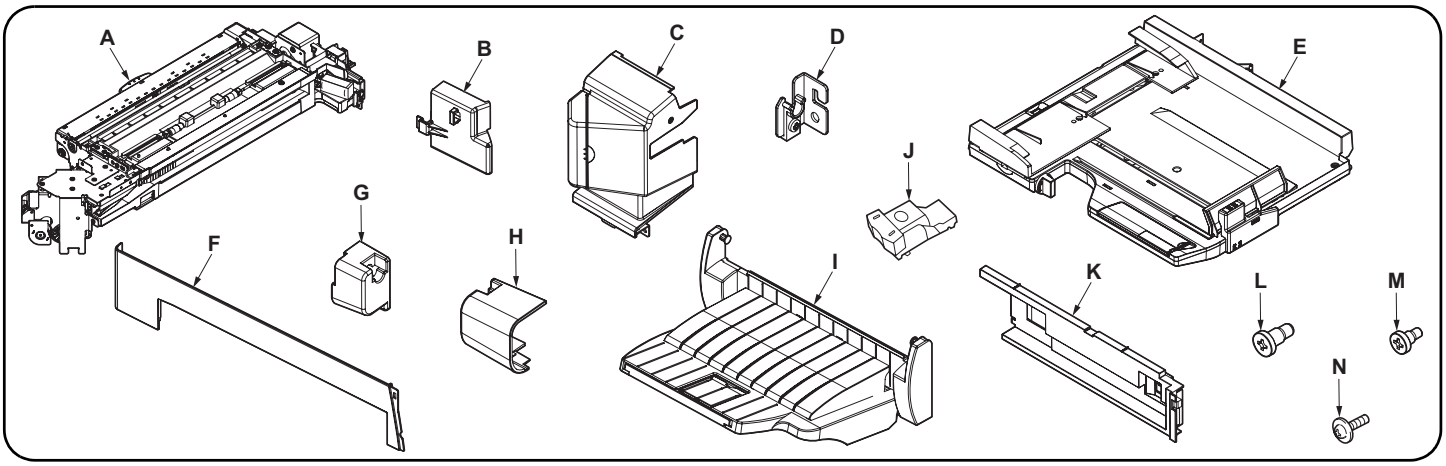
1. メンテナンスモード U034 を実行する。
ADJ, LSU OUT TIMING を選択し、スタートキーを押す。
LSU DUP を選択する。
割り込みキーを押し、両面モードでテストパターンを出力して、画像を確認する。
〈基準値〉± 3.0㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)
紙のセンター(破線)とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。

2. コピーサンプル (b) 画像の場合:調整値を上げる。
コピーサンプル (c) 画像の場合:調整値を下げる。
設定範囲:-7.0 ～ +10.0
1 ステップの変化量:0.1㎜

3. 再度テストパターン出力を行う。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 2 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
〈基準値〉± 3.0㎜ 以内 (コピーサンプル (a) 画像)

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR BUILT-IN FINISHER



English

Supplied parts

A Paper conveying unit 1
B Sub staple cover 1
C Staple cover 1
D Hook holder 1
E Finisher process table 1
F Upper left cover 1
G Front eject cover 1
H Rear eject cover 1
I Finisher tray 1
J Staple cartridge 1
K Inner cover 1
L Large pin 1
M Small pin 1
N M3 × 6 screw 3

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Unité de transport du papier 1
B Capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire 1
C Capot de l'agrafeuse 1
D Support de crochet 1
E Table de processus du module de finition 1
F Capot supérieur gauche 1
G Capot d'éjection avant 1
H Capot d'éjection arrière 1
I Plateau du module de finition 1
J Cartouche d'agrafes 1
K 1
L Grande goupille 1
M Petite goupille 1
N Vis M3 × 6 3

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Unidad de transporte de papel 1
B Cubierta secundaria de grapas 1
C Cubierta de grapas 1
D Soporte de gancho 1
E Tabla de proceso de finalizador 1
F Cubierta superior izquierda 1
G Cubierta de expulsión frontal 1
H Cubierta de expulsión trasera 1
I Bandeja de finalizador 1
J Cartucho de grapas 1
K 1
L Pasador grande 1
M Pasador pequeño 1
N Tornillo M3 × 6 3

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Papierfördereinheit 1
B Hefterhilfsabdeckung 1
C Hefterabdeckung 1
D Hakenhalter 1
E Finisher-Druckablage 1
F Obere linke Abdeckung 1
G Frontauswurfabdeckung 1
H Rückauswurfabdeckung 1
I Finisher-Ablage 1
J Heftklammermagazin 1
K 1
L Großer Stift 1
M Kleiner Stift 1
N M3 × 6 Schraube 3

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di trasporto carta 1
B Coperchio secondario della pinzatrice 1
C Coperchio pinzatrice 1
D Supporto a gancio 1
E Tabella di elaborazione del finitore 1
F Coperchio superiore sinistro 1
G Coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta .. 1
H Coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta 1
I Vassoio finitore 1
J Cartuccia punti metallici 1
K 1
L Perno grande 1
M Perno piccolo 1
N Vite M3 × 6 3

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A 输送组件 1
B 副装订器盖板 1
C 装订器盖板 1
D 钩夹 1
E 装订分页器处理托盘 1
F 左上盖板 1
G 排纸盖板（前） 1
H 排纸盖板（后） 1
I 装订分页器托盘 1
J 订书钉盒 1
K 1
L 大卡销 1
M 小卡销 1
N 螺丝 M3 × 6 3

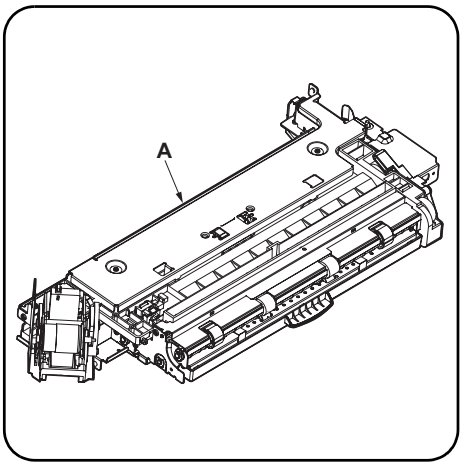
如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

日本語

同梱品

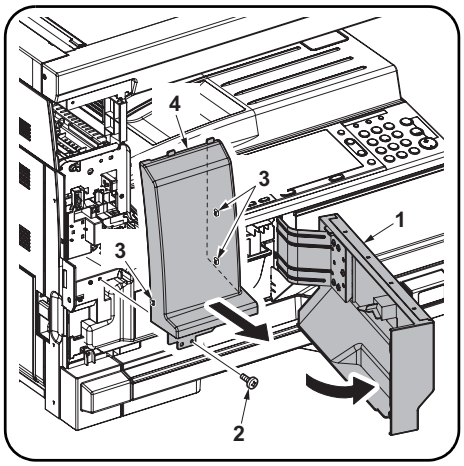
A 搬送ユニット 1
B サブステープルカバー 1
C ステープルカバー 1
D フックホルダ 1
E フィニッシャ処理トレイ 1
F 左上カバー 1
G 排出カバー前 1
H 排出カバー後 1
I フィニッシャトレイ 1
J ステープルカートリッジ 1
K 内カバー 1
L ピン大 1
M ピン小 1
N ビス M3 × 6 3

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Important
When placing the paper conveying unit (A) on the floor or the like, be sure to place it upside down because the staple mounting plate may be deformed.

Procedure
Before installing the finisher, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.



Removing the covers
1. Open the front cover (1).
2. Remove the screw (2) and release three latches (3) to remove the cover (4).

Important
Lorsque vous placez l'unité de transport du papier (A) sur le sol ou sur une surface équivalente, veillez à la placer sens dessus dessous, car la plaque de montage d'agrafes risque d'être déformée.

Procédure
Avant d'installer le module de finition, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Retrait des capots
1. Ouvrez le capot avant (1).
2. Déposez la vis (2) et libérez les trois verrous (3) pour déposer le capot (4).

Importante
Cuando coloca la unidad de transporte de papel (A) en el piso o similar, asegúrese de colocarlo invertido porque la placa de montaje de grapas puede deformarse.

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar el finalizador, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Desmontaje de las cubiertas
1. Abra la cubierta frontal (1).
2. Para quitar la cubierta (4), desmonte el tornillo (2) y libere los tres pestillos (3).

Wichtig
Wenn die Papierfördereinheit (A) auf den Boden oder dergleichen gestellt wird, muss sie auf den Kopf gestellt werden, weil sonst die Heftermontageplatte verformt werden kann.

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Finisher installieren.

Entfernen der Abdeckungen
1. Die Frontabdeckung (1) öffnen.
2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (2) und lösen Sie die drei Rasten (3), um die Abdeckung (4) abzunehmen.

Importante
Quando collocate l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) sul pavimento o in un altro luogo simile, accertatevi che sia posto capovolto, perché la piastra di montaggio della pinzatrice potrebbe deformarsi.

Procedura
Prima di installare il finitore, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

Rimozione dei coperchi
1. Aprite il coperchio anteriore (1).
2. Rimuovere la vite (2) e rilasciare i tre fermi (3) per rimuovere il coperchio (4).

注意事项
将输送组件 (A) 放在地板等上时，为了防止装订器安装板变形，必须翻过来放置。

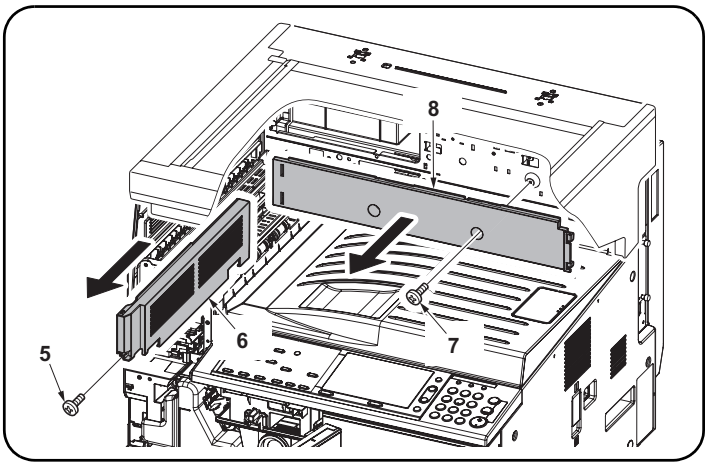
安装步骤
安装装订分页器时，必须先关闭机器主机的主电源开关，并拔下电源插头后，再进行安装作业。

拆下盖板类
1. 打开前盖板 (1)。
2. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (2)，松解 3 处嵌入板 (3)，然后，取下盖板 (4)。

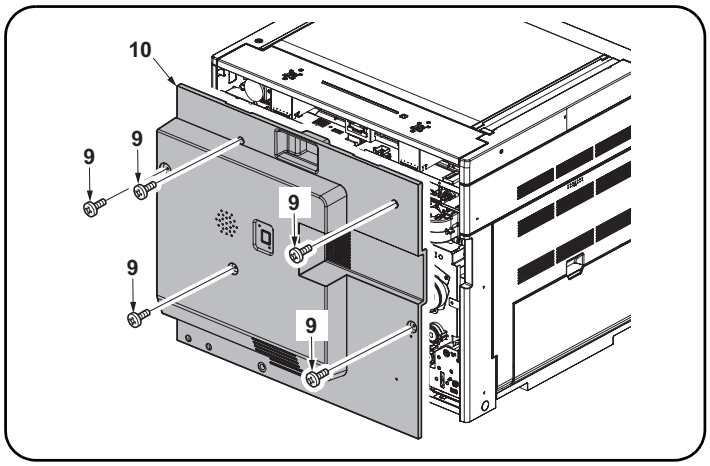
注意事項
搬送ユニット (A) を床などに置く場合は、ステープル取付板変形防止のため必ず裏返しにして置く。

取付手順
フィニッシャを設置する場合は、機械本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

カバー類の取り外し
1. 前カバー(1) を開く。
2. ビス (2)1 本を外し、はめ込み (3)3 箇所を解除してカバー(4) を取り外す。



3. Remove the screw (5) to remove the cover (6).
4. Remove the screw (7) to remove the cover (8).



5. Remove the 5 screws (9) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (10).

---

3. Retirez la vis (5) pour déposer le capot (6).
4. Retirez la vis (7) pour déposer le capot (8).

5. Déposez les 5 vis (9) à l'arrière de la machine pour enlever le capot (10).

---

3. Saque el tornillo (5) para desmontar la cubierta (6).
4. Saque el tornillo (7) para desmontar la cubierta (8).

5. Quitar los 5 tornillos (9) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (10).

---

3. Die Schraube (5) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (6) abzunehmen.
4. Die Schraube (7) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

5. Die 5 Schrauben (9) von der Rückseite des Geräts entfernen, um die Abdeckung (10) abzunehmen.

---

3. Togliete la vite (5) per rimuovere il coperchio (6).
4. Togliete la vite (7) per rimuovere il coperchio (8).

5. Rimuovere le 5 viti (9) dal lato posteriore della macchina per togliere il coperchio (10).

---

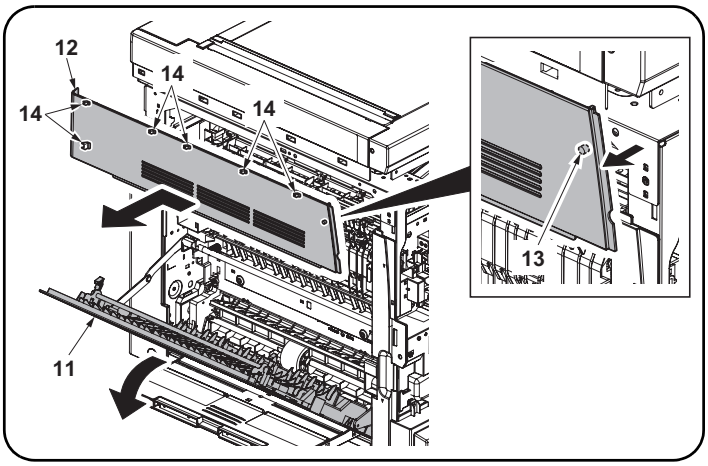
3. 卸下 1 个螺丝（5），取下盖板（6）。
4. 卸下 1 个螺丝（7），取下盖板（8）。

5. 从机器背面取下 5 个螺丝（9）以取下盖板（10）。

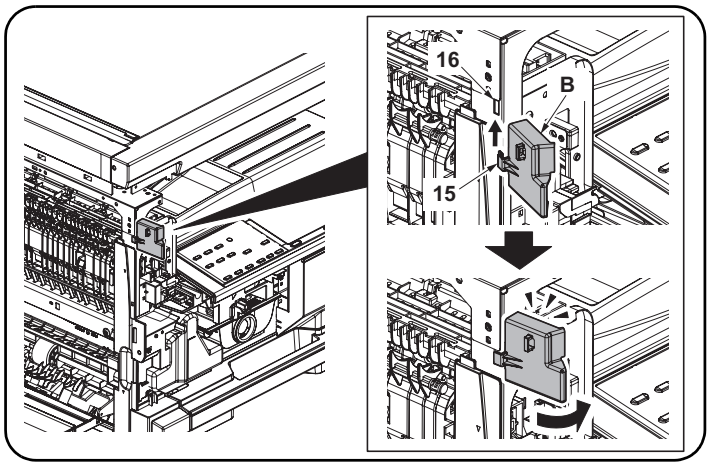
---

3. ビス（5）1 本を外し、カバー（6）を取り外す。
4. ビス（7）1 本を外し、カバー（8）を取り外す。

5. 機械本体後側のビス（9）5 本を外し、カバー（10）を取り外す。



6. Open the left cover (11).
7. Release the latch (13) of the cover (12).
Slide the cover (12) to the rear, release the 6 clips (14) and remove the cover



Attaching the sub staple cover
8. Insert the hook (15) of the sub staple cover (B) and turn the cover (B) in the direction of arrow until it clicks to attach.

---

6. Ouvrez le capot gauche (11).
7. Libérer le verrou (13) du capot (12).
Faire glisser le capot (12) vers l'arrière, libérer les 6 pattes (14) et déposer le capot.

Fixation du capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire
8. Insérez le crochet (15) du capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire (B), puis faites tourner le capot (B) dans le sens de la flèche jusqu'à ce qu'il s'encliquète pour le fixer.

---

6. Abra la cubierta izquierda (11).
7. Liberar el pestillo (13) de la cubierta (12).
Deslizar la cubierta (12) hacia atrás, liberar las 6 lengüetas (14) y quitar la cubierta.

Colocación de la cubierta secundaria de grapas
8. Inserte el gancho (15) en la cubierta secundaria de grapas (B) y gire la cubierta (B) en el sentido de la flecha hasta que se produzca un chasquido para colocarlo.

---

6. Die linke Abdeckung (11) öffnen.
7. Lösen Sie die Raste (13) der Abdeckung (12).
Schieben Sie die Abdeckung (12) nach hinten, lösen Sie die 6 Laschen (14), und nehmen Sie die Abdeckung ab.

Anbringen der Hefterhilfsabdeckung
8. Den Haken (15) der Hefterhilfsabdeckung (B) einsetzen, und die Abdeckung (B) in Pfeilrichtung drehen, bis sie mit einem Klicken einrastet.

---

6. Aprite il coperchio sinistro (11).
7. Rilasciate il fermo (13) del coperchio (12).
Slittate il coperchio (12) all'indietro, rilasciate le 6 linguette (14) e rimuovete il coperchio.

Montaggio del coperchio secondario della pinzatrice
8. Inserite il gancio (15) del coperchio secondario della pinzatrice (B) e fate ruotare il coperchio (B) nella direzione della freccia fino a quando non si mette in posizione con un clic.

---

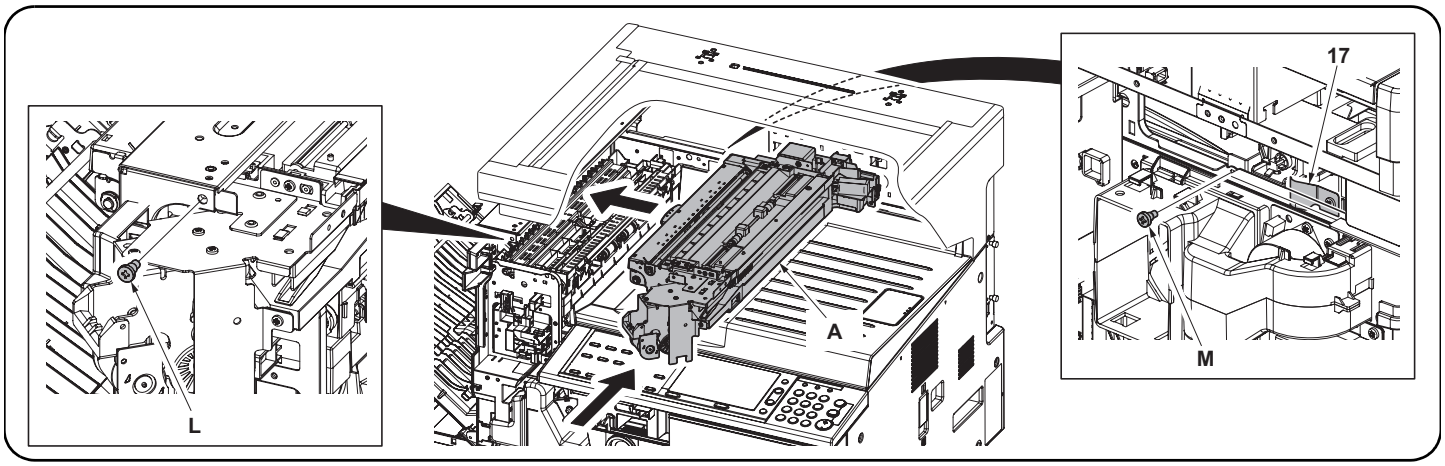
6. 打开左盖板 (11)。
7. 松解盖板 (12) 的嵌入板 (13)。
将盖板 (12) 滑至后侧，松解 6 处夹片 (14) 然后取下盖板。

安装副装订器盖板
8. 将副装订器盖板 (B) 的钩件 (15) 插入后，朝箭头方向转动安装，直至听到咔叽声为止。

---

6. 左カバー(11) を開く。
7. カバー(12) のはめ込み部 (13) を外す。
カバー(12) を後側へスライドさせ、爪(14)6 箇所を解除し、取り外す。

サブステープルカバーの取り付け
8. サブステープルカバー(B) のフック (15) を切り欠き (16) に挿入し、カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に回転し、取り付ける。



Installing the paper conveying unit

9. Insert the paper conveying unit (A) from the machine front and slide it to the left.
10. Fix the paper conveying unit (A) using two pins.
Front: Use the large pin (L).
Rear: Use the small pin (M).
The grounding plate (17) must be in contact with the frame.

Installation de l'unité de transport du papier

9. Insérez l'unité de transport du papier (A) depuis l'avant de la machine et faites-le glisser vers la gauche.
10. Fixez l'unité de transport du papier (A) à l'aide de deux goupilles.
Avant: Utilisez la grande goupille (L).
Arrière: Utilisez la petite goupille (M).
La prise de terre (17) doit être en contact avec le cadre.

Instalación de la unidad de transporte de papel

9. Inserte la unidad de transporte de papel (A) desde el frente de la máquina y deslice hacia la izquierda.
10. Fije la unidad de transporte de papel (A) utilizando dos pasadores.
Frente: Utilice el pasador grande (L).
Atrás: Utilice el pasador pequeño (M).
La placa de conexión a masa (17) debe estar en contacto con la carcasa.

Installieren der Papierfördereinheit

9. Die Papierfördereinheit (A) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen und nach links schieben.
10. Die Papierfördereinheit (A) mit zwei Stiften befestigen.
Vorn: Den großen Stift (L) verwenden.
Hinten: Den kleinen Stift (M) verwenden.
Die Erdungsplatte (17) muss in Kontakt mit dem Rahmen bleiben.

Montaggio dell'unità di trasporto della carta

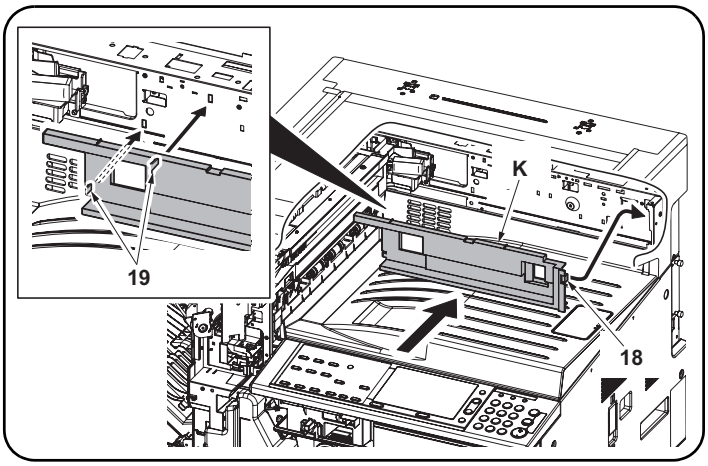
9. Inserite l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) dal lato anteriore della macchina e fatelo scivolare verso sinistra.
10. Fissate l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) utilizzando due perni.
Lato anteriore: utilizzate il perno grande (L).
Lato posteriore: utilizzate il perno piccolo (M).
La piastra della massa (17) deve essere a contatto con il telaio.

安装输送组件

9. 从机器主机前面插入输送组件 (A)，向左侧滑动。
10. 用 2 个卡销固定输送组件 (A)。
前面：大卡销 (L)
后面：小卡销 (M)
接地板（17）务必与机架接触。

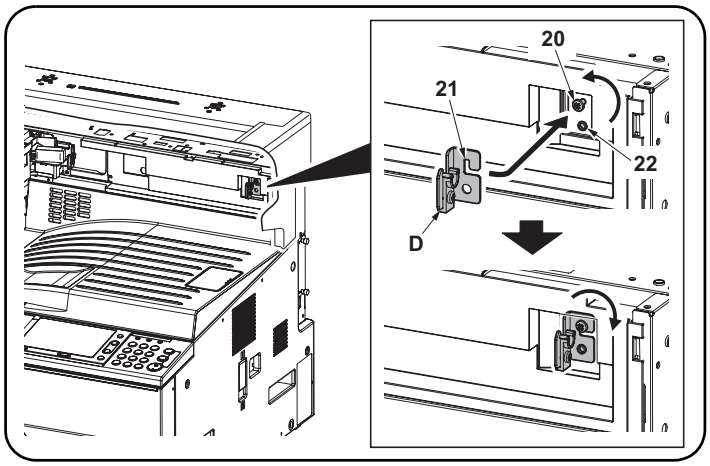
搬送ユニットの取り付け

9. 搬送ユニット (A) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左側へスライドする。
10. 搬送ユニット (A) をピン 2 本で固定する。
前側:ピン大 (L)
後側:ピン小 (M)
アース板 (17) がフレームに接触していること。



Installing the inner cover

11. Fit the inner cover (18) by slotting it in so that the latch (18) and the 2 clips (19) click into place.



Installing the finisher process table

12. Loosen the screw (20).
13. Fit the notch (21) in the hook holder (D) over the screw (20).
14. Fit the hole in the hook holder (D) over the projection and fasten the hook holder in place by tightening the screw (20).

Installation

11. Insérer le capot interne (K) en le glissant en place de sorte que le verrou (18) et les 2 pattes (19) cliquent en position.

Installation de la table de processus du module de finition

12. Desserrez la vis (20).
13. Insérer l'encoche (21) dans le support de crochet (D) au-dessus la vis (20).
14. Positionner le trou du support de crochet (D) au-dessus de la saillie (22) et fixer le support de crochet en position à l'aide de la vis (20).

Instalación

11. Instalar la cubierta interior (K) deslizándola por la ranura, hasta que el pestillo (18) y las 2 lengüetas (19) emitan un clic al llegar a su posición.

Instalación de la tabla de proceso de finalizador

12. Afloje el tornillo (20).
13. Colocar la muesca (21) en el soporte de gancho (D) sobre el tornillo (20).
14. Colocar el orificio del soporte de gancho (D) sobre el resalto (22) y ajustar el soporte de gancho en su lugar con el tornillo (20).

Installieren

11. Passen Sie die innere Abdeckung (K) durch Einschieben so ein, dass die Raste (18) und die 2 Laschen (19) hörbar einrasten.

Installieren der Finisher-Druckablage

12. Die Schraube (20) lösen.
13. Platzieren Sie die Öffnung (21) im Hakenhalter (D) über die Schraube (29).
14. Platzieren Sie das Loch im Hakenhalter (D) über den Vorsprung (22) und befestigen Sie den Hakenhalter durch Anziehen der Schraube (20).

Installazione

11. Montate il coperchio interno (K) inserendolo in modo che il fermo (18) e le 2 linguette (19) si inseriscano a scatto in posizione.

Installazione del tabella di elaborazione del finitore.

12. Allentate la vite (20).
13. Inserite l'incavo (21) del supporto a gancio (D) sulla vite (20).
14. Inserite il foro del supporto a gancio (D) sulla proiezione (22) e fissate il supporto a gancio in posizione stringendo la vite (20).

安装

11. 安装内盖板（18）时将其插入插槽内，将嵌入板（18）和 2 处夹片（19）安装到位，直至听见咔嗒声。

安装装订分页器处理托盘

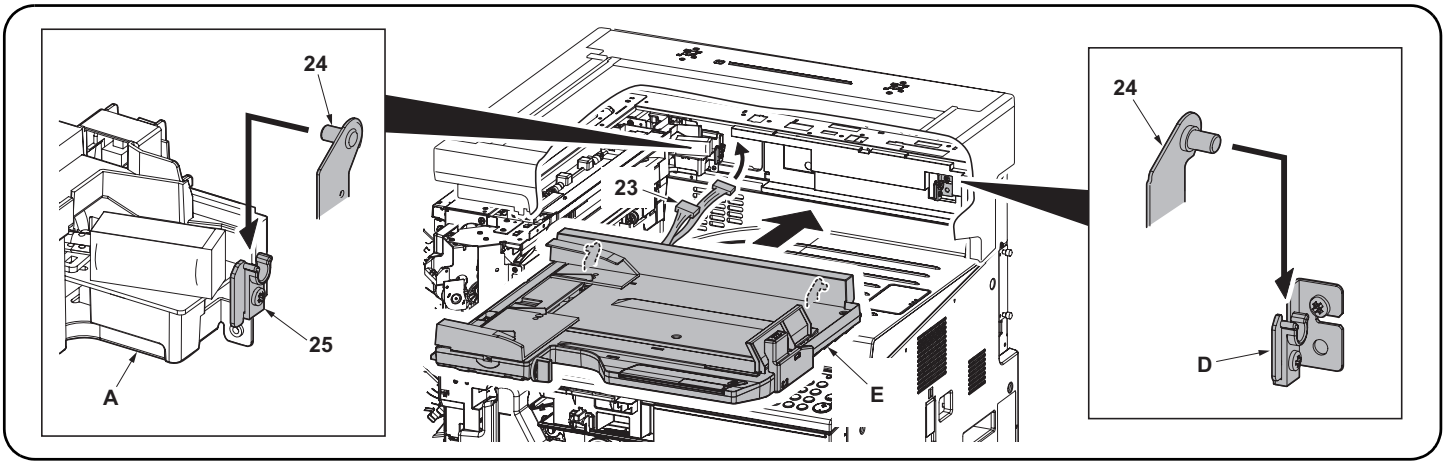
12. 松弛 1 个螺丝（20）。
13. 将钩夹（D）上的槽口（21）置于螺丝（20）上。
14. 将钩夹（D）中的孔对准凸出部分，拧紧螺丝（20）将钩夹固定到位。

内カバーの取り付け

11. はめ込み部（18）および爪（19）2 箇所を、カチッと音がするまではめ込み、内カバー（K）を取り付ける。

フィニッシャ処理トレイの取り付け

12. ビス（20）を緩める。
13. フックホルダ（D）の切り欠き（21）をビス（20）に引っ掛ける。
14. フックホルダ（D）の穴を突起（22）にはめ込み、ビス（20）を締めて固定する。



15. Pass the wires (23) of the finisher process table (E) through the opening at the rear side of the machine.
16. Insert the finisher process table (E) from the front side of the machine and hang the hooks (24) on the right and left of the table (E) onto the machine.
Left: Fit the hook into the latch (25) on the paper conveying unit.
Right: Fit the hook into the hook holder (D).

---

15. Faire passer les connecteurs (23) de la table de processus du module de finition (E) par l'ouverture du côté arrière de la machine.
16. Insérez la table de processus du module de finition (E) depuis l'avant de la machine, et suspendez sur la machine les crochets (24) se trouvant sur les côtés droit et gauche du plateau (E).
Gauche : insérer le crochet dans le verrou (25) sur l'unité de transport du papier.
Droite : insérer le crochet dans le support de crochet (D).

---

15. Pase los conectores (23) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador (E) por la abertura en el lado trasero de la máquina.
16. Inserte la tabla de proceso de finalizador (E) por el lado delantero de la máquina y cuelgue los ganchos (24) en los lados derecho e izquierdo de la tabla (E) de la máquina.
Izquierda: colocar el gancho en el pestillo (25), en la unidad de transporte de papel.
Derecha: colocar el gancho en el soporte de gancho (D).

---

15. Die Steckverbinder (23) der Finisher-Druckablage (E) durch die Öffnung auf der Rückseite der Maschine führen.
16. Die Finisher-Druckablage (E) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen, und die Haken (24) auf der rechten und linken Seite der Ablage (E) in die Maschine einhängen.
Links: Setzen Sie den Haken in die Raste (25) an der Papierfördereinheit.
Rechts: Setzen Sie den Haken in den Hakenhalter (D) ein.

---

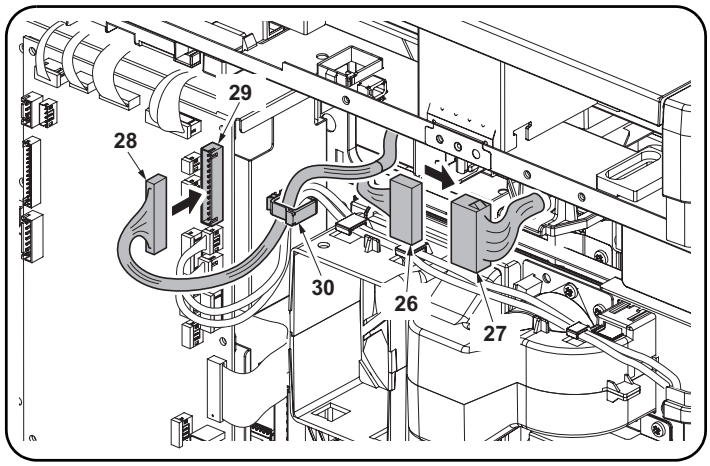
15. Fate passare i connettori (23) della tabella di elaborazione del finitore (E) atttraverso l'apertura sul lato posteriore della macchina.
16. Inserite la tabella di elaborazione del finitore (E) dal lato anteriore della macchina e appendete i ganci (24) a destra e a sinistra del tabella (E) sulla macchina.
Sinistra: inserite il gancio nel fermo (25) sull'unità di trasporto carta.
Destra: inserite il gancio nel supporto a gancio (D).

---

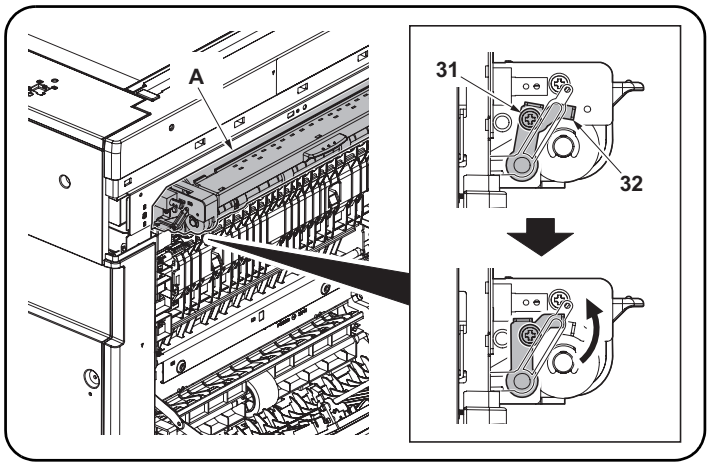
15. 将装订分页器处理托盘 (E) 的插头 (23) 通过机器主机后面的开口部。
16. 从机器主机前面插入装订分页器处理托盘 (E)，挂在左右钩件 (24) 上。
左侧：将钩件安装至输送组件的嵌入板 (25)。
右侧：将钩件安装至钩夹 (D)。

---

15. フィニッシャ処理トレイ (E) の電線 (23) を機械本体後側の開口部に通す。
16. フィニッシャ処理トレイ (E) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左右のフック (24) をはめ込む。
左側:搬送ユニット (A) のはめ込み部 (25) にはめ込む。
右側:フックホルダ (D) にはめ込む。



17. At the rear side of the machine, connect the connector (26) of the finisher process table to the connector (27) of the paper conveying unit.
18. Connect the connector (28) of the finisher process table to YC4 (29) on the engine PWB.
19. Run the wires through the clamp (30).
20. Refit the cover (10) removed in step 5 using 5 screws (9)



Releasing the lever holding plate
21. Loosen the screw (31) of the paper conveying unit (A) and release the lever holding plate (32) in the direction of arrow.
22. Tighten the screw (31).

---

17. Sur le côté arrière de la machine, branchez le connecteur (26) de la table de processus du module de finition au connecteur (27) de l'unité de transport du papier.
18. Branchez le connecteur (28) de la table de processus du module de finition à YC4 (29) sur le PWB du moteur.
19. Faire passer les câbles dans le collier (30).
20. Reinstallez le capot (10) depose a l'etape 5 a l'aide de 5 vis (9).

Libération de la plaque de support de levier
21. Desserrez la vis (31) de l'unité de transport du papier (A) et libérez la plaque de support de levier (32) dans le sens de la flèche.
22. Resserrez la vis (31).

---

17. En el lado trasero de la máquina, conecte el conector (26) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador en el conector (27) de la unidad de transporte de papel.
18. Conecte el conector (28) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador en YC4 (29) en el PWB del motor.
19. Tender los cables a través de la abrazadera (30).
20. Volver a colocar, con los 5 tornillos (9), la cubierta (10) desmontada en el paso 5.

Aflojado de la placa de soporte de palanca
21. Afloje el tornillo (31) de la unidad de transporte de papel (A) y suelte la placa de soporte de la palanca (32) en el sentido de la flecha.
22. Apriete el tornillo (31).

---

17. Den Steckverbinder (26) der Finisher-Druckablage auf der Rückseite der Maschine mit dem Steckverbinder (27) der Papierfördereinheit verbinden.
18. Den Steckverbinder (28) der Finisher-Druckablage an YC4 (29) der Motorplatine anschließen.
19. Führen Sie die Kabel durch die Schelle (30).
20. Die in Schritt 5 entfernte Abdeckung (10) mittels der 5 Schrauben (9) wieder anbringen.

Freigeben der Hebelhalteplatte
21. Die Schraube (31) der Papierfördereinheit (A) lösen, und die Hebelhalteplatte (32) in Pfeilrichtung freigeben.
22. Die Schraube (31) festziehen.

---

17. Sul lato posteriore della macchina, collegate il connettore (26) della tabella di elaborazione del finitore al connettore (27) dell'unità di trasporto della carta.
18. Collegate il connettore (28) della tabella di elaborazione del finitore al YC4 (29) sul motore PWB.
19. Passate i cavi attraverso la fascetta (30).
20. Ricollocare il coperchio (10) rimosso al passo 5 utilizzando le 5 viti (9).

Freigeben der Hebelhalteplatte
21. Die Schraube (31) der Papierfördereinheit (A) lösen, und die Hebelhalteplatte (32) in Pfeilrichtung freigeben.
22. Die Schraube (31) festziehen.

---

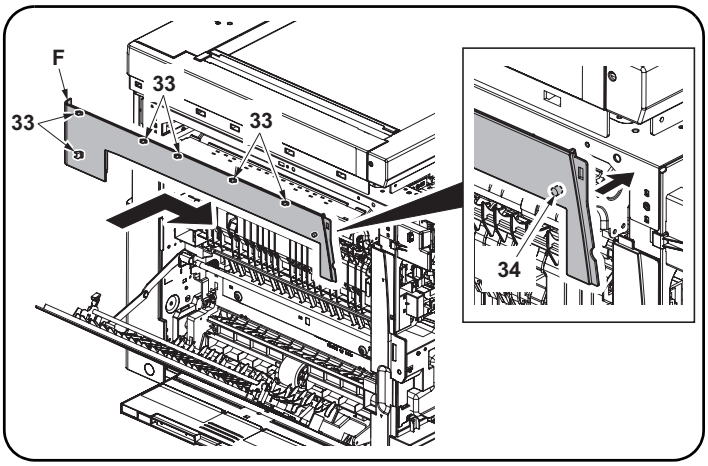
17. 绕到机器主机后面，将装订分页器处理托盘的插头 (26) 连接在输送组件的插头 (27) 上。
18. 将装订分页器处理托盘的插头 (28) 连接在引擎主板的 YC4(29) 上。
19. 将电线穿过线夹 (30)。
20. 使用 5 个螺丝 (9) 重新安装在步骤 5 中取下的盖板 (10)。

松解固定金属柄
21. 松弛输送组件 (A) 的 1 个螺丝 (31)，朝箭头方向松解固定金属柄 (32)。
22. 然后，紧固 1 个螺丝 (31)。

---

17. 機械本体後側にまわり、フィニッシャ処理トレイのコネクタ (26) を搬送ユニットのコネクタ (27) に接続する。
18. フィニッシャ処理トレイのコネクタ (28) をエンジン回路基板の YC4(29) に接続する。
19. 電線をクランプ (30) に通す。
20. 手順 5 で取り外したカバー(10) をビス (9)5 本で元通り取り付ける。

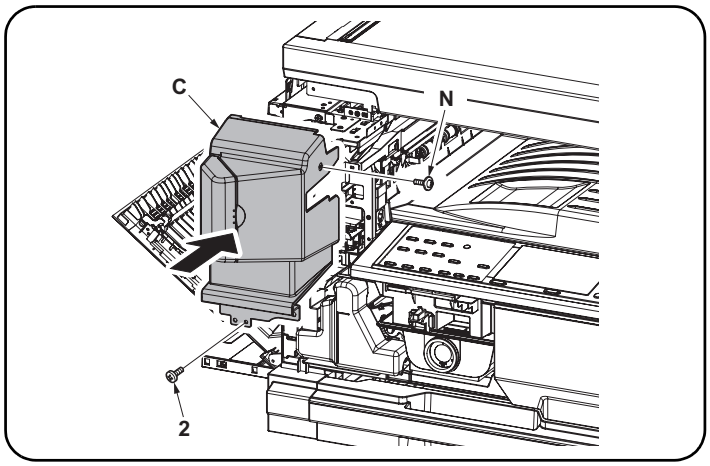
レバー固定金具の解除
21. 搬送ユニット (A) のビス (31) を緩め、レバー固定金具 (32) を矢印方向に解除する。
22. ビス (31) を締める。



Attaching the upper left cover

23. Slot the 6 clips (33) on the upper left cover (F) into place and slide the cover to the front.

24. Fit the latch (34) to attach the upper left cove



Installing the staple cover

25. Fix the staple cover (C) using two screws.
Lower: Use the screw (2) removed in step 2.
Upper right: Use M3 × 6 screw (N).

26. Close left cover (11) and the front cover (1).

Fixation du capot supérieur gauche

23. Disposer lles 6 pattes (33) en position sur le capot supérieur gauche (F) et faire glisser le capot vers l'avant.

24. Insérer le verrou (34) pour fixer le capot supérieur gauche (F).

Installation du capot de l'agrafeuse

25. Fixez le capot de l'agrafeuse (C) à l'aide de trois vis.
Côté inférieur: Utilisez les deux vis (2) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 2.
Côté supérieur droit: Utilisez une vis M3 × 6 (N).

26. Refermez le capot gauche (11) et le capot avant (1).

Colocación de la cubierta superior izquierda

23. Colocar las 6 lengüetas (33) en la ranura de la cubierta superior izquierda (F) y deslizar la cubierta hacia el frente.

24. Instalar el pestillo (34) para fijar la cubierta superior izquierda (F).

Instalación de la cubierta de grapas

25. Fije la cubierta de grapas (C) utilizando tres tornillos.
Inferior: Utilice dos tornillos (2) sacados en el paso 2.
Superior derecho: Utilice el tornillo M3 × 6 (N).

26. Cierre la cubierta izquierda (11) y la cubierta frontal (1).

Anbringen der oberen linken Abdeckung

23. Schieben Sie die 6 Laschen (33) an der oberen linken Abdeckung (F) in Position und schieben Sie die Abdeckung nach vorne.

24. Setzen Sie die Raste (34) ein, um die obere linke Abdeckung (F) anzubringen.

Installieren der Hefterabdeckung

25. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) mit drei Schrauben befestigen.
Unten: Die in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2) benutzen.
Oben rechts: Die M3 × 6 Schraube (N) benutzen.

26. \Die linke Abdeckung (11) und die Frontabdeckung (1) schließen.

Montaggio del coperchio superiore sinistro

23. Inserite le 6 linguette (33) sul coperchio superiore sinistro (F) in posizione e slittate il coperchio in avanti.

24. Inserite il fermo (34) per fissare il coperchio superiore sinistro (F).

Installazione del coperchio della pinzatrice

25. Fissate il coperchio della pinzatrice (C) utilizzando tre viti.
Lato inferiore: utilizzate due viti (2) rimosse nel passo 2.
Lato superiore destro: utilizzate una vite M3 × 6 (N).

26. Chiudete il coperchio sinistro (11) e il coperchio anteriore (1).

安装左上盖板

23. 将 6 处夹片（33）插入左上盖板（F）并将盖板滑至前侧。

24. 安装嵌入板（34）以便安装左上盖板。

安装装订器盖板

25. 用 2 个螺丝固定装订器盖板（C）。
下侧：在步骤 2 拆下的 1 个螺丝（2）
右上侧：1 个螺丝 M3 × 6(N)

26. 关闭左盖板（11）和前盖板（1）。

左上カバーの取り付け

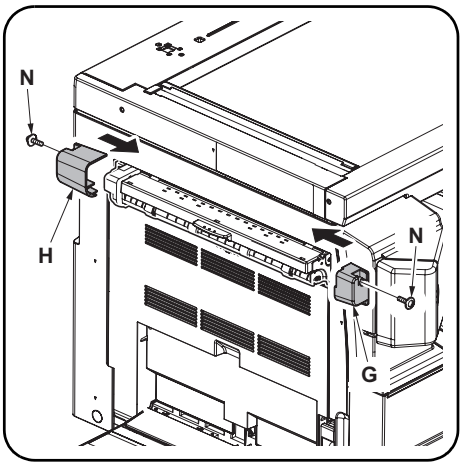
23. 左上カバー(F) の爪 (33)6 箇所を挿入し、前側へスライドさせる。

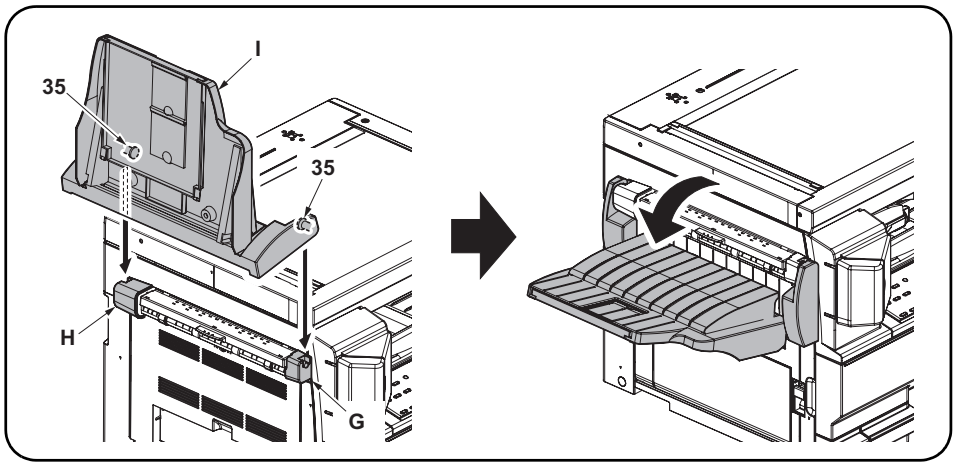
24. はめ込み部 (34) をはめ込み、左上カバー(F) を取り付ける。

ステープルカバーの取り付け

25. ビス 2 本でステープルカバー(C) を固定する。
下側:手順 2 で外したビス (2)1 本
右上側:ビス M3 × 6(N)1 本

26. 左カバー(11) および前カバー(1) を閉じる。





Attaching the finisher tray

27. Fix the front eject cover (G) and the rear eject cover (H) using an M3 × 6 screw (N) each.

28. Insert the front and rear hooks (35) of the finisher tray (I) into the front eject cover (G) and the rear eject cover (H) respectively and then attach the finisher tray (I).

Fixation du plateau du module de finition

27. Fixez le capot d'éjection avant (G) et le capot d'éjection arrière (H) à l'aide d'une vis M3 × 6 (N) pour chaque capot.

28. Insérez les crochets (35) avant et arrière du plateau du module de finition (I) dans le capot d'éjection avant (G) et dans le capot d'éjection arrière (H) respectivement, puis fixez le plateau du module de finition (I).

Colocación de la bandeja de finalizador

27. Fije la cubierta de expulsión frontal (G) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (H) utilizando un tornillo M3 × 6 (N) en cada lugar.

28. Inserte los ganchos (35) delantero y trasero de la bandeja de finalizador (I) en la cubierta de expulsión frontal (G) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (H) respectivamente y coloque la bandeja de finalizador (I).

Anbringen der Finisher-Ablage

27. Die Frontauswurfabdeckung (G) und die Rückauswurfabdeckung (H) mit je einer M3 × 6 Schraube (N) befestigen.

28. Die vorderen und hinteren Haken (35) der Finisher-Ablage (I) jeweils in die Frontauswurfabdeckung (G) und die Rückauswurfabdeckung (H) einführen, und dann die Finisher-Ablage (I) anbringen.

Montaggio del vassoio del finitore

27. Fissate il coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta (G) e il coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (H) utilizzando una vite M3 × 6 (N) per ciascuno.

28. Inserite i ganci (35) anteriori e posteriori del vassoio del finitore (I) rispettivamente nel coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta (G) e nel coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (H) e poi montate il vassoio del finitore (I).

安装装订分页器托盘

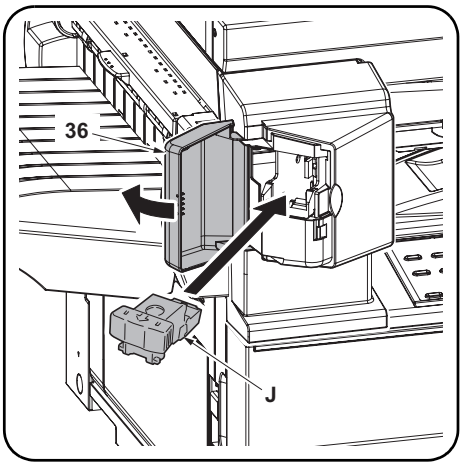
27. 用各 1 个螺丝 M3 × 6(N) 固定排纸盖板前 (G) 和后 (H)。

28. 将装订分页器托盘 (I) 的钩 (35) 件插入排纸盖板前 (G) 和后 (H)，然后装上装订分页器托盘 (I)。

フィニッシャトレイの取り付け

27. ビス M3 × 6(N) 各 1 本で排出カバー前 (G) および後 (H) を固定する。

28. フィニッシャトレイ (I) のフック (35) を排出カバー前 (G) および後 (H) に挿入し、フィニッシャトレイ (I) を取り付ける。



Attaching the staple cartridge

29. Open the cover (36) and insert the staple cartridge (J).
30. Close the cover (36).

Checking the operation

1. Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Make a proof copy in the staple mode to check the finishing and stapling.

Fixation de la cartouche d'agrafes

29. Ouvrez le capot (36) et insérez la cartouche d'agrafes (J).
30. Refermez le capot (36).

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Effectuez une copie de test en mode d'agrafage pour vérifier la finition et l'agrafage.

Colocación del cartucho de grapas

29. Abra la cubierta (36) e inserte el cartucho de grapas (J).
30. Cierre la cubierta (36).

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapas para verificar el finalizado y grapado.

Anbringen des Heftklammermagazins

29. Die Abdeckung (36) öffnen, und das Heftklammermagazin (J) einsetzen.
30. Die Abdeckung (36) schließen.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
2. Eine Probekopie im Heftermodus anfertigen, um die Verarbeitung und Heftung zu überprüfen.

Montaggio della cartuccia dei punti metallici

29. Aprite il coperchio (36) e inserite la cartuccia del punti metallici (J).
30. Chiudete il coperchio (36).

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Nel modo graffatrice eseguite una copia di prova per verificare la cucitura e la rifinitura.

安装订书钉盒

29. 打开盖板 (36) 后，插入订书钉盒 (J)。
30. 关闭盖板 (36)。

操作确认

1. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 选择装订复印模式，确认装订分页器和装订器的操作状况。

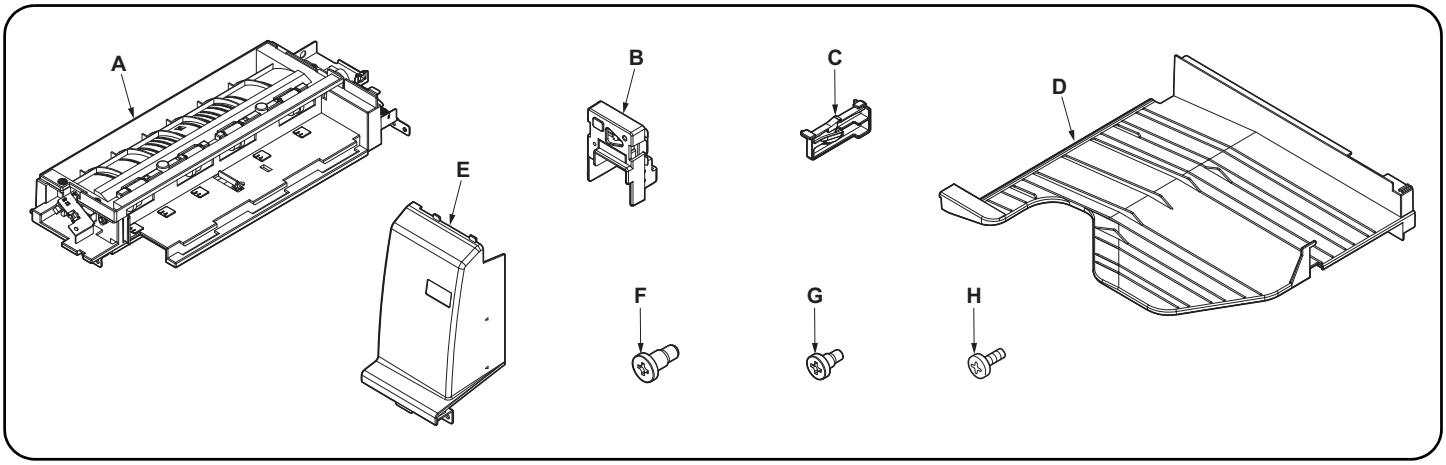
ステープルカートリッジの取り付け

29. カバー(36) を開き、ステープルカートリッジ (J) を挿入する。
30. カバー(36) を閉じる。

動作確認

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. ステープルコピーをおこない、フィニッシャおよびステープル動作を確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR



English

Supplied parts

A Job separator 1
B LED PWB unit 1
C Tray holder 1
D Job separator tray 1

E Left front cover 1
F Large pin 1
G Small pin 1
H M3 × 8 screw 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Séparateur de travaux 1
B Unité LED PWB 1
C Support de plateau 1
D Plateau du séparateur de travaux 1

E Capot avant gauche 1
F Grande goupille 1
G Petite goupille 1
H Vis M3 × 8 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Separador de trabajos 1
B Unidad PWB LED 1
C Soporte de bandeja 1
D Bandeja de separador de trabajos 1

E Cubierta delantera izquierda 1
F Pasador grande 1
G Pasador pequeño 1
H Tornillo M3 × 8 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Job-Separator 1
B LED-Platineneinheit 1
C Fachhalter 1
D Job-Separator-Fach 1

E Linke Frontabdeckung 1
F Großer Stift 1
G Kleiner Stift 1
H M3 × 8 Schraube 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Separatore lavori 1
B Unità LED PWB 1
C Supporto vassoio 1
D Vassoio del separatore lavori 1

E Coperchio frontale sinistro 1
F Perno grande 1
G Perno piccolo 1
H Vite M3 × 8 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A 作业分离器 1
B LED 电路板组件 1
C 托盘座 1
D 作业分离器托盘 1

E 左前盖板 1
F 大卡销 1
G 小卡销 1
H 螺丝 M3 × 8 1

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

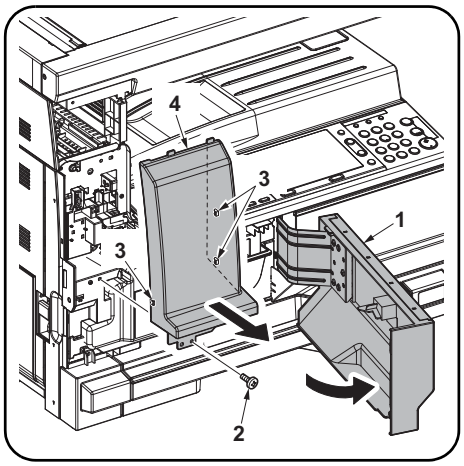
日本語

同梱品

A ジョブセパレータ 1
B LED 基板ユニット 1
C トレイホルダ 1
D ジョブセパレータトレイ 1

E 左前カバー 1
F ピン大 1
G ピン小 1
H ビス M3 × 8 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure
Before installing the job separator, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Removing the covers
1. Open the front cover (1).
2. Remove the screw (2) and release three latches (3) to remove the cover (4).

Procédure
Avant d'installer le séparateur de travaux, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Retrait des capots
1. Ouvrez le capot avant (1).
2. Retirez deux vis (2) et libérez trois verrous (3) pour retirer le capot (4).

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar el separador de trabajos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Desmontaje de las cubiertas
1. Abra la cubierta frontal (1).
2. Saque los dos tornillos (2) y suelte los tres pestillos (3) para desmontar la cubierta (4).

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Job-Separator installieren.

Entfernen der Abdeckungen
1. Die Frontabdeckung (1) öffnen.
2. Die zwei Schrauben (2) herausdrehen, und die drei Rasten (3) lösen, um die Abdeckung (4) abzunehmen.

Procedura
Prima di installare il separatore lavori, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

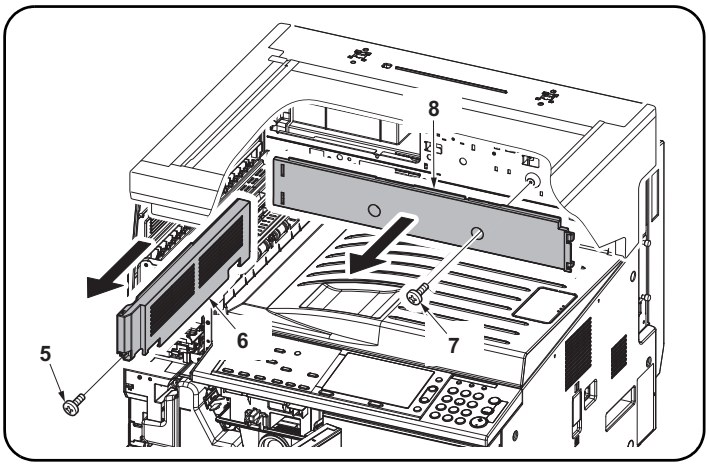
Rimozione dei coperchi
1. Aprite il coperchio anteriore (1).
2. Togliete due viti (2) e rilasciate i tre fermi (3) per rimuovere il coperchio (4).

安装步骤
安装分离器时，必须先关闭机器主机的主电源开关，并拔下电源插头后，再进行安装作业。

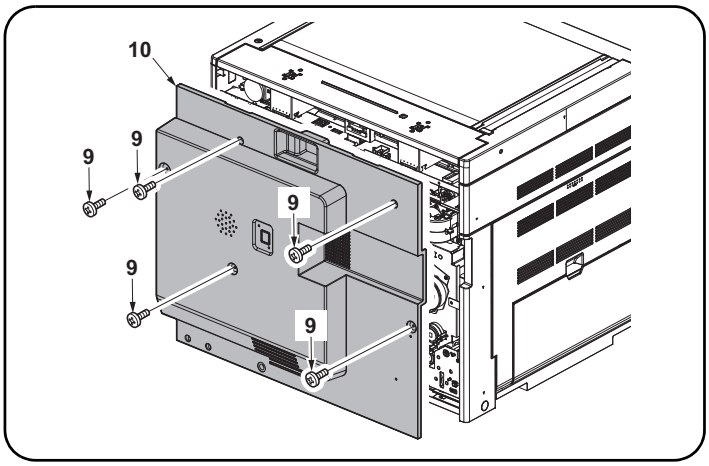
拆下盖板类
1. 打开前盖板 (1)。
2. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (2)，松解 3 处嵌入板 (3)，然后，取下盖板 (4)。

取付手順
ジョブセパレータを設置する場合は、機械本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

カバー類の取り外し
1. 前カバー(1) を開く。
2. ビス (2)1 本を外し、はめ込み (3)3 箇所を解除してカバー(4) を取り外す。



3. Remove the screw (5) to remove the cover (6).
4. Remove the screw (7) to remove the cover (8).



5. Remove five screws (9) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (10).

---

3. Retirez la vis (5) pour déposer le capot (6).
4. Retirez la vis (7) pour déposer le capot (8).

5. Retirez la vis (9) du côté arrière de la machine pour déposer le capot (10).

---

3. Saque el tornillo (5) para desmontar la cubierta (6).
4. Saque el tornillo (7) para desmontar la cubierta (8).

5. Saque el tornillo (9) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (10).

---

3. Die Schraube (5) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (6) abzunehmen.
4. Die Schraube (7) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

5. Die Schraube (9) auf der Rückseite der Maschine herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (10) abzunehmen.

---

3. Togliete la vite (5) per rimuovere il coperchio (6).
4. Togliete la vite (7) per rimuovere il coperchio (8).

5. Togliete la vite (9) dal lato posteriore della macchina per rimuovere il coperchio (10).

---

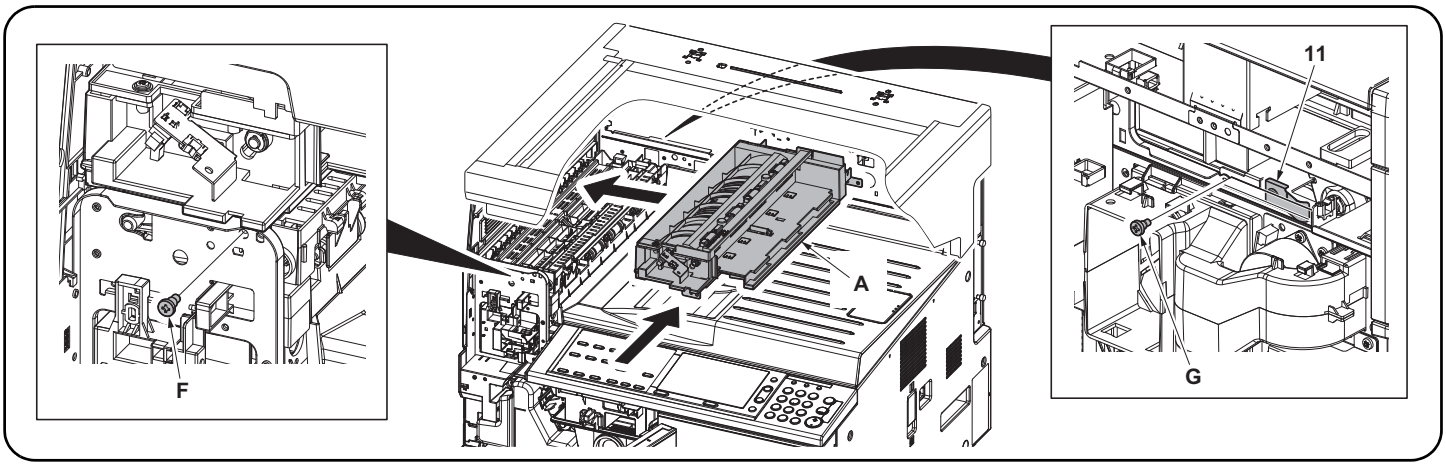
3. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (5)，取下盖板 (6)。
4. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (7)，取下盖板 (8)。

5. 卸下机器主机后面的 5 个螺丝 (9)，取下盖板 (10)。

---

3. ビス (5)1 本を外し、カバー(6) を取り外す。
4. ビス (7)1 本を外し、カバー(8) を取り外す。

5. 機械本体後側のビス (9)5 本を外し、カバー(10) を取り外す。



Installing the job separator

6. Insert the job separator (A) from the machine front and slide it to the left.
7. Fix the job separator (A) using two pins.
Front: Use the large pin (F).
Rear: Use the small pin (G).
The grounding plate (11) must be in contact with the frame.

Installation du séparateur de travaux

6. Insérez le séparateur de travaux (A) depuis l'avant de la machine et faites-le glisser vers la gauche.
7. Fixez le séparateur de travaux (A) à l'aide de deux goupilles.
Avant: Utilisez la grande goupille (F).
Arrière: Utilisez la petite goupille (G).
La prise de terre (11) doit être en contact avec le cadre.

Instalación del separador de trabajos

6. Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en el frente de la máquina y deslícelo a la izquierda.
7. Fije el separador de trabajo (A) utilizando dos pasadores.
Frente: Utilice el pasador grande (F).
Atrás: Utilice el pasador pequeño (G).
La placa de conexión a masa (11) debe estar en contacto con la carcasa.

Installieren des Job-Separators

6. Den Job-Separator (A) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen und nach links schieben.
7. Den Job-Separator (A) mit zwei Stiften befestigen.
Vorn: Den großen Stift (F) verwenden.
Hinten: Den kleinen Stift (G) verwenden.
Die Erdungsplatte (11) muss in Kontakt mit dem Rahmen bleiben.

Installazione del separatore lavori

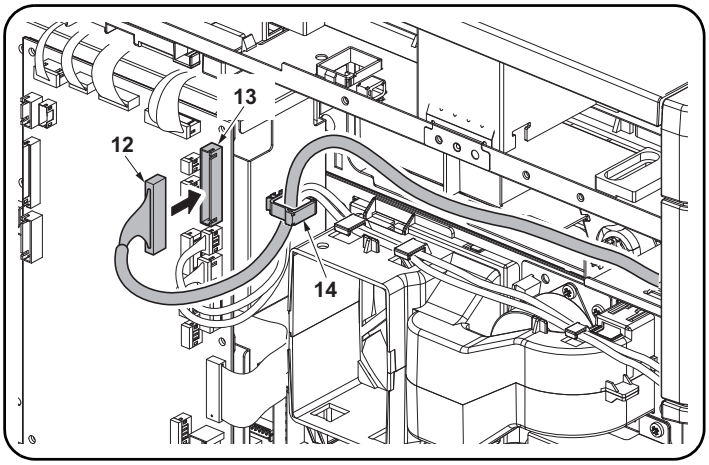
6. Inserire il separatore lavori (A) dal lato frontale della macchina e farlo scorrere a sinistra.
7. Fissare il separatore lavori (A) utilizzando due perni.
Lato frontale: utilizzare il perno grande (F).
Lato posteriore: utilizzare il perno piccolo (G).
La piastra della massa (11) deve essere a contatto con il telaio.

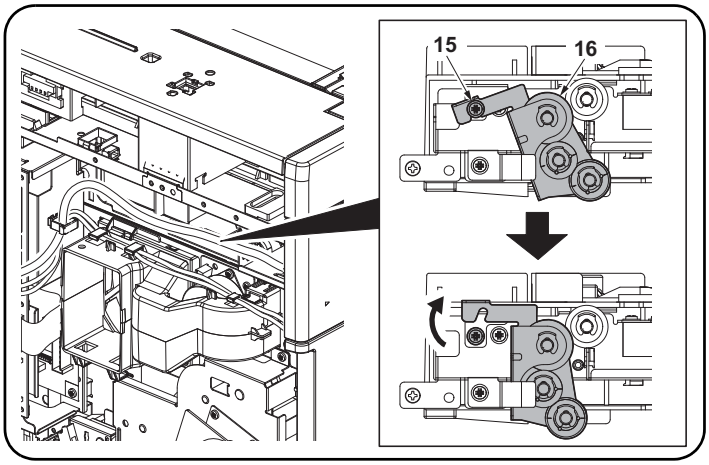
安装作业分离器

6. 从机器主机前面插入作业分离器 (A)，向左侧滑动。
7. 用 2 个卡销固定作业分离器 (A)。
前面：大卡销 (F)
后面：小卡销 (G)
接地板（11）务必与机架接触。

ジョブセパレータの取り付け

6. ジョブセパレータ (A) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左側へスライドする。
7. ジョブセパレータ (A) をピン 2 本で固定する。
前側：ピン大 (F)
後側：ピン小 (G)
アース板 (11) がフレームに接触していること。





8. Connect the connector (12) at the rear of the job separator to YC4 (13) on the engine PWB.
9. Run the wires through the clamp (14).

10. Loosen the screw (15) to make the drive unit (16) of the job separator ready for starting to drive.
11. Tighten the screw (15).
12. Refit the cover (10) using six screws (9) removed in step 5.

---

8. Branchez le connecteur (12) situé à l'arrière du séparateur de travaux à YC4 (13) sur le PWB du moteur.
9. Faire passer les câbles dans le collier (14).

10. Desserrez la vis (15) pour que l'unité d'entraînement du séparateur de travaux soit prête à démarrer.
11. Resserrez la vis (15).
12. Remettez le capot (10) en place en utilisant la vis (9) retirée auparavant lors de l'étape 5.

---

8. Conecte el conector (12) en el lado trasero del separador de trabajos a YC4 (13) en el PWB de motor.
9. Tender los cables a través de la abrazadera (14).

10. Afloje el tornillo (15) para que la unidad de accionamiento del separador de trabajos esté lista para accionar.
11. Apriete el tornillo (15).
12. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (10) utilizando el tornillo (9) sacado en el paso 5.

---

8. Den Steckverbinder (12) auf der Rückseite des Job-Separators an YC4 (13) der Motorplatine anschließen.
9. Führen Sie die Kabel durch die Schelle (14).

10. Die Schraube (15) lösen, um die Antriebseinheit des Job-Separators für den Antriebsstart bereit zu machen.
11. Die Schraube (15) festziehen.
12. Die Abdeckung (10) wieder mit der in Schritt 5 entfernten Schraube (9) anbringen.

---

8. Collegare il connettore (12) sul lato posteriore del separatore lavori al YC4 (13) del motore PWB.
9. Passate i cavi attraverso la fascetta (14).

10. Allentare la vite (15) per preparare l'unità guida del separatore lavori al funzionamento.
11. Stringere la vite (15).
12. Rimettete a posto il coperchio (10) utilizzando la vite (9) rimossa nel passo 5.

---

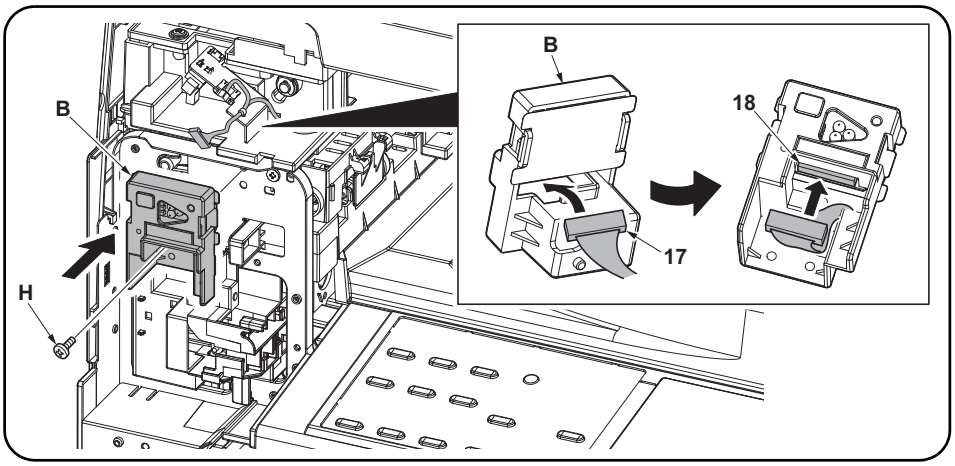
8. 将作业分离器后面的插头 (12) 插在引擎主板的 YC4(13) 上。
9. 将电线穿过线夹 (14)。

10. 松弛 1 个螺丝 (15)，使驱动组件处于始动状态。
11. 然后，紧固 1 个螺丝 (15)。
12. 在步骤 5 拆下的盖板 (10)，用 5 个螺丝 (9) 按原样装好。

---

8. ジョブセパレータ後側のコネクタ (12) をエンジン回路基板の YC4(13) に接続する。
9. 電線をクランプ (14) に通す。

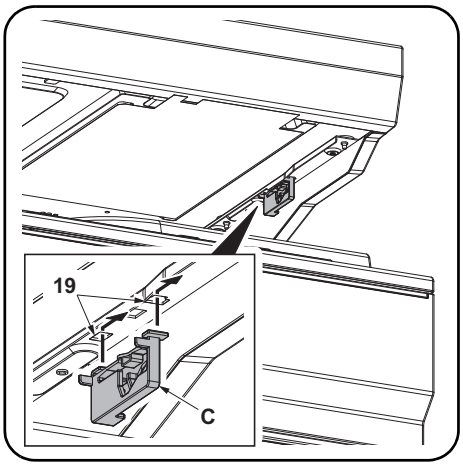
10. ビス (15) をゆるめ、駆動ユニット (16) を駆動がかかる状態にする。
11. ビス (15) を締める。
12. 手順 5 で取り外したカバー (10) をビス (9)5 本で元通り取り付ける。



Attaching the LED PWB unit

13. Run the connector (17) from the job separator through the opening in the LED PWB unit (B) and plug it into the connector (18).

14. Fix the LED PWB unit (B) using the M3 × 8 screw (H).



Installing the job separator tray

15. Insert the tray holder (C) into two openings (19) and then slide the holder to the front until it clicks.

Fixation de l'unité LED PWB

13. Faire passer le connecteur (17) depuis la séparateur de travaux par l'ouverture dans l'unié LED PWB (B) et le raccorder au connecteur (18).

14. Fixez l'unité LED PWB (B) à l'aide de la vis M3 × 8 (H).

Installation du plateau du séparateur de travaux

15. Insérez le support de plateau (C) dans les deux ouvertures (19), puis faites glisser le support vers la droite jusqu'à ce qu'il s'encliquète.

Colocación de la unidad PWB LED

13. Desde el separador de trabajos, tender el conector (17) a través de la apertura de la unidad PWB LED (B) y enchufarlo en el conector (18).

14. Fije la unidad PWB LED (B) utilizando el tornillo M3 × 8 (H).

Instalación de la bandeja de separador de trabajos

15. Inserte el soporte de bandeja (C) en dos aberturas (19) y deslice el soporte a la derecha hasta escuchar un chasquido.

Anbringen der LED-Platineneinheit

13. Führen Sie den Steckverbinder (17) vom Job-Separator durch die Öffnung in der LED-Platineneinheit (B) und stecken Sie ihn in den Steckverbinder (18).

14. Die Kabel durch den Spalt führen, und die LED-Platineneinheit (B) mit der M3 × 8 Schraube (H) befestigen.

Installieren des Job-Separator-Fachs

15. Den Fachhalter (C) in die zwei Öffnungen (19) einführen, und dann den Halter nach rechts schieben, bis er mit einem Klicken einrastet.

Montaggio dell'unità LED PWB

13. Passate il connettore (17) dal separatore lavori attraverso l'apertura nell'unità LED PWB (B) e collegarlo al connettore (18).

14. Fissare l'unità LED PWB (B) utilizzando la vite M3 × 8 (H).

Installazione del vassoio del separatore lavori

15. Inserire il supporto del vassoio (C) nelle due aperture (19) e poi fare scorrere il supporto a destra fino a che non si mette in posizione con un clic.

安装 LED 电路板组件

13. 将作业分离器的插头（17）穿过 LED 电路板组件（B）的开口部并插在插座（18）上。

14. 将电线穿过间隙，用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 8(H) 固定 LED 电路板组件 (B)。

安装作业分离器托盘

15. 将托盘座 (C) 插入 2 处开口部 (19)，向右侧滑动直至听到咔叽声为止。

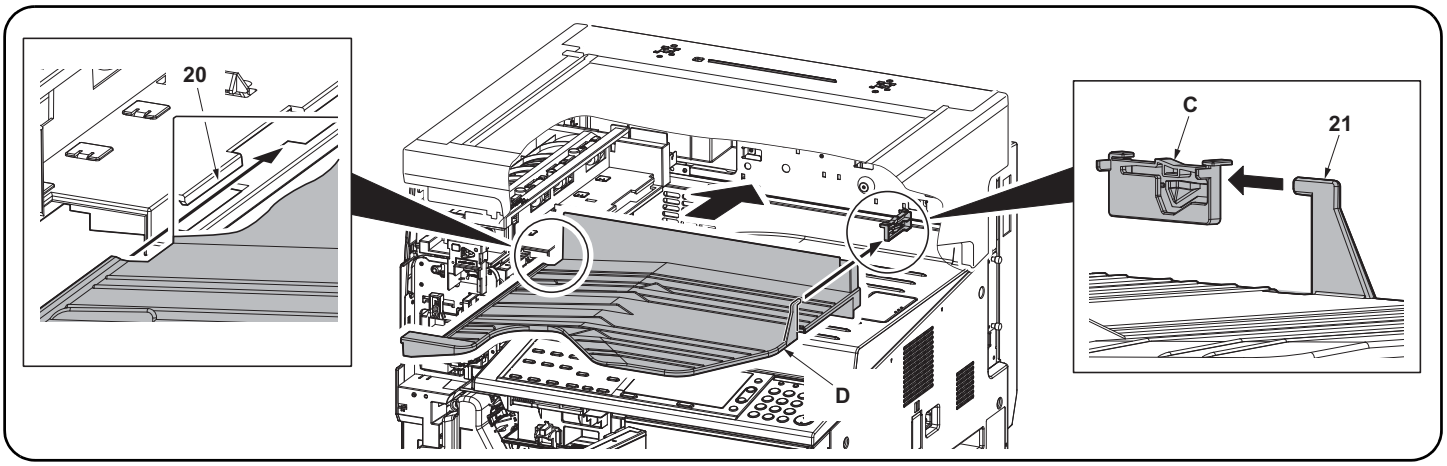
LED 基板ユニットの取り付け

13. ジョブセパレータのコネクタ (17) を LED 基板ユニット (B) の開口部より通し、コネクタ (18) に接続する。

14. ビス M3 × 8(H)1 本で LED 基板ユニット (B) を取り付ける。

ジョブセパレータトレイの取り付け

15. トレイホルダ (C) を開口部 (19)2 箇所に挿入し、カチッと音がするまで前側にスライドする。



16. Install the job separator tray (D) from the front side of the machine.
Left: Insert the tray into the groove (20).
Right: Hang the hook (21) on the tray holder (C).

---

16. Installez le plateau du séparateur de travaux (D) depuis le côté avant de la machine.
Gauche: Insérez le plateau dans la rainure (20).
Droite: Suspendez le crochet (21) au support de plateau (C).

---

16. Instale la bandeja de separador de trabajos (D) desde el lado delantero de la máquina.
Izquierda: Inserte la bandeja en la ranura (20).
Derecha: Cuelgue el gancho (21) en el soporte de bandeja (C).

---

16. Das Job-Separator-Fach (D) von der Vorderseite der Maschine installieren.
Links: Das Fach in die Nut (20) einführen.
Rechts: Den Haken (21) in den Fachhalter (C) einhängen.

---

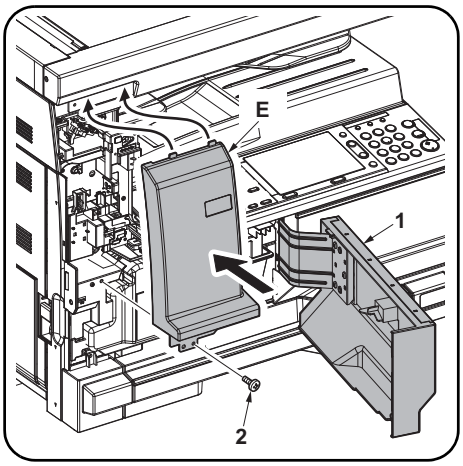
16. Installare il vassoio del separatore lavori (D) dal lato anteriore della macchina.
Lato sinistro: inserire il vassoio nell'incavo (20).
Lato destro: appendere il gancio (21) sul supporto del vassoio (C).

---

16. 从机器主机前面插入作业分离器托盘 (D)，进行安装。
左侧：插在沟槽 (20) 上。
右侧：将钩件 (21) 挂在托盘座 (C) 上。

---

16. ジョブセパレータトレイ (D) を機械本体前側から挿入し、取り付ける。
左側:溝 (20) に挿入する。
右側:フック (21) をトレイホルダ (C) に引っ掛ける。



Installing the left front cover

17. Install the left front cover (E) using the screw (2) removed in step 2.
18. Close the front cover (1).

Checking the operation

1. Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Specify the output tray to the job separator tray from the system menu.
3. Make a proof copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator tray.

Installation du capot avant gauche

17. Installez le capot avant gauche (E) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 2.
18. Refermez le capot avant (1).

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Définissez le bac de sortie sur le plateau du séparateur de travaux dans le menu système.
3. Effectuez une copie de test pour vérifier si une copie est bien éjectée sur le plateau du séparateur de travaux.

Instalación de la cubierta delantera izquierda

17. Instale la cubierta delantera izquierda (E) utilizando los dos tornillos (2) sacados en el paso 2.
18. Cierre la cubierta frontal (1).

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Especifique como bandeja de salida a la bandeja del separador de trabajos en el menú del sistema.
3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale a la bandeja del separador de trabajos.

Installieren der linken Frontabdeckung

17. Die linke Frontabdeckung (E) mit den in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2) installieren.
18. Die Frontabdeckung (1) schließen.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
2. Das Job-Separator-Fach über das Systemmenü als Ausgabefach angeben.
3. Eine Probekopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob eine Kopie in das Job-Separator-Fach ausgeworfen wird.

Installazione del coperchio frontale sinistro

17. Installare il coperchio frontale sinistro (E) utilizzando due viti (2) rimosse nel passo 2.
18. Chiudete il coperchio anteriore (1).

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Specificare il vassoio di uscita al vassoio del separatore lavori mediante il menu sistema.
3. Effettuare una copia di prova per verificare che essa venga espulsa sul vassoio del separatore lavori.

安装左前盖板

17. 用步骤 2 卸下的 1 个螺丝 (2) 装上左前盖板 (E)。
18. 关闭前盖板 (1)。

操作确认

1. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 将系统菜单的排纸处设定在作业分离器托盘。
3. 进行测试复印，确认纸张是否排在作业分离器托盘上。

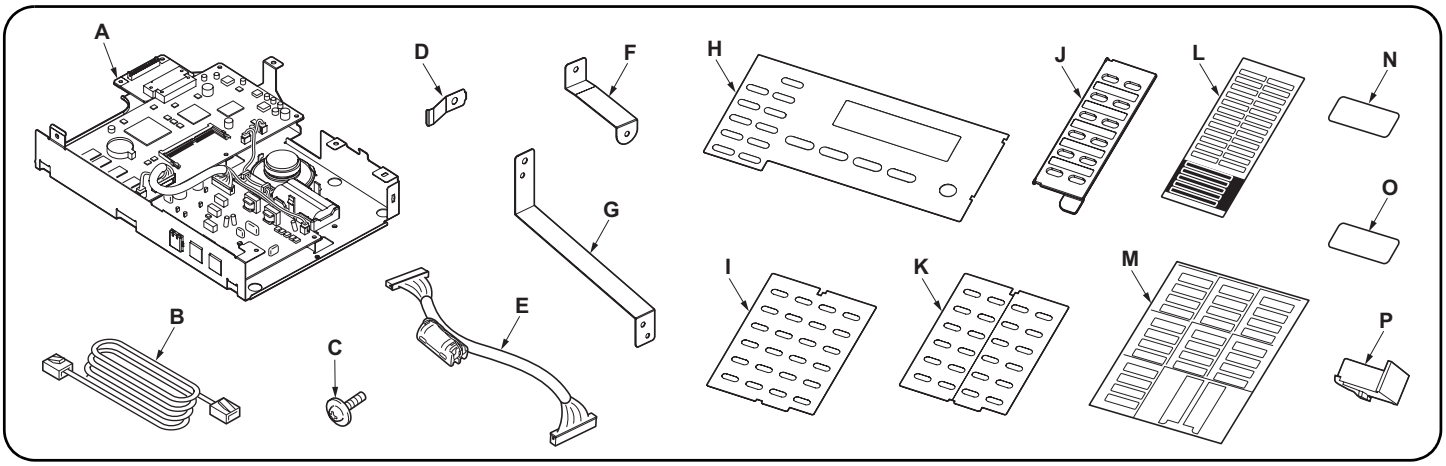
左前カバーの取り付け

17. 手順 2 で外したビス (2)1 本で左前カバー (E) を取り付ける。
18. 前カバー(1) を閉じる。

動作確認

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. システムメニューの排紙先をジョブセパレータトレイに設定する。
3. テストコピーをおこない、用紙がジョブセパレータトレイに排出されるかどうか確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR
FAX System (R)



English

Supplied parts

A Fax control circuit board assembly 1
B Modular cord (100 V, 120 V, 220 V specifications and for Australia) 120 V item 303HZ4501 (UL Listed. Chau's, Type CS) 1
C M3 x 8 screw 9
D Plate spring 1
E Wire 1
F Upper plate 1
G Lower plate 1
H Operation section sheet
120 V specification 4
230 V specification 8
I One-touch securing sheet 1
J Fax plate 1
K One-touch sheet
120 V specification 3
230 V specification 7
L One-touch label sheet 1
M Fax label sheet (120 and 230 V specifications only) 1
N FCC68 label (120 V specification only) 1
O JATE label (100 V specification only) 1
P Modular connector cover (for New Zealand only) 1

Français

Pièces fournies

A Ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax 1
B Cordon modulaire (spécifications 100 V, 120 V, 220 V et pour l'Australie) 1
C Vis M3 x 8 9
D Ressort à lames 1
E Câble 1
F Plateau supérieur 1
G Plateau inférieur 1
H Feuille de la section d'opération
spécifications 120 V 4
spécifications 230 V 8
I Feuille de fixation à touche unique 1
J Plaque de fax 1
K Feuille à touche unique
spécifications 120 V 3
spécifications 230 V 7
L Feuille d'étiquettes à touche unique 1
M Feuille d'étiquettes de fax (spécifications 120 et 230 V uniquement) 1
N Étiquette FCC68 (spécifications 120 V) 1
O Étiquette JATE (spécifications 100 V) 1
P Couvercle du connecteur modulaire (pour la Nouvelle-Zélande seulement) 1

Español

Partes suministradas

A Conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil 1
B Cable modular (especificaciones de 100 V, 120 V, 220 V y para Australia) 1
C Tornillo M3 x 8 9
D Resorte de la placa 1
E Cable 1
F Placa superior 1
G Placa inferior 1
H Hoja de sección de funcionamiento
especificaciones para 120 V 4
especificaciones para 230 V 8
I Hoja de seguridad de un toque 1
J Placa de facsímil 1
K Hoja de un toque
especificaciones para 120 V 3
especificaciones para 230 V 7
L Hoja de etiquetas de un toque 1
M Hoja de etiquetas de facsímil (especificaciones de 120 y 230 V, solamente) 1
N Etiqueta FCC68 (sólo especificaciones para 120 V) 1
O Etiqueta JATE (sólo especificaciones para 100 V) 1
P Cubierta del conector modular (sólo para Nueva Zelandia) 1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Faxsteuerplatineneinheit 1
B Modulkabel (100-, 120-, 220-V-Spezifikationen und für Australien) 1
C M3 × 8 Schraube 9
D Tellerfeder 1
E Kabel 1
F Obere Platte 1
G Untere Platte 1
H Bedienteilfolie
120-V-Spezifikation 4
230-V-Spezifikation 8
I Schnellhaftfolie 1
J Faxplatte 1
K Schnellfolie
120-V-Spezifikation 3
230-V-Spezifikation 7
L Schnelletikettenfolie 1
M Faxetikettenfolie (nur für Modelle 120 und 230 V) 1
N FCC68-Etikett (nur 120-V-Spezifikation) 1
O JATE-Etikett (nur 100-V-Spezifikation) 1
P Modulsteckerabdeckung (nur für Neuseeland) 1

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax 1
B Cavo modulare (per modelli con specifica 100 V, 120 V, 220 V e per l'Australia) 1
C Vite M3 x 8 9
D Molla della piastra 1
E Cavo 1
F Piastra superiore 1
G Piastra inferiore 1
H Foglio della sezione di funzionamento
modelli con specifica 120 V 4
modelli con specifica 230 V 8
I Foglio di fissaggio a un tocco 1
J Piastra del fax 1
K Foglio a un tocco
modelli con specifica 120 V 3
modelli con specifica 230 V 7
L Foglio delle etichette a un tocco 1
M Foglio delle etichette del fax (Solo specifiche 120 e 230 V) 1
N Etichetta FCC68 (solo per modelli con specifica 120 V) 1
O Etichetta JATE (solo per modelli con specifica 100V) 1
P Coperchio del connettore modulare (solo per la Nuova Zelanda) 1

简体中文

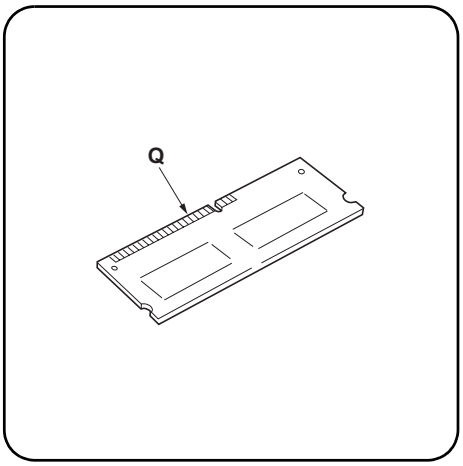
附属品

A 传真控制电路板组件 1
B 电话线(100V、120V、220V规格以及澳大利亚规格) 1
C 螺丝M3 × 8 9
D 板簧 1
E 电线 1
F 上部板 1
G 下部板 1
H 操作部板
仅适用于120V规格 4
仅适用于230V规格 8
I 单触固定板 1
J 传真标签 1
K 单触键板 1
仅适用于120V规格 3
仅适用于230V规格 7
L 单触键标签 1
M 传真标签(仅适用于230V规格) 1
N FCC68标签(仅适用于120V规格) 1
O JATE标签(仅适用于100V规格) 1
P 电话线插头盖板(仅适用于新西兰规格) 1

日本語

同梱品

A FAX 制御回路基板組立 1
B モジュラコード(100V, 120V, 220V 仕様およびオーストラリア) 1
C ビス M3 × 8 9
D 板バネ 1
E 電線 1
F プレート上 1
G プレート下 1
H 操作部シート
120V 仕様のみ 4
230V 仕様のみ 8
I ワンタッチ固定シート 1
J FAX プレート 1
K ワンタッチシート 1
120V 仕様のみ 3
230V 仕様のみ 7
L ワンタッチラベルシート 1
M FAX ラベルシート(120V, 230V 仕様のみ) 1
N FCC68 ラベル(120V 仕様のみ) 1
O JATE ラベル(100V 仕様のみ) 1
P コネクタカバー (ニュージーランドのみ) 1



Option
Q Memory module DIMM (32 MB) 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Procedure
Turn the MFP's power switch to OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.

Option
Q Module de mémoire DIMM (32Mo)..... 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Procédure
Mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système de fax.

Opción
Q Módulo de memoria DIMM (32MB) 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Procedimiento
Apague el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red electrica antes de instalar el sistema de facsimil.

Option
Q Speichermodul (DIMM, 32MB) 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Verfahren
Schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und trennen Sie den MFP vom Stromnetz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.

Opzione
Q Modulo di memoria DIMM (32MB)..... 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Procedura
Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dal MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.

选购配件
Q 内存DIMM(32MB) 1

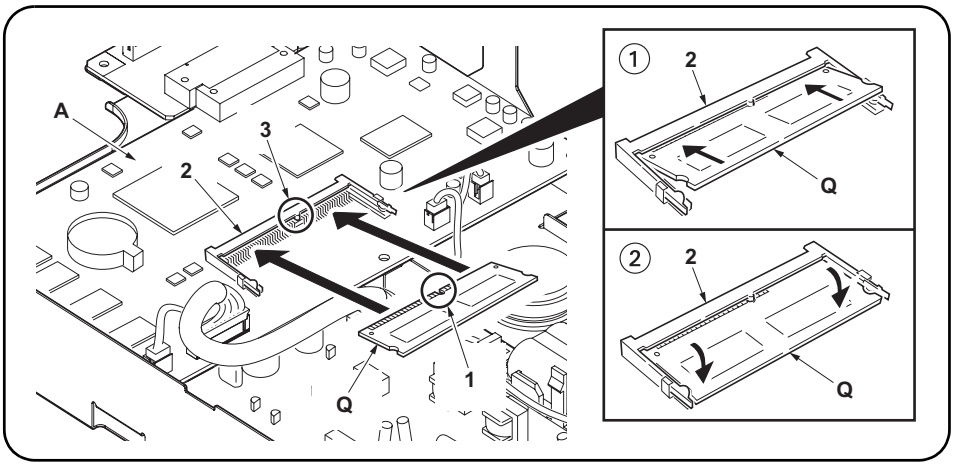
如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装步骤
安装传真组件时，必须先切断MFP主机的主电源开关，并拔下MFP主机的电源插头后再进行安装作业。

オプション
Q メモリ DIMM(32MB) 1

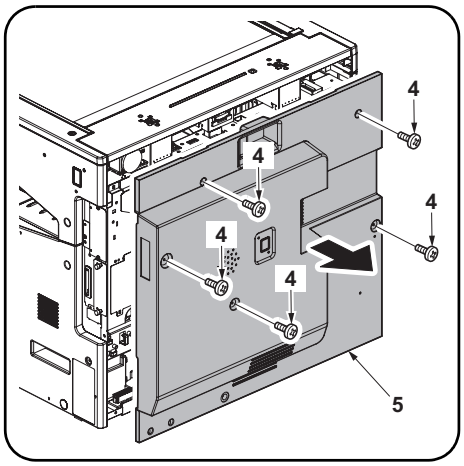
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

取付手順
ファクスシステムを取り付けるときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。



Install the (optional) Memory module DIMM (32MB)

1. Insert the memory module DIMM (Q) at an angle into the memory slot (2) so that the notch (1) of the memory DIMM (Q) is positioned to the projection (3) of the memory slot (2) on the fax control circuit board assembly (A). [1]
2. Push the free end of the module down toward the board. [2]



Removing the covers

3. Remove the 5 screws (4) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (5).

Installer le module mémoire DIMM (en option) (32Mo)

1. Insérer le module de mémoire DIMM (Q) en l'inclinant dans la fente de mémoire (2) de façon que l'encoche (1) de la mémoire DIMM (Q) soit placée sur la saillie (3) de la fente de mémoire (2) sur l'ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax (A). [1]
2. Pousser la partie dégagée du module vers le bas jusqu'à ce qu'elle se mette en place dans la carte avec un déclic. [2]

Retrait des capots

3. Déposez les 5 vis (4) à l'arrière de la machine pour enlever le capot (5).

Instale el módulo de memoria DIMM (32MB) (opcional)

1. Inserte el módulo de memoria DIMM (Q) en un ángulo en la ranura de memoria (2) para que la muesca (1) de la memoria DIMM (Q) esté ubicada en la saliente (3) de la ranura de memoria (2) en el conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil (A). [1]
2. Empuje el extremo suelto del módulo hacia abajo hasta que se oiga un chasquido y hacia la tarjeta. [2]

Desmontaje de las cubiertas

3. Quitar los 5 tornillos (4) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (5).

(Optionales) Speichermodul (DIMM, 32MB) installieren

1. Das DIMM-Speichermodul (Q) schräg in den Speichersteckplatz (2) einführen, so dass die Kerbe (1) des Speicher-DIMM (Q) auf den Vorsprung (3) des Speichersteckplatzes (2) der Faxsteuerplatineneinheit (A) ausgerichtet ist. [1]
2. Drücken Sie das freie Ende des Moduls nach unten, bis in der Karte einrastet. [2]

Entfernen der Abdeckungen

3. Die 5 Schrauben (4) von der Rückseite des Geräts entfernen, um die Abdeckung (5) abzunehmen.

Montaggio del modulo di memoria (opzionale) DIMM (32MB)

1. Inserire il modulo di memoria DIMM (Q) inclinato nello slot di memoria (2) in modo che la tacca (1) della memoria DIMM (Q) sia posizionata sulla sporgenza (3) dello slot della memoria (2) sul gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax (A). [1]
2. Fare pressione sulle estremità libere del modulo, fin quando non scattano in sede sulla scheda. [2]

Rimozione dei coperchi

3. Rimuovere le 5 viti (4) dal lato posteriore della macchina per togliere il coperchio (5).

选购内存的安装

1.把内存模组DIMM(Q)倾斜插入内存模组插入口(2)，直至使内存模组DIMM(Q)的缺口(1)和传真控制电路板组件(A)上内存模组插入口(2)的突出部(3)一致为止。(①)
2.将插入口及另一端向传真控制电路板方向按下，直至听到嵌入声为止。(②)

保护盖板的拆卸

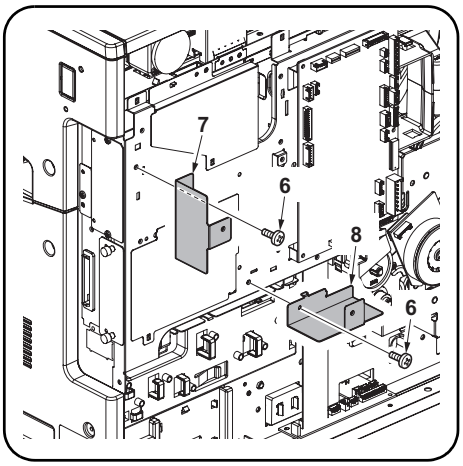
3. 从机器背面取下5个螺丝(4)以取下盖板(5)。

オプションメモリの取り付け

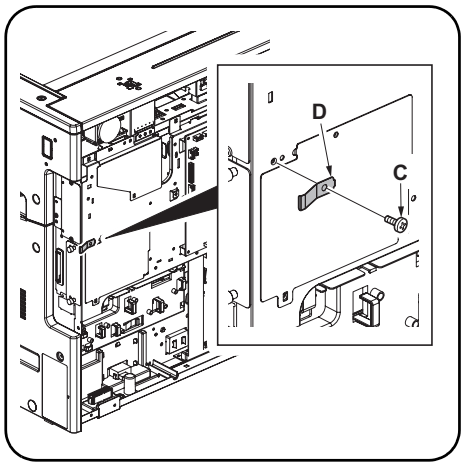
1. メモリ DIMM(Q) の切り欠き (1) と FAX 制御回路基板組立 (A) のメモリ挿入口 (2) の突出部 (3) が一致する様に、メモリ DIMM(Q) をメモリ挿入口 (2) に斜めに挿入する。[1]
2. 挿入口と逆側を FAX 制御回路基板に向かってパチンと音がするまで押し込む。[2]

カバー類の取り外し

3. 機械本体後側のビス (4)5 本を外し、カバー (5) を取り外す。

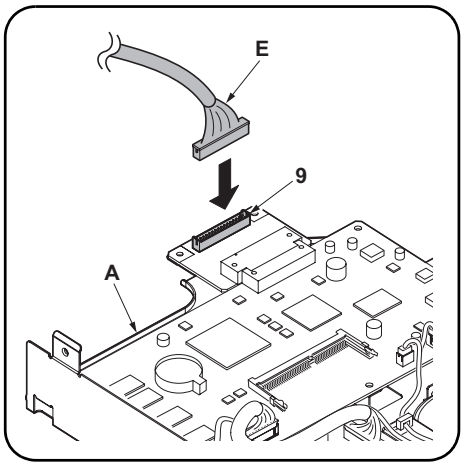


4. Remove the screw (6) to remove the mounting plates ((7) and (8)).



Installing the plate spring

5. Use the M3 x 8 screw (C) to attach the plate spring (D) to the shielding cover.



Attach the fax control circuit board assembly.

6. Plug the yellow connector on the wire (E) into YC1 (9) on the fax control circuit board assembly (A).

---

4. Déposez la vis (6) pour enlever les plateaux de montage [(7) et (8)].

Montage du ressort à lames

5. Fixez le ressort à lames (D) au capot de protection à l'aide d'une vis M3 x 8 (C).

Fixer l'ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax.

6. Raccordez le connecteur jaune du câble (E) à YC1 (9) de l'ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax (A).

---

4. Quitar el tornillo (6) para desmontar las placas de montaje ((7) y (8)).

Instalación del resorte de la placa

5. Utilizar el tornillo M3 x 8 (C) para fijar el resorte de la placa (D) en la cubierta de blindaje.

Instale el conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil.

6. Enchufar el conector amarillo del cable (E) en YC1 (9) en el conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil (A).

---

4. Die Schraube (6) entfernen, um die Montageplatten ((7) und (8)) abzunehmen.

Montieren der Tellerfeder

5. Die Tellerfeder (D) mittels der M3 x 8 Schraube (C) an der Abschirmungsabdeckung befestigen.

Die Faxsteuerplatineneinheit anbringen.

6. Den gelben Steckverbinder des Kabels (E) in die Buchse YC1 (9) der Faxsteuerplatineneinheit (A) stecken.

---

4. Rimuovere la vite (6) per togliere le piastre di montaggio ((7) e (8)).

Installazione della molla della piastra

5. Usare la vite M3 x 8 (C) per fissare la molla della piastra (D) al coperchio di schermatura.

Montare il gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax.

6. Collegare il connettore giallo sul cavo (E) nel YC1 (9) sul gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax (A).

4.取下螺丝(6)以取下支撑板(7)和(8)。

安装板簧

5.使用 M3 x 8 螺丝(C)将板簧(D)安装至护板。

安装传真控制电路板组件

6.将电线(E)的黄色插头插入传真控制电路板组件(A)的YC1(9)中。

---

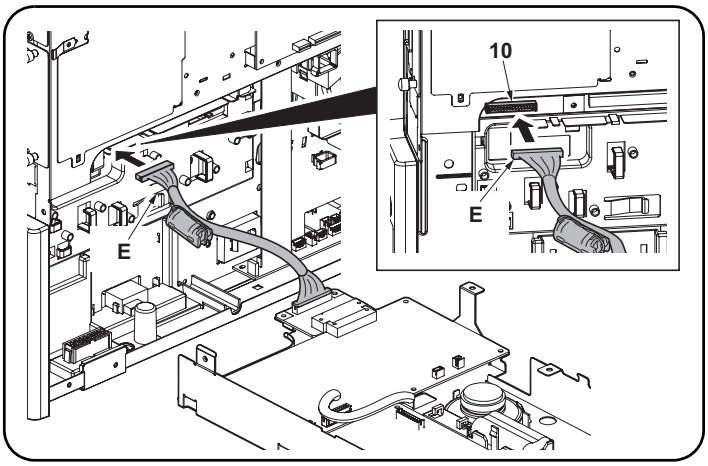
4. ビス (6) 各 1 本を外し、取付板 (7) および取付板 (8) を取り外す。

板バネの取り付け

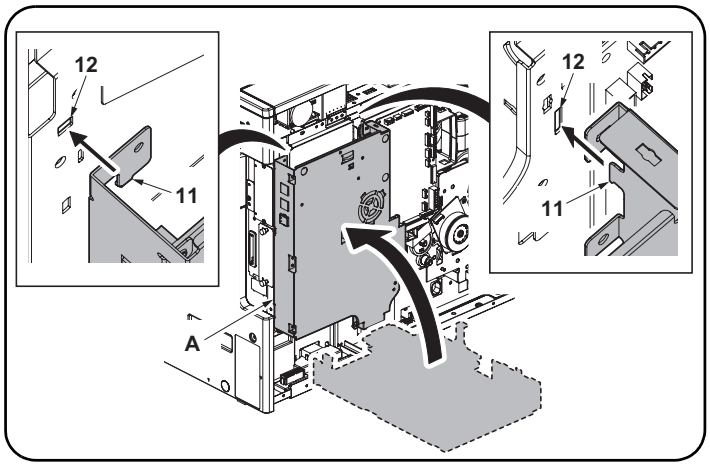
5. ビス M3 × 8(C) 1 本で板バネ (D) をシールドカバーに取り付ける。

FAX 制御回路基板組立の取り付け

6. 電線 (E) の黄色コネクタを FAX 制御回路基板組立 (A) の YC1(9) に接続する。



7. Plug the white connector on the wire (E) into YC10 (10) on the engine circuit board.



8. Fit the 2 hooks (11) on the fax control circuit board assembly (A) into the latch (12) in the shielding cover.

---

7. Raccordez le connecteur blanc du câble (E) à YC10 (10) de la carte de circuits imprimés du moteur.

8. Insérez les 2 crochets (11) de l'ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax (A) dans le verrou (12) du capot de protection.

---

7. Enchufar el conector blanco del cable (E) en YC10 (10) en el panel de circuitos del motor.

8. Instalar los 2 ganchos (11) del conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil (A) en el pestillo (12) de la cubierta de blindaje.

---

7. Den weißen Steckverbinder des Kabels (E) in Buchse YC10 (10) der Motorplatine stecken.

8. Die 2 Haken (11) der Faxsteuerplatineneinheit (A) in die Raste (12) an der Abschirmungsabdeckung einsetzen.

---

7. Collegare il connettore bianco sul cavo (E) nel YC10 (10) sulla scheda di circuito principale.

8. Inserire i 2 ganci (11) sul gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax (A) nel fermo (12) del coperchio di schermatura.

---

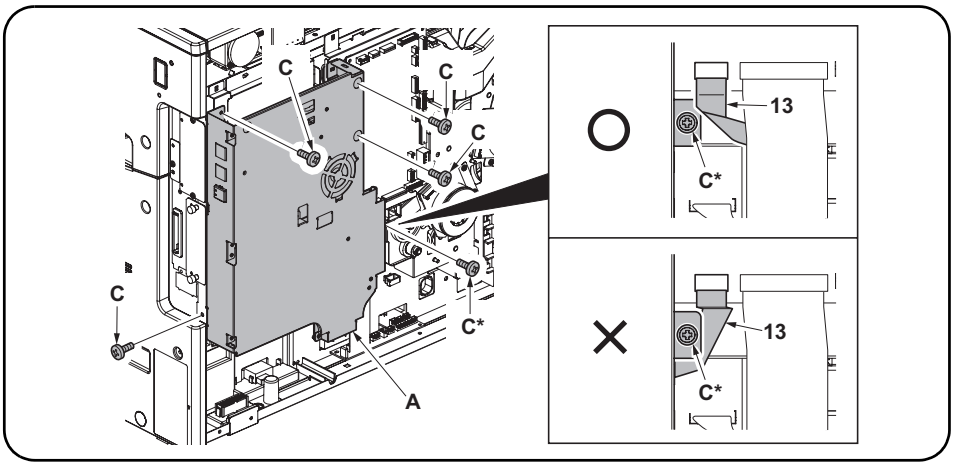
7. 将电线(E)的白色插头插入驱动电路板的YC10(10)中。

8. 将传真控制电路板组件(A)上的2个挂钩(11)装入护板的卡扣(12)中。

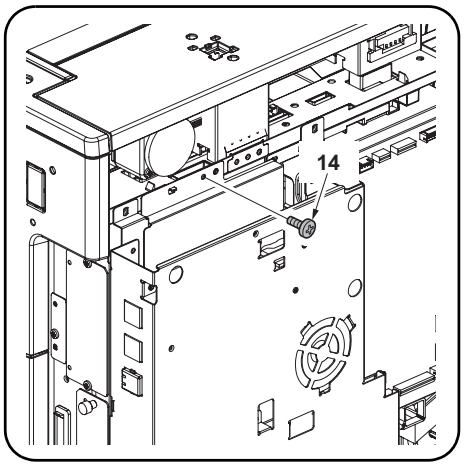
---

7. 電線 (E) の白色コネクタを主回路基板の YC10(10) に接続する。

8. FAX 制御回路基板組立 (A) のフック (11)2 箇所をシールドカバーの引っ掛け部 (12) に挿入する。



9. Secure the fax control circuit board assembly (A) using the five M3 x 8 screws (C).
When fastening the lower-right screw (C*), take care not to pinch the wire (13)



10. Remove the screw (14) from the machine.

---

9. Fixez l'ensemble de carte à circuits de commande de fax (A) à l'aide de cinq vis M3 x 8 (C).
En fixant la vis inférieure droite (C*), attention à ne pas pincer le câble (13).

10. Déposez la vis (14) de la machine.

---

9. Asegurar el conjunto de la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil (A) por medio de los cinco tornillos M3 x 8 (C).
Cuando ajuste el tornillo inferior derecho (C*), tenga cuidado de no atrapar el cable (13).

10. Quitar el tornillo (14) de la máquina.

---

9. Die Faxsteuerplatineneinheit (A) mit den fünf M3 x 8 Schrauben (C) befestigen.
Beim Befestigen der unteren rechten Schraube (C*) darauf achten, dass das Kabel (13) nicht eingeklemmt wird.

10. Die Schraube (14) vom Gerät abnehmen.

---

9. Fissare il gruppo scheda a circuiti di controllo fax (A) utilizzando le cinque viti M3 x 8 (C).
Quando si fissa la vite (C*) in basso a destra, prestare attenzione di non prendere il cavo (13).

10. Rimuovere la vite (14) dalla macchina.

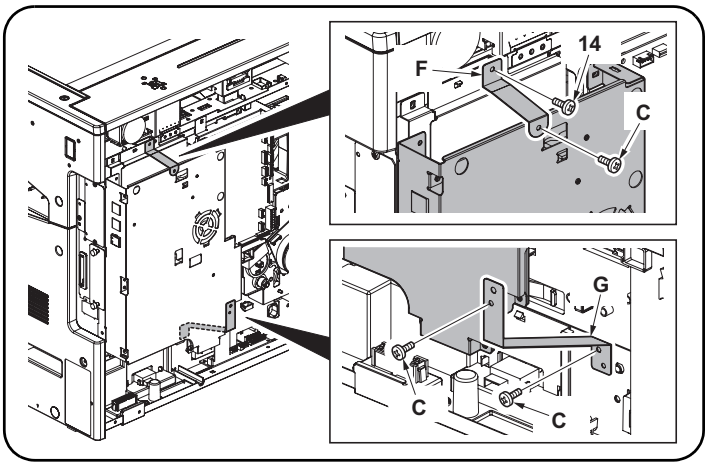
9.使用5个 M3 x 8 螺丝(C)固定传真控制电路板组件(A)。
紧固右下方螺丝(C*)时，注意不要夹住电线(13)。

10.从机器上取下螺丝(14)。

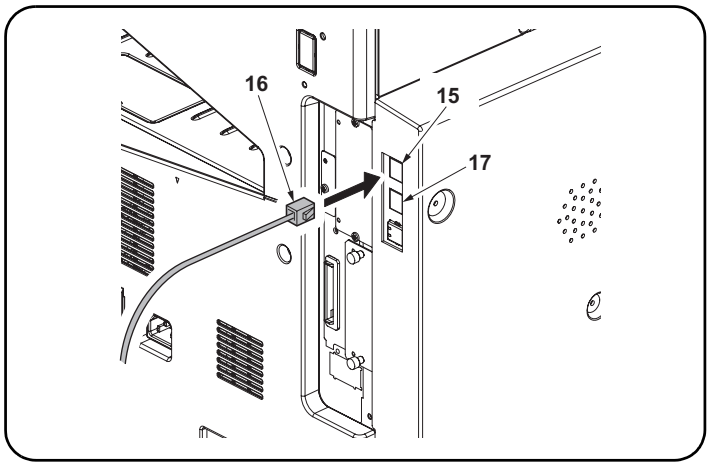
---

9. ビス M3 × 8(C)5 本で FAX 制御回路基板組立 (A) を固定する。
右下のビス (C*) 固定の際、電線 (13) をかみ込まないように注意すること。

10. 機械本体のビス (14)1 本を外す。



11. Attach the upper plate (F) using an M3 x 8 screw (C) and another screw (14).
12. Attach the lower plate (G) using two M3 x 8 screws (C).
13. Refit the cover (5) removed in step 3 using 5 screws (4).



Connect the telephone line to the line terminal.
14. Insert the modular connector cable (16) to the line terminal (15) to connect it to the telephone line.
For 100 V, 120 V or 220 V specification or for Australia, use the supplied modular cord (B).
In New Zealand, attach the modular connector cover (P) to the TEL terminal T1 (17).

---

11. Fixez le plateau supérieur (F) à l'aide d'une vis M3 x 8 (C) et d'une autre vis (14).
12. Fixez le plateau inférieur à l'aide de deux vis M3 x 8 (C).
13. Réinstallez le capot (5) déposé à l'étape 3 à l'aide de 5 vis (4).

Connecter la ligne de téléphone à la borne de ligne.
14. Insérer le câble du connecteur modulaire (16) dans la borne de la ligne (15) pour le connecter à la ligne de téléphone.
Pour les spécifications 100 V, 120 V ou 220 V ou pour l'Australie, utiliser le cordon modulaire fourni (B).
En Nouvelle-Zélande, fixer le couvercle du connecteur modulaire (P) à la borne TEL T1 (17).

---

11. Instalar la placa superior (F) por medio de un tornillo M3 x 8 (C) y otro tornillo (14).
12. Instalar la placa inferior (G) por medio de dos tornillos M3 x 8 (C).
13. Volver a colocar, con los 5 tornillos (4), la cubierta (5) desmontada en el paso 3.

Conecte la línea telefónica en el terminal de línea.
14. Inserte el cable de conector modular (16) en el terminal de línea (15) para conectarlo a la línea telefónica.
Para especificaciones de 100 V, 120 V o 220 V o para Australia, utilice el cable modular (B).
Para Nueva Zelandia, instale la cubierta del conector modular (P) en el terminal TEL T1 (17).

---

11. Die obere Platte (F) mittels einer M3 x 8 Schraube (C) und einer weiteren Schraube (14) befestigen.
12. Die untere Platte (G) mittels zwei M3 x 8 Schrauben (C) befestigen.
13. Die in Schritt 3 entfernte Abdeckung (5) mittels der 5 Schrauben (4) wieder anbringen.

Die Telefonleitung an die Leitungsbuchse anschließen.
14. Das Modularsteckerkabel (16) in die Leitungsbuchse (15) stecken, um sie mit der Telefonleitung zu verbinden.
Für die 100-, 120- oder 220-V-Spezifikationen oder für Australien ist das mitgelieferte Modulkabel (B) zu verwenden.
Für Neuseeland: Die Modulsteckerabdeckung (P) an der TEL-Klemme T1 (17) anbringen.

---

11. Fissare la piastra superiore (F) utilizzando una vite M3 x 8 (C) e un'altra vite (14).
12. Fissare la piastra inferiore (G) utilizzando due viti M3 x 8 (C).
13. Ricollocare il coperchio (5) rimosso al passo 3 utilizzando le 5 viti (4).

Collegamento della linea del telefono al terminale della linea.
14. Inserite il cavo modulare del connettore (16) al terminale della linea (15) per collegarlo alla linea del telefono.
Per i modelli con specifica 100 V, 120 V o 220 V o per l'Australia, utilizzare il cavo modulare (B) fornito in dotazione.
In Nuova Zelanda, fissare il coperchio del connettore modulare (P) al terminale TEL T1 (17).

---

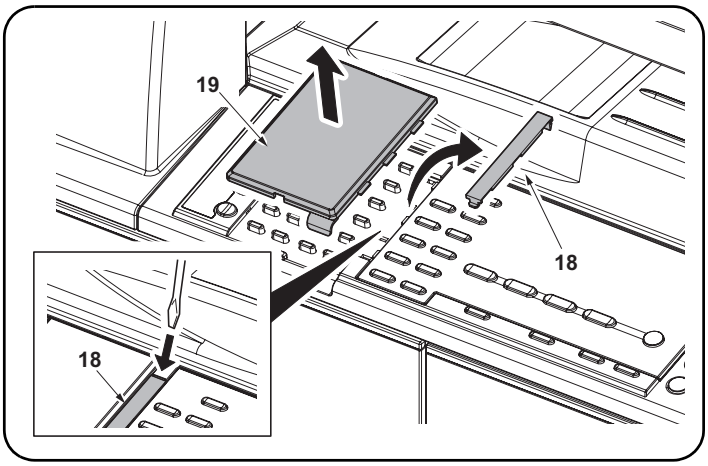
11. 使用1个 M3 x 8 螺丝(C)和另一个螺丝(14)安装上部板(F)。
12. 使用2个 M3 x 8 螺丝(C)安装下部板(G)。
13. 使用5个螺丝(4)重新安装在步骤3中取下的盖板(5)。

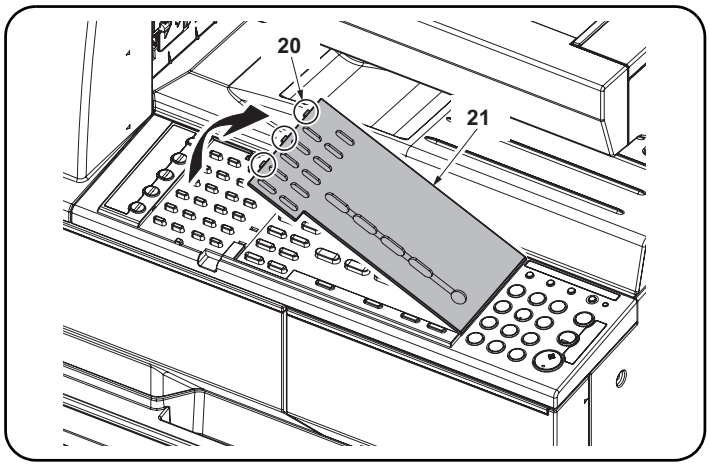
L端子与电话线的连接
14.将电话线(16)插入线端子（L）(15)，连接电话线。
100V、120V、220V规格以及澳大利亚规格使用附属部件的电话线(B)。
新西兰规格时，在TEL端子T1(17)上安装电话线插头盖板(P)。

---

11. ビス (14)1 本およびビス M3 × 8(C)1 本でプレート上 (F) を取り付ける。
12. ビス M3 × 8(C)2 本でプレート下 (G) を取り付ける。
13. 手順 3 で取り外したカバー(5) をビス (4)5 本で元通り取り付ける。

L 端子と電話回線との接続
14. ライン端子 L(15) にモジュラコード (16) を差し込み電話回線に接続する。
100V, 120V, 220V 仕様およびオーストラリアでは、付属品のモジュラコード (B) を使用する。
ニュージーランドでは、TEL 端子 T1(17) にコネクタカバー(P) を取り付ける。





I**nstalling the operation section sheet**

15. Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the latch and remove the cover (18).

16. Remove the left cover of the operation section (19).

17. Lift the three pawls (20) and remove the operation section sheet cover (21).

Repose de la feuille de la section d'opération

15. Insérez un tournevis à tête plate dans le verrou et déposez le capot (18).

16. Déposez le couvercle gauche de la section d'opération (19).

17. Soulever les trois cliquets (20) et retirer le couvercle de la feuille de la section d'opération (21).

Instalación de la hoja de sección de funcionamiento

15. Insertar un destornillador de pala plana en el pestillo y desmontar la cubierta (18).

16. Desmontar la cubierta izquierda de la sección de funcionamiento (19).

17. Levante los tres trinquetes (20) y desmonte la cubierta de la hoja de la sección de funcionamiento (21).

Montieren der Bedienteilfolie

15. Einen flachen Schraubendreher in die Raste einstecken und die Abdeckung (18) abnehmen.

16. Die linke Abdeckung des Bedienteils (19) abnehmen.

17. Die drei Klauen (20) anheben, und die Bedienteilfolienabdeckung (21) entfernen.

Installazione del foglio della sezione di funzionamento

15. Inserire un cacciavite a testa piatta nel fermo e rimuovere il coperchio (18).

16. Rimuovere il coperchio sinistro della sezione di funzionamento (19).

17. Sollevare i tre nottolini (20) e rimuovere il coperchio del foglio della sezione di funzionamento (21).

安装操作部板

15. 将平头螺丝刀插入卡扣中以取下盖板(18)。

16. 取下操作部左盖板(19)。

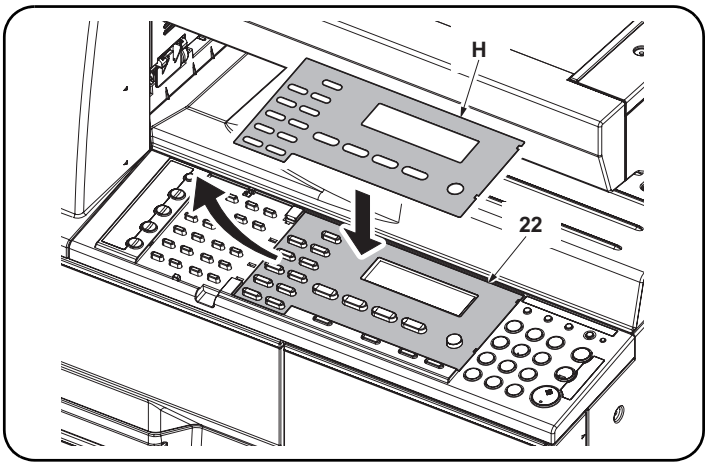
17. 提起3处卡爪(20), 取下操作部盖板(21)。

操作部シートの取り付け

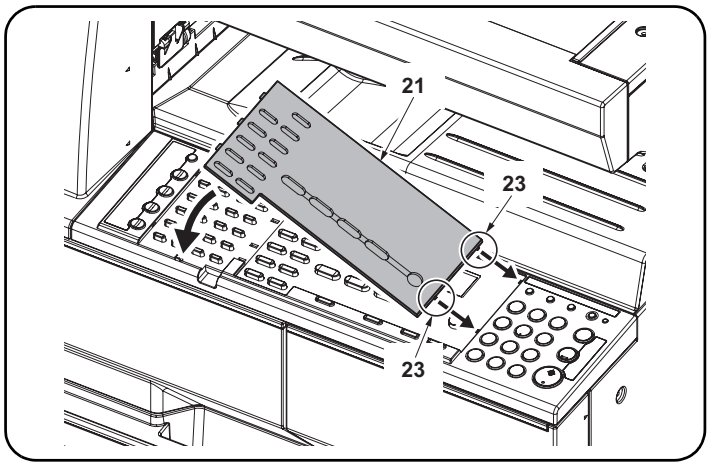
15. はめ込み部にマイナス小ドライバーを挿入し、カバー(18) を取り外す。

16. 操作部左カバー(19) を取り外す。

17. ツメ (20) を持ち上げて操作部シートカバー(21) を取り外す。



18. Remove the operation section sheet (22) and replace it with the operation section sheet (H) for fax of the corresponding language.



19. Refit the operation section sheet cover (21) removed in step 17 by inserting the 2 pawls (23) on the right side of the cover into their respective slots.

---

18. Retirer la feuille de la section d'opération (22) et la remplacer par la feuille de la section d'opération (H) pour fax de la langue correspondante.

19. Réinstallez le couvercle de la feuille de la section d'opération (21) déposé à l'étape 17 en insérant les 2 cliquets (23) sur le côté droit du couvercle dans leurs encoches respectives.

---

18. Desmonte la hoja de la sección de funcionamiento (22) y cámbiela por la hoja de sección de funcionamiento (H) para el facsímil del correspondiente idioma.

19. Volver a instalar la cubierta de la hoja de la sección de funcionamiento (21), desmontada en el paso 17, insertando los 2 trinquetes (23) del lado derecho de la cubierta en sus respectivas ranuras.

---

18. Die Bedienteilfolie (22) entfernen und durch die Bedienteilfolie (H) für Fax der entsprechenden Sprache ersetzen.

19. Die in Schritt 17 entfernte Bedienteilfolienabdeckung (21) wieder anbringen, indem man die 2 Klauen (23) auf der rechten Seite der Abdeckung in die entsprechenden Aussparungen einsetzt.

---

18. Rimuovere il foglio della sezione di funzionamento (22) e sostituirlo con il foglio della sezione di funzionamento (H) per fax della lingua corrispondente.

19. IRicollocare il coperchio del foglio della sezione di funzionamento (21) rimosso al passo 17, inserendo i 2 nottolini (23) sul lato destro del coperchio nei loro rispettivi fori.

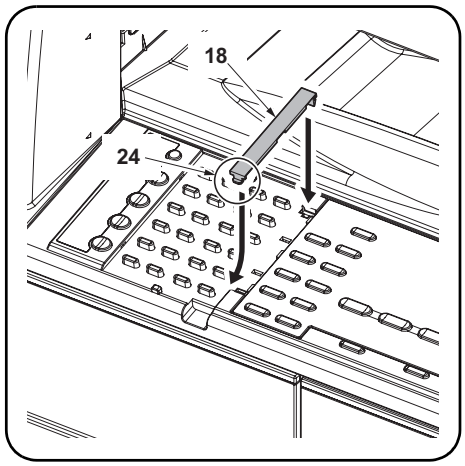
18.卸下操作部板(22), 换上对应语言的传真用操作部板(H)。

19. 将盖板右侧的2个卡爪(23)插入各自对应的插槽中，重新安装在步骤17中取下的操作部板盖板(21)。

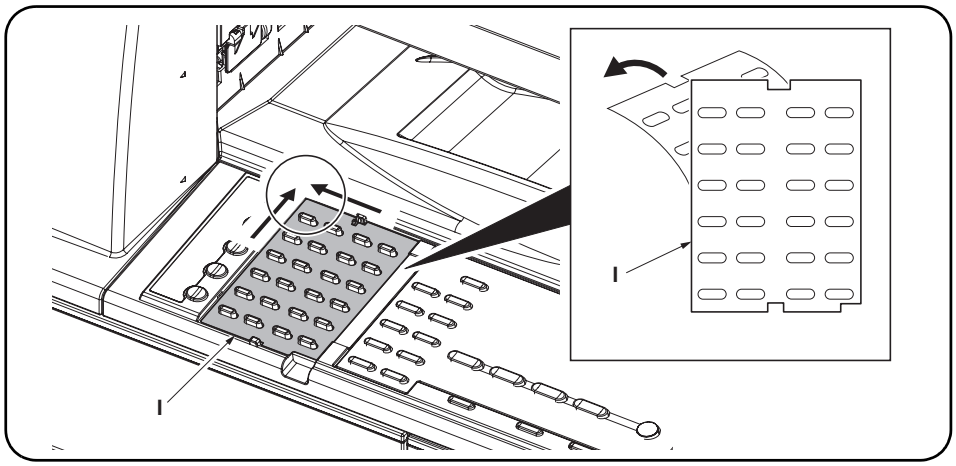
---

18. 操作部シート (22) を外し、対応する言語の FAX 用操作部シート (H) に交換する。

19. 手順 17 で外した操作部シートカバー(21) の右側のツメ (23)2 箇所をはめ込み、元通り取り付ける。



20. Refit the cover (18) removed in step 15 by inserting the pawl (24) into its slot.



Attach the one-touch securing sheet.

21. Remove the release paper from the one-touch securing sheet (I).

22. Adhere the one-touch securing sheet (I) on the base frame of the one-touch key so that it sticks fast to the surface while matching the top surface to the top left corner and firmly pressing the whole area down as shown in the illustration.

23. Push all the one-touch keys to check that the one-touch securing sheet (I) does not block any one-touch key.

---

20. Réinstallez le capot (18) déposé à l'étape 15 en insérant le cliquet (24) dans son encoche.

Fixer la feuille de fixation à touche unique.

21. Retirer le papier de libération de la feuille de fixation à touche unique (I).

22. Coller la feuille de fixation à touche unique (I) du cadre de base de la touche à touche unique de façon qu'elle adhère fermement à la surface, tout en faisant coïncider la surface supérieure avec le coin supérieur gauche et en pressant fermement toute la zone, comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

23. Enfoncer toutes les touches à touche unique pour s'assurer que la feuille de fixation à touche unique (I) ne bloque aucune touche à touche unique.

---

20. Volver a instalar la cubierta (18), desmontada en el paso 15, insertando el trinquete (24) en su ranura.

Instale la hoja de seguridad de un toque.

21. Desmonte el papel de liberación de la hoja de seguridad de un toque (I).

22. Pegue la hoja de seguridad de un toque (I) en el marco de base de la tecla de un toque de tal forma que se adhiera rápidamente a la superficie mientras alinea la superficie superior a la esquina superior izquierda y presiona firmemente toda el área hacia abajo tal como aparece en la figura.

23. Presione todas las teclas de un toque para verificar que la hoja de seguridad de un toque (I) no bloquea ninguna tecla de un toque.

---

20. Die in Schritt 15 entfernte Abdeckung (18) wieder anbringen, indem man die Klaue (24) in die Aussparung einsetzt.

Die Schnellhaftfolie anbringen.

21. Die Schutzfolie von der Schnellhaftfolie (I) abziehen.

22. Die Schnellhaftfolie (I) so am Basisrahmen der Schnelltaste anbringen, dass sie fest an der Oberfläche haftet, wobei die Oberseite auf die obere linke Ecke ausgerichtet und die ganze Fläche angedrückt wird, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

23. Drücken Sie alle Schnelltasten, um sicherzustellen, dass die Schnellhaftfolie (I) keine Schnelltaste blockiert.

---

20. Ricollocare il coperchio (18) rimosso al passo 15, inserendo il nottolino (24) nel suo foro.

Montare il foglio di fissaggio a un tocco.

21. Rimuovere la carta di protezione dal foglio di fissaggio a un tocco (I).

22. Applicare il foglio di fissaggio a un tocco (I) sulla cornice di base del tasto in modo che si attacchi rapidamente alla superficie mentre si adatta alla superficie della parte superiore e all'angolo superiore sinistro e premendo stabilmente tutta l'area come mostrato nel disegno.

23. Premere tutti i tasti a un tocco per controllare che nessun tasto sia bloccato dal foglio di fissaggio a un tocco (I).

---

20. 将卡爪(24)插入插槽中，重新安装在步骤15中取下的盖板(18)。

单触键固定板的粘贴

21.从单触键固定板(I)上揭下剥离纸。

22.按图示要求，将上面和左上角对齐，并将单触键固定板(I)确实贴紧在单触键的框架内，切勿有浮起现象。

23.按下所有的单触键，确认单触键固定板(I)是否挂在单触键上。

---

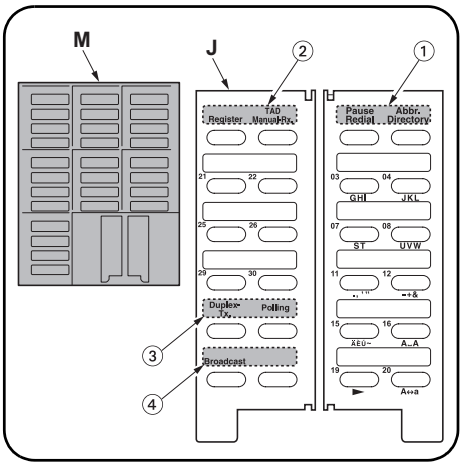
20. 手順 15 で外したカバー(18) のツメ (24) をはめ込み、元通り取り付ける。

ワンタッチ固定シートの貼り付け

21. ワンタッチ固定シート (I) からはくり紙をはがす。

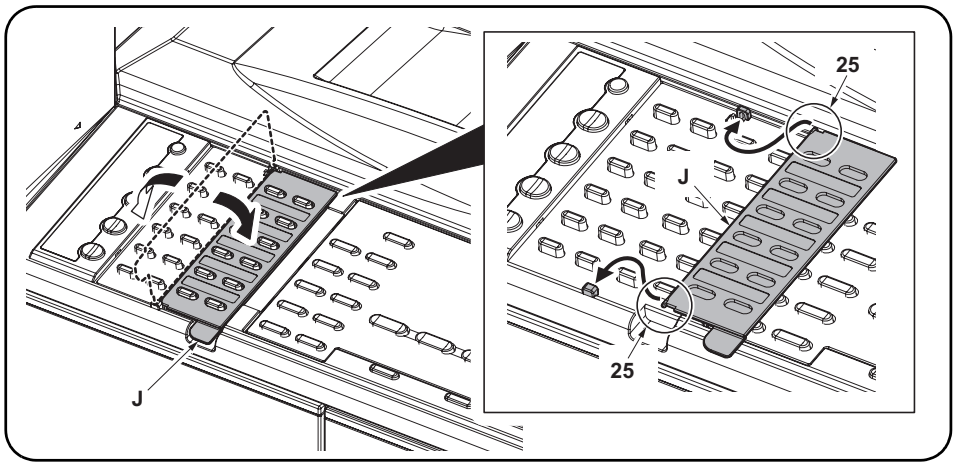
22. イラストの様に上面と左上角を合わせ、全体にしっかりと押さえながら、ワンタッチ固定シート (I) をワンタッチキーのベースフレームに浮かない様に貼り付ける。

23. 全てのワンタッチキーを押し、ワンタッチ固定シート (I) がワンタッチキーに引っ掛っていないことを確認する。



Attach the fax label.
(120 and 230 V specifications only)

24. Adhere the fax labels (1) to (4) of the fax label sheet (M) of the corresponding language at the positions for the fax plate (J) shown in the illustration.



Attach the fax plate.(120 and 230 V specifications only)

25. Incurvate the fax plate (J) a little and then insert the upper and lower projections (25) to the fitting parts of the operation section to attach.

26. Check that the fax plate (J) smoothly moves on either side.

Fixer l'étiquette de fax.
(spécifications 120 et 230 V uniquement)

24. Coller les étiquettes de fax (1) à (4) de la feuille d'étiquettes de fax (M) de la langue correspondante aux positions de la plaque de fax (J) indiquées sur l'illustration.

Fixer la plaque de fax.(spécifications 120 et 230 V uniquement)

25. Courber légèrement la plaque de fax (J), puis insérer les saillies supérieure et inférieure (25) dans les parties de fixation de la section d'opération pour fixer la plaque.

26. Vérifier si la plaque de fax (J) se déplace bien souplement de chaque côté.

Instale la etiqueta de facsímil.
(especificaciones de 120 y 230 V, solamente)

24. Pegue las etiquetas de facsímil (1) a (4) de la hoja de etiquetas de facsímil (M) del correspondiente idioma en las posiciones de la placa de facsímil (J) que aparecen en la figura.

Instale la placa de facsímil.(especificaciones de 120 y 230 V, solamente)

25. Curve un poco hacia adentro la placa de facsímil (J) e inserte las salientes superior e inferior (25) en las partes de encaje de la sección de funcionamiento, para instalar.

26. Verifique que la placa de facsímil (J) se mueve suavemente a ambos lados.

Das Faxetikett anbringen.
(nur für Modelle 120 und 230 V)

24. Die Faxetiketten (1) bis (4) der Faxetikettenfolie (M) der entsprechenden Sprache auf die in der Abbildung gezeigten Positionen für die Faxplatte (J) kleben.

Anbringen der Faxplatte.(nur für Modelle 120 und 230 V)

25. Die Faxplatte (J) leicht biegen, und dann die oberen und unteren Vorsprünge (25) in die Aussparungen des Bedienteils einführen.

26. Sicherstellen, dass sich die Faxplatte (J) auf beiden Seiten ungehindert bewegt.

Fissare le etichette del fax.
(Solo specifiche 120 e 230 V)

24. Applicare le etichette del fax da (1) a (4) del foglio delle etichette del fax (M) della lingua corrispondente nelle posizioni della piastra del fax (J) mostrate nel disegno.

Montare la piastra del fax.(Solo specifiche 120 e 230 V)

25. Curvare un po' la piastra fax (J) e poi inserire le sporgenze inferiore e superiore (25) nelle parti per l'incastro della sezione di funzionamento per montarle.

26. Verificare che la piastra del fax (J) si muova scorrevolmente su entrambi i lati.

贴上传真标签（仅限120和230V规格机器）

24.将对应的语言的传真标签(M)传真标签(①)~(④)，贴在传真板(J)的图示位置上。

安装传真板（仅限120和230V规格机器）

25.稍稍弯曲传真板(J)后，将上下突起部(25)插入操作部的嵌入部进行安装。

26.确认传真板(J)的左右是否能够顺利滑动。

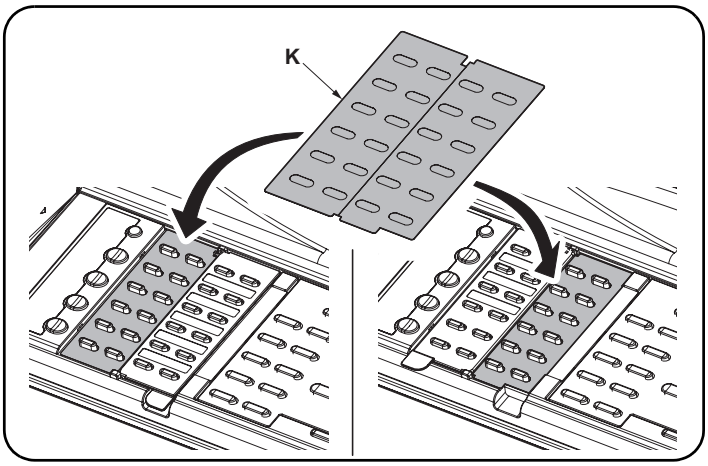
FAX ラベルの貼り付け（120V/230V 仕様のみ）

24. 対応する言語の FAX ラベルシート (M) の FAX ラベル (1) ～ (4) を、FAX プレート (J) のイラストの位置に貼り付ける。

FAX プレートの取り付け（120V/230V 仕様のみ）

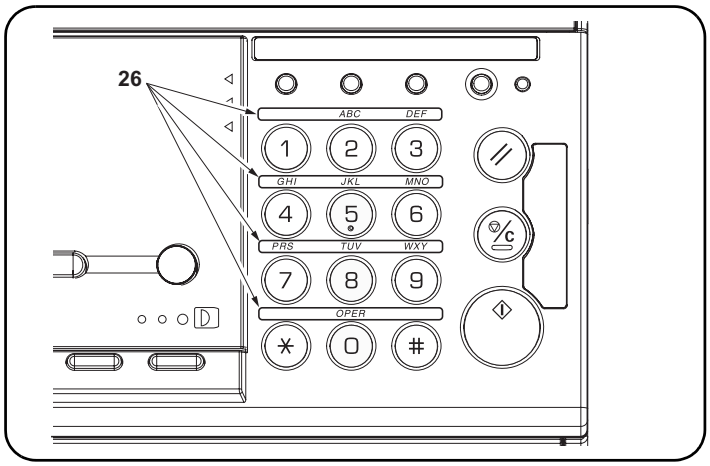
25. FAX プレート (J) を少し湾曲させ、上下の突起部 (25) を操作部のはめ込み部に挿入して取り付ける。

26. FAX プレート (J) が左右にスムーズに動くかどうか確認する。



Attach the one-touch sheet.(120 and 230 V specifications only)

27. Separate the one-touch sheet (K) for the supported language into 2 parts and stick them onto the respective locations on the one-touch securing sheet (I).
Bring back the left cover (19) of the operation section that has been removed by step 16, operation section sheet (22) that has been removed by step 18, operation section sheet for fax (H) that corresponds to the unused languages, and the one-touch sheet (K).



Attach the alphabet labels. (except for 100 V specifications)

28. Wipe the area above each of the numeric keys on the right side of the operation panel with alcohol and stick the alphabet labels (26) from the one-touch label sheet (L) in the appropriate locations.
In Asia and Oceania, use the PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use the PRS TUV WXZ and OPER labels.

Fixer la feuille à touche unique.
(spécifications 120 et 230 V uniquement)

27. Séparez la feuille à touche unique (K) pour la langue supportée en 2 parties et les coller aux endroits respectifs sur la feuille de fixation à touche unique (I).
Remettre en place le couvercle gauche (19) de la section d'opération que l'on avait retiré auparavant lors de la procédure 16, la feuille de la section d'opération (22) que l'on avait retirée auparavant lors de la procédure 18, la feuille de la section d'opération pour fax (H) qui correspond aux langues non utilisées, et la feuille à touche unique (K).

Apposer les étiquettes alphabétiques.
(sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)

28. Essuyez la partie au-dessus de chacune des touches numériques sur le côté droit du panneau de commande avec de l'alcool et collez les étiquettes alphabétiques (26) de la feuille d'étiquettes à touche unique (L) aux endroits appropriés.
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et non les étiquettes PRS TUV WXZ et OPER.

Instale la hoja de un toque.
(especificaciones de 120 y 230 V, solamente)

27. Separar la hoja de un toque (K) para el idioma compatible en 2 partes y pegarlas en sus respectivas ubicaciones en la hoja de seguridad de un toque (I).
Vuelva la cubierta izquierda (19) de la sección de funcionamiento que fue desmontada por el Procedimiento 16, la hoja de la sección de funcionamiento (22) que fue desmontada por el Procedimiento 18, la hoja de la sección de funcionamiento para el facsímil (H) que corresponde a los idiomas no utilizados y la hoja de un toque (K).

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto. (excepto para especificaciones de 100 V)

28. Limpiar, con alcohol, el área sobre cada una de la teclas numéricas en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo y pegar las etiquetas de alfabeto (26), de la hoja de etiquetas de un toque (L), en sus respectivas ubicaciones.
En Asia y Oceania, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXZ ni las OPER.

Anbringen der Schnellfolie.(nur für Modelle 120 und 230 V)

27. Die Schnellfolie (K) für die verfügbare Sprache in 2 Teile teilen und diese Teile an den vorgesehenen Stellen der Schnellhaftfolie (I) aufkleben.
Die in Schritt 16 entfernte linke Abdeckung (19) des Bedienteils, die in Schritt 18 entfernte Bedienteilfolie (22), die Bedienteilfolie für Fax (H), die den nicht benutzten Sprachen entspricht, und die Schnellfolie (K) zurückbringen.

Alphabet-Etiketten anbringen. (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)

28. Den Bereich über jeder Zifferntaste auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfelds mit Alkohol abwischen und die Alphabet-Etiketten (26) von der Schnelletikettenfolie (L) an den vorgesehenen Stellen aufkleben.
Verwenden Sie in Asien und in Ozeanien das Etikett PQRS TUV WXYZ und nicht die Etiketten PRS TUV WXZ und OPER.

Montare il foglio a un tocco.(Solo specifiche 120 e 230 V)

27. Separare il foglio a un tocco (K) per la lingua supportata in 2 parti, e incollarle sulle rispettive posizioni sul foglio di fissaggio a un tocco (I).
Montare di nuovo il coperchio sinistro (19) della sezione di funzionamento che è stato rimosso nella procedura 16, il foglio della sezione di funzionamento (22) che è stato rimosso nella procedura 18, il foglio della sezione di funzionamento per fax (H) che corrisponde alle lingue non usate e il foglio a un tocco (K).

Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche. (Eccetto i modelli con specifica 100 V).

28. Pulire l'area sopra ciascuno dei tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo con alcool, e quindi incollare le etichette alfabetiche (26) dal foglio delle etichette a un tocco (L) nelle posizioni appropriate.
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXZ e OPER.

安装单触键板(仅限120和230V规格机器)

27.根据所支持语言将单触键板(K)分成2个部分，分别粘贴至各自对应的单触键固定板(I)位置。
在步骤16卸下的操作部左盖板(19)、步骤18卸下的操作部板(22)、不对应语言的传真用操作部板(H)以及单触键板(K)均收回。

英文字母标签的粘贴（除100V规格以外）

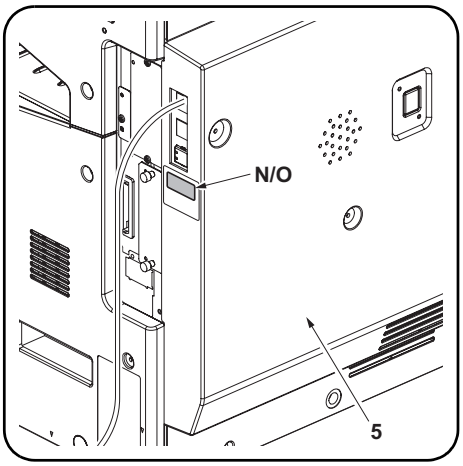
28.用酒精擦拭操作面板右侧所有数字键区域，然后将单触键标签(L)上的字母标签(26)粘贴至正确的位置。
在亚洲和大洋洲，应使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，请勿使用 PRS TUV WXZ 和 OPER 标签。

ワンタッチシートの取り付け（120V/230V 仕様のみ）

27. 対応する言語のワンタッチシート (K) を 2 分割し、ワンタッチ固定シート (I) の上にそれぞれ貼り付ける。
手順 16 で外した操作部左カバー(19)・手順 18 で外した操作部シート(22)、不要の言語の FAX 用操作部シート (H)・ワンタッチシート (K) は持ち帰る。

アルファベットラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

28. 操作パネル右側のテンキー部、各キー上側をアルコール清掃後、ワンタッチラベルシート (L) のアルファベットラベル (26) を貼り付ける。
アジア・オセアニアでは、「PRS TUV WXY」および「OPER」のラベルを使用せず、「PQRS TUV WXYZ」のラベルを使用すること。



Attach the certification label (only 100V and 120 V).

29. Stick the FCC68 label (N) or JATE label (O) onto the cover (5) after first cleaning the area with alcohol.
In Australia or New Zealand, refer to page 14 to attach the label.

Execute the maintenance mode.
After installation is complete, the fax control circuit board must be initialized by executing the maintenance mode U601/U602.
For details, see the service manual.

Fixer l'étiquette de conformité (100V et 120 V uniquement).

29. Collez l'étiquette FCC68 (N) ou l'étiquette JATE (O) au capot (5) après avoir nettoyé la surface d'installation à l'alcool.
En Australie, en Nouvelle-Zélande ou en Chine, se reporter à la page 14 pour les instructions concernant la fixation de l'étiquette.

Exécuter le mode de maintenance.
Lorsque l'installation est terminée, la carte à circuits de commande de fax doit être initialisée en exécutant le mode de maintenance U601/U602.
Pour plus de détails, reportez-vous au manuel d'entretien.

Pegue la etiqueta de certificación (sólo para 100V y 120 V).

29. Pegar la etiqueta FCC68 (N) o etiqueta JATE (O) en la cubierta (5), después de limpiar el área con alcohol.
Para Australia, Nueva Zelandia o China, consulte la página 14 sobre el pegado de la etiqueta.

Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento.
Después de terminar la instalación, debe inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de control de facsímil ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U601/U602.
Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

Bringen Sie das Bescheinigungsetikett an (nur 100V und 120 V).

29. Das FCC68-Etikett (N) oder das JATE-Etikett (O) auf die Abdeckung (5) aufkleben, nachdem man den Bereich mit Alkohol gereinigt hat.
Für Australien, Neuseeland oder China: Angaben zur Anbringung des Etiketts auf Seite 14.

Den Wartungsmodus ausführen.
Nachdem die Installation abgeschlossen ist, muss die Faxsteuerplatine durch Ausführen des Wartungsmodus U601/U602 initialisiert werden.
Einzelheiten dazu finden Sie in der Wartungsanleitung.

Applicazione dell'etichetta di certificazione (soltanto 100V e 120 V).

29. Incollare l'etichetta FCC68 (N) o l'etichetta JATE (O) sul coperchio (5) dopo aver prima pulito dell'area con alcool.
In Australia, Nuova Zelanda o Cina, leggere la pagina 14 per applicare l'etichetta.

Eseguire il modo di manutenzione.
Dopo che l'installazione è completata, la scheda a circuiti di controllo fax deve essere inizializzata eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U601/U602.
Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

认证标签的粘贴（仅适用于100V、120V规格）

29. 用酒精清洁该区域后，将FCC68标签(N)和JATE标签(O)粘贴至盖板(5)。
澳大利亚、新西兰、中国规格时，请参照第14页贴上标签。

执行维修保养模式
安装后，执行维修保养模式U601、U602，然后，再进行传真控制电路板的初始化。
详情请参照维修手册。

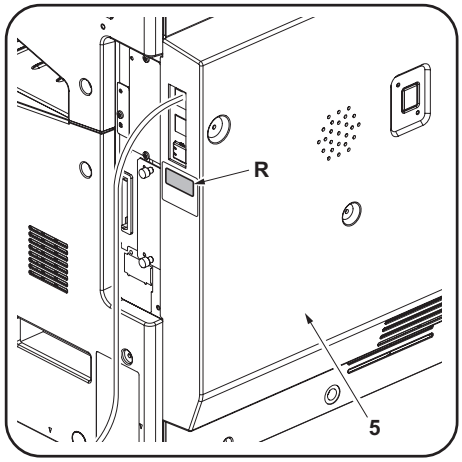
認定ラベルの貼り付け(100V、120V 仕様のみ)

29. カバー(5) に FCC68 ラベル (N) ／ JATE ラベル (O) をアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。
オーストラリア、ニュージーランドでは、P. 14 を参照してラベルを貼り付けてください。

メンテナンスモードの実行
設置後、メンテナンスモード U601・U602 を実行して FAX 制御回路基板を初期化する必要があります。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照してください。

For Australia and New Zealand

Attach the approval label



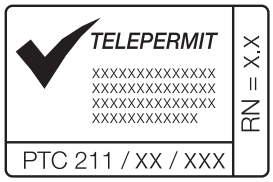
- **Only Australia specification**



A-TICK label

Attach the A-TICK label (R) onto the shield cover (5) after wiping the cover with alcohol .

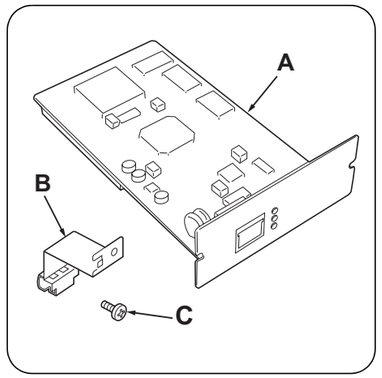
- **Only New Zealand specification**

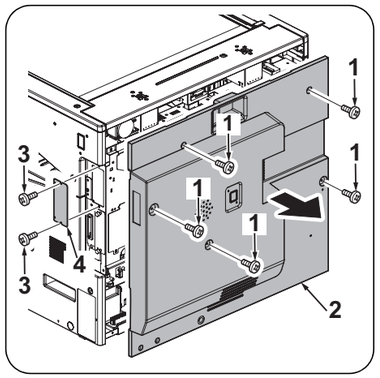


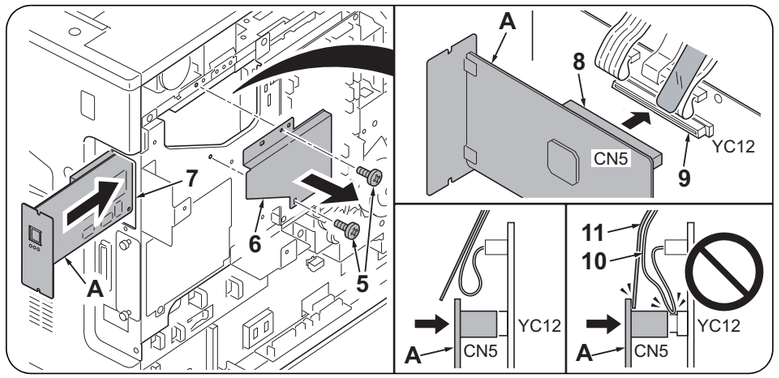
TELEPERMIT label

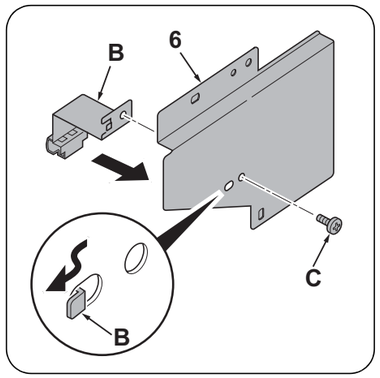
Attach the TELEPERMIT label (R) onto the shield cover (5) after wiping the cover with alcohol .

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR
Scan System (F)B









English

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR THE Scan System (F)B

Supplied parts

A Scanner board.....1
B Push plate 1
C M3 x 8 screw 1

* Turn the MFP's power switch to OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the scan system.

Remove the covers

1. Remove the 5 screws (1) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (2).

2. Remove the two screws (3), and take off the cover (4).

3. Remove the two screws (5) and remove the shield cover (6).

Install the scanner board

4. Insert the scanner board (A) into the OPT1 opening (7) of the shield box and firmly push the CN5 connector (8) on the scanner board (A) all the way into the YC12 connector (9) on the engine circuit board.
Note
Ensure that the cable (10) is not pinched between the connectors.
Ensure that the film (11) is not trapped on the inside of the scanner board (A).

Installing the push plate

5. Fasten the push plate (B) to the shield cover (6) using an M3 x 8 screw (C), as shown in the figure.

Français

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION DU Scan System (F)B

Pièces fournies

A Carte de lecture.....1
B Plaque de poussée 1
C Vis M3 x 8 1

* Mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système de lecture.

Retirer les couvercles

1. Déposez les 5 vis (1) à l'arrière de la machine pour enlever le capot (2).

2. Retirer les deux vis (3) et déposer le couvercle (4).

3. Déposez les deux vis (5) et enlevez le couvercle de blindage (6).

Installer la carte scanner

4. Insérer la carte scanner (A) dans l'ouverture OPT1 (7) de la boîte de blindage et pousser fermement le connecteur CN5 (8) de la carte scanner (A) à fond dans le connecteur YC12 (9) de la carte à circuits du moteur.
Remarque
Vérifiez que le câble (10) n'est pas pris entre les connecteurs.
Vérifiez que le film (11) n'est pas prisonnier à l'intérieur de la carte de lecture (A).

Installation de la plaque de poussée

5. Fixez la plaque de poussée (B) au couvercle de blindage (6) à l'aide d'une vis M3 x 8 (C), comme illustré.

Español

GUIA DE INSTALACION PARA EL Scan System (F)B

Piezas suministradas

A Tarjeta de escáner.....1
B Placa de empuje 1
C Tornillo M3 x 8 1

* Apague el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de escaneo.

Desmonte las cubiertas

1. Quitar los 5 tornillos (1) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (2).

2. Quite los dos tornillos (3) y quite la tapa trasera (4).

3. Quite los dos tornillos (5) y desmonte la cubierta blindada (6).

Instale la tarjeta del escáner

4. Inserte la tarjeta de escáner (A) en la abertura OPT1 (7) de la caja de blindado y empuje firmemente el conector CN5 (8) en la tarjeta de escáner (A) hasta el fondo en el conector YC12 (9) en la tarjeta de circuitos del motor.
Nota
Asegúrese de que el cable (10) no quede pinzado entre los conectores.
Asegúrese de que la película (11) no quede atrapada en el interior de la tarjeta de escáner (A).

Instalación de la placa de empuje

5. Fije la placa de empuje (B) a la cubierta blindada (6) por medio de un tornillo M3 x 8 (C), como se muestra en la ilustración.

Deutsch

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG FUR Scan System (F)B

Gelieferte Teile

A Scannerkarte.....1
B Andruckplatte 1
C M3 × 8 Schraube.....1

* Schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und trennen Sie den MFP vom Stromnetz, bevor Sie das Scansystem installieren.

Entfernen der Abdeckungen

1. Die 5 Schrauben (1) von der Rückseite des Geräts entfernen, um die Abdeckung (2) abzunehmen.

2. Drehen Sie die zwei Schrauben (3) heraus, und nehmen Sie die Abdeckung (4) ab.

3. Die zwei Schrauben (5) entfernen und die Abschirmungsabdeckung (6) abnehmen.

Scannerkarte installieren

4. Die Scannerkarte (A) in die Öffnung OPT1 (7) der Abschirmungsbox einführen, und den Steckverbinder CN5 (8) der Scannerkarte (A) mit festem Druck bis zum Anschlag in den Steckverbinder YC12 (9) der Motorplatine einschieben.
Hinweis
Darauf achten, dass das Kabel (10) nicht zwischen den Steckverbindern eingeklemmt wird.
Darauf achten, dass der Film (11) nicht auf der Innenseite der Scannerkarte (A) hängen bleibt.

Montieren der Andruckplatte

5. Die Andruckplatte (B) mit einer M3 x 8 Schraube (C) an der Abschirmungsabdeckung (6) anbringen, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt.

Italiano

DUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE PEL Scan System (F)B

Parti fornite

A Scheda scanner 1
B Piastra di spinta.....1
C Vite M3 x 8 1

* Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dal MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema di scansione.

Rimuovere i coperchi

1. Rimuovere le 5 viti (1) dal lato posteriore della macchina per togliere il coperchio (2).

2. Rimuovere le due viti (3) e togliere il pannello (4).

3. Rimuovere le due viti (5) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio di protezione (6).

Montaggio della scheda scanner

4. Inserire la scheda scanner (A) nell'apertura OPT1 (7) della scatola di protezione e spingere stabilmente il connettore CN5 (8) della scheda scanner (A) fino in fondo nel connettore YC12 (9) sulla scheda a circuiti del motore.
Nota
Assicurarsi che il cavo (10) non rimanga incastrato tra i connettori.
Assicurarsi che la pellicola (11) non rimanga impigliata all'interno della scheda scanner (A).

Installazione della piastra di spinta

5. Fissare la piastra di spinta (B) al coperchio di protezione (6) usando una vite M3 x 8 (C), come mostrato nella figura.

简体中文

Scan System(F)B 安装手册

附属部件

A 扫描主板 1
B 推进板 1
C M3 x 8 螺丝..... 1

* 安装扫描组件时，必须先切断（OFF）MFP 主机的电源开关，并拔下 MFP 主机的电源插头后再进行安装作业。

取下盖板类

1. 从机器背面取下 5 个螺丝（1）以取下盖板（2）。

2. 卸下 2 个螺钉（3）并取下盖（4）。

3. 卸下 2 个螺钉（5），然后取下屏蔽盖（6）。

安装扫描主板

4. 把扫描主板（A）插入屏蔽盒的 OPT1 开口部（7），用力将扫描主板（A）上的 CN5 连接器（8）完全推入引擎主板的 YC12 连接器（9）中。
注意
请确保连接器没有夹住电缆（10）。
请确保薄膜（11）没有在扫描主板（A）内部受阻。

安装推进板

5. 如图所示，使用一个 M3 x 8 螺钉（C）将推进板（B）固定在屏蔽盖（6）上。

日本語

Scan System(F)B 設置手順書

付属部品

A スキャナ基板 1
B 押ェ板 1
C ビス M3 × 8..... 1

* スキャンシステムを取り付けるときは、必ず MFP 本体の電源スイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業を行ってください。

カバー類の取り外し

1. 機械本体後側のビス (1)5 本を外し、カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、カバー (4) を取り外す。

3. ビス (5) 2 本を外し、シールドカバー (6) を取り外す。

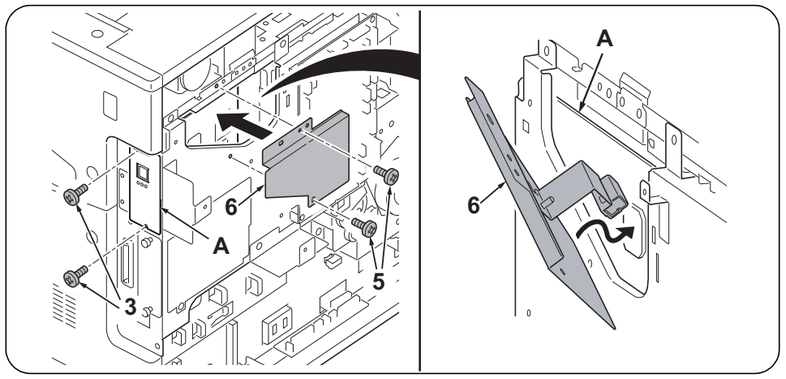
スキャナ基板の取り付け

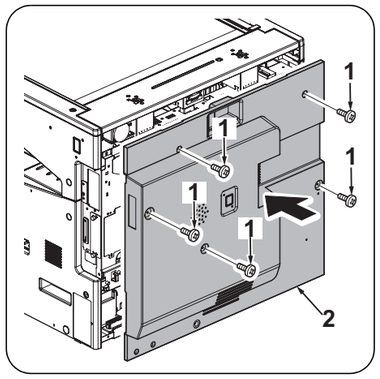
4. スキャナ基板 (A) をシールドボックスの OPT1 開口部 (7) へ挿入し、スキャナ基板 (A) の CN5 コネクタ (8) をエンジン回路基板の YC12 コネクタ (9) に奥まで強く差し込む。
注意
電線 (10) を、コネクタ間に挟まないこと。
フィルム (11) が、スキャナ基板 (A) の内側に入り込まないこと。

押ェ板の取り付け

5. イラストのように、シールドカバー (6) に押ェ板 (B) を、ビス M3 × 8(C) 1 本で固定する。

2009. 4
303JR56710





Install the covers

6. Install the shield cover (6) so that the push plate gasket makes contact with the scanner board (A) IC and secure the cover in place using the two screws (5) removed in step 3.

7. Fasten the scanner board (A) onto the shield box cover using the two screws (3) that have been removed by Procedure 2

8. Refit the cover (2) removed in step 1 using 5 screws (1).

Installer le couvercles

6. Installez le couvercle de blindage (6) de sorte que la garniture de la plaque de poussée soit en contact avec le IC de la carte de lecture (A) et fixez le couvercle en place à l'aide des deux vis (5) déposées à l'étape 3.

7. Fixer la carte scanner (A) au couvercle de la boîte de blindage à l'aide des deux vis (3) que l'on avait retirées auparavant lors de la procédure 2.

8. Réinstallez le capot (2) déposé à l'étape 1 à l'aide de 5 vis (1).

Instale la cubiertas

6. Instale la cubierta blindada (6) de forma tal que la junta de la placa de empuje quede en contacto con el IC de la tarjeta de escáner (A) y fije la cubierta en posición por medio de los dos tornillos (5) quitados en el paso 3.

7. Apriete la tarjeta de escáner (A) en la cubierta de la caja de blindadi utilizando los dos tornillos (3) que fueron sacados por el Procedimiento.

8. Volver a colocar, con los 5 tornillos (1), la cubierta (2) desmontada en el paso 1.

Installieren der Abdeckungen

6. Die Abschirmungsabdeckung (6) so anbringen, dass die Andruckplattendichtung die IC der Scannerkarte (A) berührt und die Abdeckung mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (5) sichern.

7. Die Scannerkarte (A) mit den in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (3) an der Abschirmungsbox befestigen

8. Die in Schritt 1 entfernte Abdeckung (2) mittels der 5 Schrauben (1) wieder anbringen.

Installare il coperchi

6. Installare il coperchio di protezione (6) in modo che la guarnizione della piastra di spinta sia a contatto con l'IC della scheda scanner (A) e fissare il coperchio in posizione usando le due viti (5) rimosse nel passo 3.

7. Fissare la scheda scanner (A) al pannello della scatola di protezione a mezzo delle due viti (3) che sono state rimosse nella procedura 2.

8. Ricollocare il coperchio (2) rimosso al passo 1 utilizzando le 5 viti (1).

安装盖板类

6. 安装屏蔽盖（6），使得推进板衬垫和扫描主板（A）IC 相接触，然后使用在步骤 3 中卸下的 2 个螺钉（5）将屏蔽盖固定到位。

7. 用在步骤 2 卸下的 2 个螺钉（3）把扫描主板（A）紧固在屏蔽盒盖上。

8. 使用 5 个螺丝（1）重新安装在步骤 1 中取下的盖板（2）。

カバー類の取り付け

6. 押ェ板のガスケットがスキャナ基板 (A) の IC に接触するようにシールドカバー(6) を取り付け、手順 3 で取り外したビス (5)2 本で固定する。

7. 手順 2 で取り外したビス (3)2 本でスキャナ基板 (A) をシールドボックスカバーに固定する。

8. 手順 1 で外したカバー(2) を、ビス (1)5 本で元通り取り付ける。

2009. 4
303JR56710

KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.654.0000
Home page: http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com
Email: info@kyoceramita-europe.com

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD
8 Beacontree Plaza
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,
U.K.
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N
Milano, Italy
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,
France
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),
Spain
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich
Switzerland
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,
1230 Wien,
Austria
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,
Sweden
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo
Olaf Helsetsvei 6, NO 0694 Oslo,
Norway
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,
Portugal
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.
527 Kyalami Boulevard,
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,
South Africa
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,
U.S.A.
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,
N.S.W. 2113 Australia
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,
Singapore 349572
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED
11/F., Mita Centre,
552-566, Castle Peak Road,
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,
Hong Kong
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 87511560

KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: (06) 6764-3555
http://www.kyoceramita.com

©2009 KYOCERA MITA Corporation
KYOCERA is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in Holland

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:
1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:
201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:
14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:
1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:
2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center
& National Training Center:
2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:
8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804

©2009 KYOCERA MITA Corporation
http://www.kyoceramita.com
KYOCERA is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.